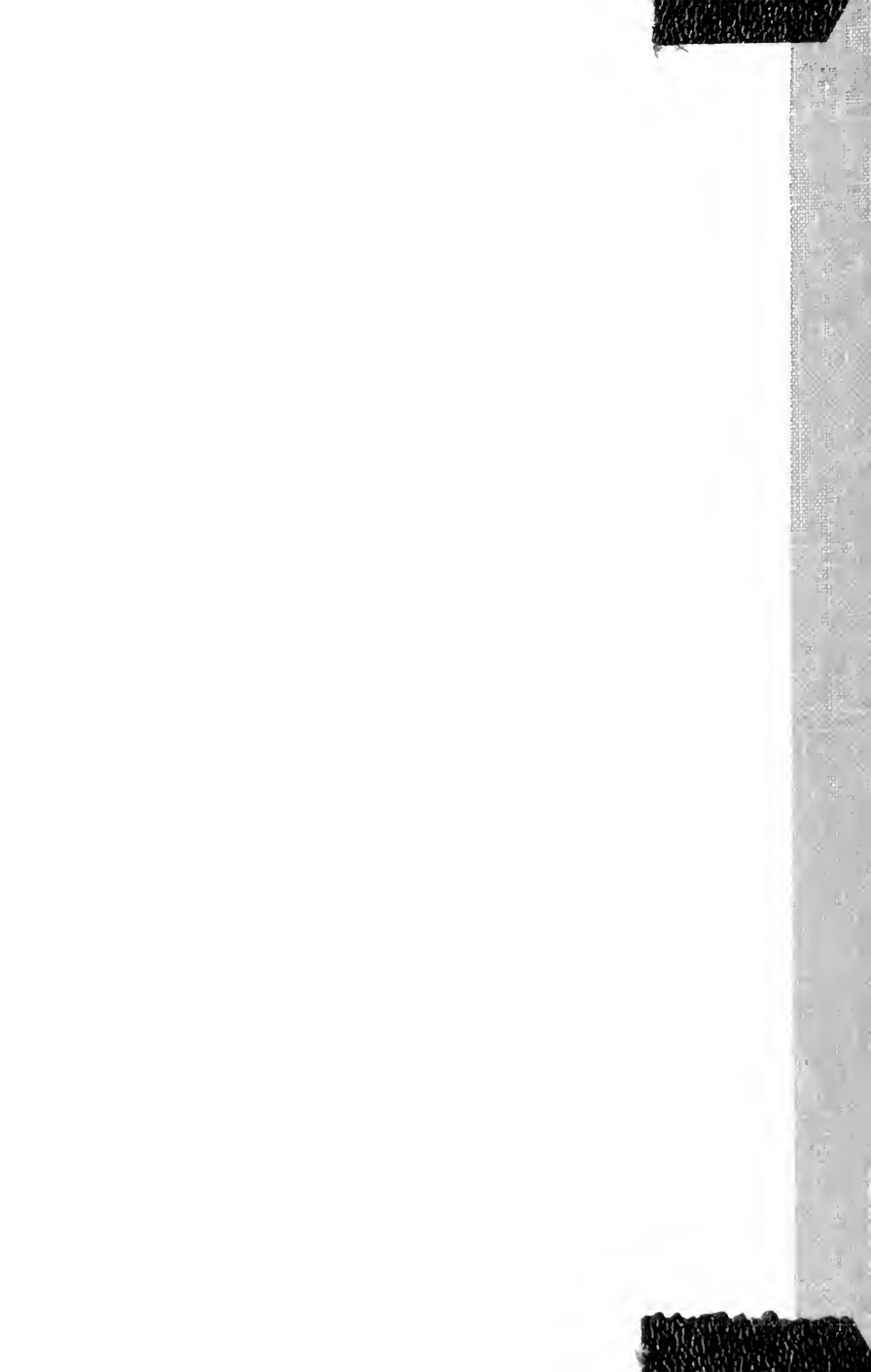


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY



3 1761 00361173 8



Guon of Burdenx.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. xl.

1882.

BERLIN : ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.
NEW YORK : C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA : J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.



Early English Text Society

[Publications] Series No. 40

THE

No. 40

ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART VII.

The Yoke of

Duke Guon of Burdeux

done into English by

Sir John Bouchier, Lord Berners,

and printed by Wynkyn de Worde about 1534 A.D.

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE COPY OF THE FIRST EDITION,
NOW IN THE POSSESSION OF THE EARL OF CRAWFORD AND LALCARRES,

with an Introduction,

BY

S. L. LEE, B.A.,

BALLIOL COLLEGE, OXFORD.

38076
7/10/96

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXII.

PR
1118
EE
no 40

Extra Series.

XI.

CLARKE AND FAYLER, CHEMICAL PRINTER, BUNGAY.

PREFATORY NOTE.

THE length of this romance has necessitated its publication in two parts. The first part includes the oldest portions of the story, and forms a tale complete in itself.

The opening pages of the Introduction are intended to constitute a general preface to the whole series of English Charlemagne Romances. The later pages deal with the historical and bibliographical points of interest connected with Lord Berners' rendering of the present romance. With the second part will be published an essay on the differences between the language of the first and third editions respectively (*vide* Introd. p. lvi, lvii). Holbein's portrait of the translator will also, it is hoped, appear there. The Hon. H. Tyrwhitt Wilson, the owner of the picture, and a lineal descendant of Lord Berners, has very kindly given permission for its reproduction, but the arrangements necessary for its publication have not yet been completed.

I am desirous of expressing my thanks for assistance rendered me in the preparation of this edition to the Earl of Crawford and Balcarres, whose loan of the unique copy of the book rendered this reprint possible; to Miss Eleanor Marx, who not only undertook the labour of copying the work for the press, but has also corrected the great bulk of the proof sheets; to Mr. R. A. Graves of the British Museum, who aided me very greatly with his wide knowledge when I was attempting to fix the date of the publication of the book; and to Mr. F. J. Furnivall, who, on this as on other occasions, has generously rendered me much assistance. To the works of M. Gaston Paris, M. Paul Meyer, and M. Léon Gautier, I have also been largely indebted, while studying the history of the Charlemagne Romances in France.

S. L. LEE.

26, *Brondebury Villas, London, N.W.*
January 10, 1883.

INTRODUCTION.

I.

THE CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES IN FRANCE AND ENGLAND.

- | | |
|---|--|
| § 1. <i>The distribution of the romances</i> ,
p. vii. | § 9. <i>The romances in the 14th cen-
tury</i> , p. xv. |
| § 2. <i>Their growth in France</i> , p. viii. | § 10. <i>The prose versions</i> , p. xvi. |
| § 3. <i>The cantilènes</i> , p. ix. | § 11. <i>Their subsequent history</i> , p. xvi. |
| § 4. <i>La Chanson de Roland</i> , p. x. | § 12. <i>The Romances in England</i> ,
p. xvii. |
| § 5. <i>Its general style</i> , p. xi. | § 13. <i>Their classification</i> , p. xviii. |
| § 6. <i>Others of its class</i> , p. xiii. | § 14. <i>Their place in English litera-
ture</i> , p. xxi. |
| § 7. <i>Their later development</i> , p. xiii. | |
| § 8. <i>The family cycles</i> , p. xiv. | |

§ 1. OF all the heroes of mediæval Europe Charles the Great has left the deepest impression on its literature. His career has given birth to as vast a series of epic poems and prose romances as any of which we still have visible remains. It was of three "moost noble kynges" that French narrative poetry in the early middle ages mainly treated. Alexander of Macedon, Arthur of Brittany, and Charles of France were its moving spirits; and Rome, *les deux Bretagnes*, and France were the countries that it delighted to honour.¹ But the hero who had been the Emperor of the whole western world, and who was often regarded as the first Christian King and the arch-confounder of the Saracens, most powerfully stirred the imagination of the early mediæval poets. And it was not only in the country that claimed to have been the centre of his dominions, that his glorious exploits were recited. France, it must be remembered, throughout the middle ages was the storehouse whence Europe

¹ M. de la Villemarqué (*les romans de la table ronde*, p. 2) says of the fact, "voilà le triple motif poétique dont ils (*i. e.* les poètes du moyen âge) se plaisaient à tirer des variétés infinies," and quotes the well-known lines from a 13th century poet,—

"Ne sont que trois matières à nul homme entendant :
De France, de Bretagne et de Rome la grand."

chiefly derived its romantic literature. It was a French story-book that Dante represents as having caused the temptation to which Francesca so fatally yielded,¹ and at a time when hero-worship was really a perpetual fact, it was inevitable that the legends of Charles the Great and his fighting men should be everywhere heartily welcomed. In England the poems have not enjoyed so continuous a popularity as elsewhere, but there was a time when to many Englishmen "the holy battles of bold Charlemaigne" were (to quote one of their admirers) as familiar as their own thresholds. But in Spain, the Low Countries, in Germany, and in Scandinavian lands, Charles and his companions are numbered among "the paragons of the earth," and each of these countries has enshrined in its popular literature their traditional history. Nor are they wholly unknown in Russia and Hungary; and the Italian poets Boiardo, Ariosto and Tasso, have shed their golden light on many episodes drawn from the French Charlemagne romances, which long before their time had become thoroughly acclimatized in Italy.

§ 2. The development of the Charlemagne romances is an interesting study for the student of literature. But it has been woefully misrepresented by many English writers on the subject.² Known until recently in their prose forms alone, the romances have been regarded as renderings of monkish chronicles; but these, so far from being their progenitors, are themselves largely indebted to the fictions, and the relations between the metrical and prose forms of the romances have been constantly misapprehended. In their early shapes they were always metrical. They grew gradually and imperceptibly out of the traditions of the people, and only the latest of

¹ *Inferno*, v. 66.

² Dunlop, the English historian of fiction, who has attempted a full but very erroneous account of these romances, treats them (with some modifications, it is true) as amplifications of the Latin Chronicle ascribed to Turpin, believed to have been Archbishop of Rheims in the time of Charles. Recent criticism has proved the work to be itself based largely on popular poems, and to have no just claim to the antiquity for a long time ascribed to it. It is not from the pen of Turpin, but from that of two distinct authors living respectively about the middle of the 11th and the beginning of the 12th centuries. Its tone is strongly clerical, and it has of course little right to be regarded as an historical work. Dunlop, moreover, only knew the Charlemagne romances in their prose (*i. e.* their latest) forms.

them can be ascribed to conscious artistic endeavour. They are *Volks-Epen*, and not *Kunst-Epen*: in some respects they are comparable with the Homeric poems, in none with the *Æneid* or *La Gerusalemme Liberata*.

§ 3. In their own life-time the deeds of Charles the Great and of his companions in arms were the subjects of short popular verses sung by the people themselves in the daily intercourse of life. None of the Charlemagne *cantilènes*, as French critics have called the popular poems, have reached us. Few of their class were committed to writing; but we may infer from the testimony of various witnesses that very many at one time existed.¹ In the earliest Charlemagne romances the heroes expect their exploits to be celebrated in song.² From the 7th to the 9th centuries a story of King Clotaire was preserved in verse, and an early mediæval writer describes how Frenchwomen used to sing it together in chorus.³ Written sometimes in German, sometimes in Romance dialects, the *cantilènes* treated of isolated events, briefly and vividly described, and interspersed with exclamations of wonder, joy, and grief, which gave them often a lyrical, rather than an epic, character. In English literature the ballads that found their way into the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle may perhaps be looked upon as most closely resembling them. It is not until nearly the 11th century that professional poets or reciters are met with in French literature. We then find a class of men called *jongleurs* wandering from village to village, from castle to castle, chanting to the accompaniment of a little viol which they carried with them, stories of national or local heroes. It was under their influence that the detached poems were brought together. But hastily united either by themselves, or by professional poets who were known as *trouvères*, they continued to be expanded or compressed, often on the spur of the moment, as the prejudices of the jongleur or his audience demanded. Nor for nearly three centuries,

¹ M. Gaston Paris. *Histoire Poétique de Charlemagne*, pp. 40. *et seq.*

² *Chanson de Roland*, 1014 and 1466. The edition of the *Chanson* which I have used is M. Léon Gautier's, published at Tours in 1881.

³ "Carmen publicum juxta rusticitatem per omnium pene volitabat ora ita canentium feminaeque chorus inde plaudendo componebant. "Vita sancti Faronis," quoted from *Historiens de France*, iii. p. 505, by M. Gautier in his *Introd. to Roland*, p. xvij.

after the *trouveurs* had committed most of the poems to writing, did the improvisations cease, and the process was subsequently, and with less excuse, adopted by later copyists. New ideas were introduced to harmonize with the views of each generation of hearers, and, in the days of their decadence, when romances with similar, if somewhat briefer, genealogies were taking their place in popular esteem, attempts were made to embody in the old poems all the characteristics of the new. By such manœuvres as these they were enabled to survive till the invention of printing. Then, clothed in a garb of prose, they were freed from further radical changes, and a fresh lease of popularity which may be said to have not yet expired in France was thus secured for them. None of the Charlemagne romances exist in all these varied forms: some are extant in one shape, some in another; but of all of them such a development may be safely predicated.

§ 4. An examination of the earliest poem concerning Charles the Great, of which any manuscript is extant, will best indicate the leading features of the romances in their classical metrical shape. Like all of its class, it treats of the *deeds* of a single hero closely related to the Emperor, a fact which originally gave the poems the name of *chansons de geste*.¹ The *Chanson de Roland* has been justly placed among the noblest literary monuments of the Middle Ages, and has very many claims, as we shall show later, to the attention of English readers. It dates from the middle of the 11th century. The famous story which it has to tell is the defeat of Charles in the pass of the Pyrenees, and the death of Roland, his nephew, and of eleven other peers, as his chief warriors were called after an institution that comes into prominence in later French history. The incident, like the stories of all the oldest *chansons*, is roughly founded on a strictly historical basis. The episode is related in Eginhard's² authentic record of Charles' life, and to this day the scene of the disaster, the Waterloo of early mediæval France, goes, as

¹ The word *geste* has many meanings in mediæval French. Even in the earliest time it signifies not only an achievement, but the history which chronicles it. Cf. *Roland*—*C'o dit la geste*, 1685, 2095. Later, as we explain below, the word acquired the meaning of family. Traces of this usage appear in *Roland*, cf. v. 788. *Deus me confundet, se la geste en desment!*

² *Vita Karoli*, ix. Passages from this and other historical authorities are quoted and discussed in M. Gautier's *Introd.*, pp. xii-xvi.

in the poem, by the name of Roncevaux or Roncesvalles. In the oral tradition, in which it reached the poet, there are many variations from the historical version, and the changes, to which it has been submitted, admirably illustrate the development that legendary history experienced before and since at the hands of all the *jougleurs de geste*. In 778, the historian informs us, the rear-guard of a vast French army retiring from a campaign in Spain against the Moors, was cut to pieces in the mountains by a band of Gascon rebels, and in the battle Roland, the commander of the Breton coast, and many other imperial officers were slain. In the poem the Gascons become Saracens, in accord with the Crusading temperament which was first growing up in Europe at the time of its composition. Roland is represented as the nephew of Charles in a desire which became more intense in the later poets to unite all their actors by lineal ties. The defeat of the French is attributed to the treachery of Ganelon, one of themselves, from whom afterwards descends the long line of traitors who figure in subsequent romances, and finally the evil doers are signally punished,—in order to give the story the moral tone that is a permanent feature of later *chansons de geste*.¹

§ 5. The general style of the poem closely connects it with the *cantilènes*. Its opening is as brusque as that of the *Iliad*. It assumes on the part of its reader a knowledge of a large number of shorter poems on various subjects, of most of which nothing is now known in France except their names, though one of them has been preserved in an early Icelandic version.² The *Chanson* bears trace of having already undergone many *remaniemens*, and of having itself been originally constructed from a series of *cantilènes* narrating episodes of Charles' wars in Spain, bound together by a *jougleur's*

¹ The versification of this poem is identical with that of all except the latest *chansons*. It is written in decasyllables arranged in stanzas or *tirades* of varying lengths. The verses which number over 4000 in the earliest MSS. are assonanced, that is to say, the vowel sounds of the last syllable in each line of the *tirade* is the same. At the close of each stanza stands the word AOI, which either marks the reciter's pauses or is a rough indication of a musical note.

² Léon Gautier's *Roland*, pp. 60 and 375. The story of the capture of Noples, a little town in Spain, by Charles (Jo vus conquis e Noples e Commbles, v. 198) is preserved in the *Kárlamangus Saga*, the Icelandic collection of Charlemagne romances.

improvisations.¹ A simple, persistent religious spirit pervades the poem. Its author was well acquainted with the stories of the Old Testament, and, like Joshua, Charles makes the sun stand still. In the characters of the heroes the poet has successfully portrayed the doughty simplicity and strength, combined with the tenderness of heart that we associate with the German races. They are drawn from Frankish models, and are innocent of Roman culture. Charles himself is of a patriarchal age, of unquestioned courage and irresistible authority, and loves his nephew with a sincerity that, when the catastrophe arrives, gives occasion to a scene of the purest pathos. Roland is a rash warrior filled with a manly affection for his friend Oliver, but at times he displays a childish pride which recalls Achilles to our memory. Female influence finds no place in this or any early poem. Roland, it is true, is affianced to *la belle Aube*, a sister of Oliver, but she plays a curiously insignificant part. Little that is supernatural enters into the story. The miracle that Charles performs, and the invincible nature of Joyeuse and Durandal, the swords of the Emperor and of his nephew, fail to disturb the realistic current of the narrative.²

¹ *Hist. Poét.*, pp. 70, 71.

² The beauty of many portions of the poem and its vivid style may be well illustrated by this short *tirade* (ccv) narrating Roland's death :

“Co sent Rollanz de sun tens n'i ad plus :
 Devers Espaigne gist en un pui agut,
 A l'une main si ad sun piz batut :
 ‘Deus! meie culpe *par* la tue vertut,
 De mes pecchiez, des granz e des menuz,
 Que jo ai fait dès l'ure que nez fui
 Tresqu' à cest jur que ci sui consoüz !’
 Sun destre guant en ad vers Deu tendut :
 Angle de l'ciel i descendent à lui.”—AOI.

The following translation of the passage, which loses very much of the force of the original, may assist some readers. It is taken from Mr. Justice O'Hagan's *Song of Roland* (Lond. 1880), p. 175. The rhymes destroy nearly all the effect of the French rhythm.

“Roland feeleth his hour at hand ;
 On a knoll he lies towards the Spanish land.
 With one hand beats he upon his breast :
 ‘In thy sight, O God, be my sins confessed,
 From my hour of birth, both the great and small,
 Down to this day, I repent of all,
 As his glove he raises to God on high,
 Angels of heaven descend him nigh.”

§ 6. Such are the general characteristics of this and probably very many other early *chansons de geste*. Of the six or seven of identical tone now familiar to us by name, some are still extant, while others are only known from external evidence; they are all referred to the end of the 11th or the beginning of the 12th centuries. They deal with similar military exploits,—with Charles' wars in Saxony, Lombardy, or Apulia.¹ In a few—of a little less early date—an attempt was made to fill in the domestic details of the Emperor's life, and to embody legends of his youth and marriage.² In all, the historical element is still present, though at times it grows very vague. To the *trouveurs* of crusading times, the Saracens are the only known enemies of the French, and the place that the Normans really held in a great part of Europe during Charles' reign is erroneously transferred to them. But in no important respect, except in feebler literary style,—in greater coarseness and in more tedious repetition,—do these poems differ from the *Chanson de Roland*.

§ 7. Towards the close of the 12th century, however, the *Chansons de geste*, and *Roland* with them, gradually underwent further changes. They were lengthened unsparingly, and were inspired with a more distinctly feudal spirit. They glorified the resistance of the barons to their suzerains, in the disintegrating spirit of continental feudalism. To Charles himself little respect is paid. His actions and speeches exhibit him as a feeble dotard,³ and his vassals rise constantly against his authority. “*Laissomes ce vieillart qui tous est assotez,*” says one of the characters in *Guy de Bourgogne*, a *chanson* of the 12th century, and rebellions against his rule form a leading motive in the poems of the date.⁴ The *jongleurs* and *trouveurs* freely reject

¹ Such as *Aspremont* narrating the conquest of Apulia; *les Enfances Ogier*, that of Italy; *Guitelin*, that of Saxony; and *Balan*, that of Italy. All of them are not now extant in their early forms, but in their existing shapes have evidently not been radically altered from older originals. Of *Balan*, only a portion is still preserved, which occurs in the later romance of *Fierabras*.—*Hist. Poët.* p. 73.

² Such is *Berte au grand pied*, the history of the mythical mother of Charles, which is evidently a legend of great antiquity, although no reference to Charles' youth occurs in the *Chanson de Roland*.—*Hist. Poët.* p. 73.

³ He is also credited with a revolting sin, cp. Gautier, *Les Epopées Françaises*, iii, 65-6.

⁴ No less than 18 *Chansons* of the period treat of *les guerres de Charlemagne contre ses vassaux*. Among them is *Huon of Bordeaux*, and *Renaud of Montauban*, the *Chanson* of the eldest of the four sons of Aymon.

historical traditions, and with little diffidence invent new incidents and characters. The increased influence of the Crusades induced them to send their heroes, and, Charles among the number, to Constantinople, to Jerusalem, and to the further East, and novel adventures are thus provided to meet them at every turn. The female characters grow more important, and every warrior becomes enamoured of a Saracen maiden. The poets were now for the first time entering into rivalry with Chrétien de Troyes, the author of *Perceval*, and of *Eric et Enide*, French versions of the Breton tales of King Arthur, and were incorporating with the old narrative stories of pure adventure and enchantment which harmonized ill with the severe facts of the ancient legends. The romance before us may itself be ascribed in its earliest extant form to this class of *chansons*, and supplies us with copious illustrations of its characteristic features.

§ 8. One other change in principle the *chansons de geste* were slowly experiencing throughout the 13th century. There was something conservative about this new development: although it boldly defied all historical probability, it strictly defined the limits within which the poets, who adopted its method, might allow their imagination to work. Not content with rehearsing the careers of individuals, the attempt was made to combine the separate poems into great cycles, which should narrate the fortunes of families of warriors. The poets recklessly created relationships between the various heroes of the isolated *chansons*, and by endowing them with similar characteristics and destinies, they attempted to force upon their romances some internal unity. Frequently their object was to connect their patrons and their patrons' enemies with warriors or traitors of olden time. Their tone was purely realistic, and the practice gave a new meaning to the word *geste*, and *chansons de geste* were interpreted as family histories. Charles or his father is the progenitor of the chief apocryphal family of the kind, but two other lines are known at least to have been worked up by the *trouveurs* with equal care.¹ Some,

¹ N'ot ke .III. gestes en France la garnie: Dou roi de France est la plus seignorie. . . . Et l'autre après, bien est droit que je die, Est de Doon à la barbe florie. Cil de Maiance qui tant ot baronie. . . . La tierce geste, qui molt fist à proisier, Fu de Garin de Monglaine le fier. *Girart de Viane*, pp. 1, 2, *chanson* of prob. first years of 13th century, quoted in *Hist. Poët.* p. 76.

like the Lablaciæ and Pelopidæ, were represented as bearing a fatal curse, but no religious notion, as in the Greek stories, was mingled with its transmission. It was wholly ascribed to the accident of blood relationship, and there was no further attempt to explain its cause. Doon of Mayence, the father of one of the *geste*, has, for example, the questionable honour of being regarded by the writers of this class of *Chansons* as the ancestor, through Ganelon, the villain of Roncesvalles, of a whole army of earthly traitors. All who intermarry with his family inevitably grow as sinful as their kinsmen.¹

§ 9. After the 14th century there is little fixed principle in the development of the Charlemagne romances. Additions and interpolations, sequels and prologues of pure invention follow each other in rapid succession. The *jongleurs'* chief endeavour was to catch the popular ear, and with that object before them they adopted every changing literary fashion. It was in vain that the older *trouveurs* protested that they were losing sight of the historical spirit of their predecessors.

“Chil nouvel jougléor, par leur outrecuidanche
Et pour leur nouveiaus dis, l'ont mis en oublianche,”

is the complaint of the author of *Doon de Maience*.² When the Alexandrian romances were at the height of their popularity, their versification was borrowed with its twelve-syllabled lines—a metre still known by the name of the hero which it was first employed to celebrate.³ Similarly, the authors of the *chansons* tried to refine the savagery of their old characters by foisting upon them the gentle courtesy of the Arthurian heroes and heroines. In many of their compositions the magical element of Eastern literature finds a large place, and in the later Middle Ages their successors made no resistance to the spurious chivalry that overran all the literature and social life of the period.⁴ At the same time Charles' history, as it was narrated

¹ The Chanson *Doon de Maience* dates from the 14th century. Alxinger, the German poet, attempted to make of a later form of it an epic poem in 1787.

² Ed. Pey. p. 1, quoted in M. Guessard's *Introd.* to *Huon*, p. vij.

³ The poem of *Roland* actually underwent the alteration. Cf. M. Gautier's *Introd.*, p. xxxvij. *Huon* and other poems were wholly rewritten in Alexandrines.

⁴ *Vide*, for example, the changes that came over the story of *Ogier le Danois*, of which a great portion exists in a 12th century version. In the latest version the hero visits the palace of Avallon, and is saved by the fairy Morgana, the sister of King Arthur, who, also living there, is visited by the Knights of his

in the *chansons*, found its way into the Chronicles and Latin ecclesiastical poems,¹ as at an earlier date the traditional poetry concerning Roland had entered the Chronicle wrongly ascribed to Turpin, and there the legends were fated to assume a markedly clerical tone.

§ 10. About the date of the invention of printing the metrical romances received their final form.² They were reduced in their contemporary shape to prose, and were soon afterwards printed and published. Many of them are characterized by the affectations and intricacies of style which Cervantes has powerfully satirized in his introduction to *Don Quixote*. But the earliest *Chansons* have for the most part escaped this final desecration. The simplicity of the *Chanson de Roland* did not satisfy the perverted literary tastes of an age which was wont to "praise Syr Topaz for a noble tale." All knowledge of it in its purest shape was lost; the manuscripts containing it disappeared, and the one revealing it to us in its 11th century form was only recovered during the present century.

§ 11. We need not dwell for our present purpose on the later history of the Charlemagne romances. The rise of the theatre did not affect them. With their characters continually repeated, with their perpetual battles, with their lack of female interest, they did not lend themselves to dramatization, and with only one or two was the experiment ever made in France. A few poems, based on incidents in Charles' romantic career, appeared in France in the 17th century. Napoleon, who posed in Europe as the 19th century Charlemagne, encouraged the study of his authentic and fictitious history, and his brother Lucien had the temerity to publish a volume of verses on "le digne précurseur de son frère." The romantic movement of the last century did not immediately affect the Charlemagne romances. They were known only in the late and degenerate prose versions, and although extracts from them were published in *La Bibliothèque des Romans* about 1778, all trace of their development was sought in vain. It was in the 19th century

Round Table. Ogier's magical return to youth, and all the magical machinery of the late romance are probably of Eastern origin. See *Hist. Poët.* pp. 305-13; and Dunlop, *Hist. of Fiction* (edit. 1845). pp. 138-140.

¹ *Hist. Poët.* pp. 92-107.

² Prose versions of thirteen *Chansons* were printed in France between 1480 and 1500.—*Hist. Poët.* p. 170.

that a vigorous and sustained effort was first made to learn their history, and to rediscover their original forms. The result of this endeavour, with which the name of Paulin Paris must be chiefly connected, has been to give the metrical romances a place among the most cherished remains of French mediæval poetry, and to raise about them a gigantic critical literature.

§ 12. If we carefully bear in mind the development of the French Charlemagne romances, which has here been very briefly sketched, we can readily determine the relations to which those that have been introduced into England stand towards them. One criticism may be made on nearly the whole of the English series. They almost all bear trace of being mere translations from French originals, although these have not always reached us. New details are occasionally introduced, but their leading features are literally borrowed, nor have the translators chosen the best or purest models. They have taken *chansons de geste* of the 14th and 15th centuries, and those of an earlier date appear to be unknown to them. The explanation, that a learned French critic has suggested for the fact is probably the true one. "At the time when our epic poetry was flourishing," he says, "that is, in the 13th and far more in the 12th centuries, our *chansons de geste* did not require translation to be understood in England by all whom they could interest; and in the 14th century when English writers wished to appropriate some of them, the old poems had been re-written, and the best of the early ones forgotten."¹ The circumstances that the *Chanson de Roland*, believed by several French writers to be the work of a Norman,² was read as generally in England as in France, and that the earliest extant manuscript of another *Chanson* of the 12th century, relating to Charles' apocryphal travels, leaves no doubt that it was prepared for Anglo-Norman readers,³ gives the best possible support to such criticism. The small effect that the English Charlemagne romances (except in the special case of *Huon of Bordeaux*) have had on our later literature is

¹ M. Paul Meyer in *La Bibliothèque de l'École des Chartes* (1867), p. 309.

² Such is the opinion of M. Gautier, *Introd.* to *Roland*, pp. xix—xxiv.

³ Cp. *Charlemagne*, an Anglo-Norman poem now first published by M. Francesque Michel, 1836. The MS. is in the Brit. Museum. King's Library, 16, E. viii.

attributable mainly to two causes. In the first place their literary inferiority must be generally acknowledged, and in the second they were in constant rivalry with the Arthurian romances which, although also borrowed from France, appealed more nearly to the history of our own past, and attracted by their gentle chivalrous tone, and their greater abundance of human interest, many writers possessed of a literary power which effectually naturalized them in this country. But it would be as serious an error to under-estimate, as to over-estimate, the influence of the Charlemagne literature in this country, and for myself I believe it has not yet, as a whole, been adequately measured.

§ 13. Including all the fragments of which we have any remains, the English romances are ten in number. Several of them treat of the same legend. Seven are in a metrical form, and have been referred to dates varying from the middle of the 14th to the opening of the succeeding century. Three are translations of prose versions, and appeared in England soon after the invention of printing.¹ The quasi-

¹ For the use of students the general results at which the editors in this series have arrived as to the number, date, and origin of the English Charlemagne Romances may be tabulated thus:

ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.		PROBABLE ORIGINS.
A. <i>Fierabras</i> cycle.		
Metrical.	1. <i>The Sowdone of Babylone</i> (? 1400).	1. An early version of the <i>Fierabras</i> story in <i>Balan</i> , a lost <i>Chanson</i> (12th c.).
	2. <i>Sir Ferumbras</i> (? 1380).	2. <i>Fierabras, Chanson de geste</i> (13th c.).
Prose.	3. <i>Charles the Grete</i> , 1485 [Caxton].	3. French prose romance of <i>Fierabras</i> (15th c.), formed of the <i>Ch. de g.</i> with extracts and additions from late <i>Chronicles</i> .
B. <i>Otinel</i> (or <i>Otuel</i>) cycle.		
Metrical.	1. <i>a. Roland and Vernagu</i> .	1. <i>a</i> & <i>β</i> . Remnants of a small English cycle, of which <i>a</i> is probably based on <i>Chronicle</i> s' (and mainly Turpin's) summaries of <i>Chansons</i> , not now known.
	<i>β. Otuel</i> [Auchinleck MS.].	<i>β</i> . Derived from a version of <i>Otinel</i> other than that in the extant <i>Chanson</i> of the name.
	2. <i>Sege of Melayne</i> (? 139).	2. Late prologue to <i>Ch. de g. Otinel</i> (13th c.) not extant in France.
	3. <i>Otuel</i> [Thornton MS.] ?1390.	3. <i>Otinel, Chanson de geste</i> (13th c.).

historical events, to which all with four exceptions refer, are prior to the great expedition to Spain, in which Roland met his death, but they have a very vague historical foundation. The death or conversion of Saracen chiefs, and the marriage of their hastily-baptized daughters with Christian heroes are invariably the central motives of the poems, and the French warriors are challenged to fight with truly 'damnable iteration' by Saracen giants like Ferumbras, Otuel, and Vernagu. The early romances do not evince strong crusading tendencies so distinctly as an emphatic ecclesiastical or theological tone of thought, which is not present in any but the late French poems. *Fierabras* and *Otinel*, two well-known *chansons de geste*, have inspired the greater number of the Early English romances. They narrate the struggles between Charles, as the champion of the Papacy, and the Saracen enemies of Rome; in the first romance the Emperor's object is to recover *les reliques de la Passion*, and in the second to baptize the leading opponent of Christianity. In their extant French forms both poems date from the 13th century; but they bear traces of having already undergone frequent *remaniements*, and although they are free from the extravagant interpolations common to those of a later date, they are far from being the best literary examples of their class. Of *Fierabras*, *Sir Ferumbras*, the metrical romance, which appeared first in this series, is a fairly literal English rendering,¹ and Caxton's prose romance of *Charles the Grete* is translated from an extended French prose version of the same *Chanson*.² *Fierabras*, in an earlier form, originally constituted the central portion of a longer poem known to some early chroniclers, under the

C. Detached Romances.

Metrical. Prose.	{	1. <i>Roulaude's Song</i> (? 1400).	1. <i>Remaniement</i> (13th c.), of <i>Chanson de Roland</i> , now unknown.
		2. <i>Rauf Coilyear</i> (c. 1475).	2. Most probably original.
		3. <i>Four sons of Aymon</i> , 1490 [Caxton].	3. French prose version (15th c.) of the <i>Ch. de g., Renaud de Montauban</i> (13th c.).
		4. <i>Huon of Bordeaux</i> , ? 1534 [Berners].	4. French prose version (15th c.) of the <i>Ch. de g. Huon de Bordeaux</i> (13th c.).

¹ The English Charlemagne Romances, Pt. I. *Sir Ferumbras*, edited by Sidney J. Herrtage. B.A., E. E. T. S. 1879. (From Ashmole MS. 33.)

² Pts. III. and IV. ed. S. J. Herrtage. 1880-1. (From unique Brit. Mus. copy.)

title of *Baban*, and the *Sordone of Babylone*, which is evidently an adaptation of a more detailed version of the opening part of the story of Fierabras than that to be found in the surviving *Chanson*, is probably based on a portion of the lost cycle, doubtless extant in the time of the English translator.¹ Similarly, *Otinél* has given birth to two metrical translations, of which the one in the Thornton MS. adheres with much literalness² to the *Chanson*, as we now have it, and the other, in the Auchinleck MS., is altogether freer in its general treatment, and perhaps drawn from a *remaniement* other than any we now possess.³ The two romances of *The Siege of Melayne*⁴ and *Roland and Vernagu*⁵ can be referred to no known French poems, but we must hesitate before pronouncing them original English productions. The former is probably taken from some introduction to *Otinél*, written at the period when every Charlemagne legend was receiving various amplifications. The latter is reasonably thought by M. Gaston Paris, to have belonged to an English poem of the 14th century, bearing some such title as 'Charlemagne and Roland,' mainly based on extracts from Turpin's *Chronicles* and a late version of *Otinél*.

Of the remaining English romances the fragment of the Song of Roland is drawn from a poor 13th century version of the great *Chanson de Roland*.⁶ Caxton's *Four Sons of Aymon*⁷ and Lord Berner's *Huon of Bordeaux*,⁸ are both direct translations of French prose romances, that is, of amplified and corrupted versions of two 13th century *chansons de geste*, *Renaud de Montauban*, and *Huon de Bordeaux*. Rauf Coiljeer, in the absence of all evidence to the contrary, has been regarded as an original English poem.⁹ It is evidently of a late date, and its connection with the other Charlemagne legends is very slight. Thus almost all the English romances share the characteristics of those *chansons de geste* which have under-

¹ Pt. V. *The Romance of the Sordone of Babylone*, edited by Dr. Hausknecht (E. E. T. S.), 1881. (From Phillipp's MS.)

² Pt. II, pp. 53-105. Ed. by S. J. Herrtage. (E. E. T. S.) 1880.

³ Pt. VI, pp. 65, *et seq.* Ed. S. J. Herrtage. (E. E. T. S.) 1882.

⁴ Pt. II, pp. 1-53. ⁵ Pt. VI, pp. 1-65.

⁶ Pt. II, pp. 105-137. (From unique Lansdowne MS.)

⁷ Pt. IX. (Not yet reprinted.)

⁸ Pts. VII. and VIII. (1882.) ⁹ Pt. VI. (1882.)

gone numerous renovations. Of the Charlemagne poems in their purest shapes English literature clearly knows nothing.

§ 14. Of the popularity of each of these poems, which in the case of *Fierumbras* and *Otuel* was certainly great in the 14th and 15th centuries, evidence has been given in the prefaces to the various volumes that have already been published, but in the general survey I am here taking I may bring together a few general facts to demonstrate the limits of their influence. We believe that in the early Middle Ages our Norman ancestors were generally well acquainted with the great incidents of the series of legends, although of the vastness of the cycle they knew little. Descriptions of Charles and stories of Roland, for example, were certainly received here with universal favour. It is very probable, as many have pointed out, that the *Chanson de Roland* was sung by the Normans at the battle of Senlac.¹ M. Gautier is of opinion that it is the work of an Anglo-Norman poet, and some French critics have even ascribed it to a famous abbot of Peterborough.² Beside these disputable opinions we may place the facts that the earliest and chief manuscript of this poem has been for many centuries, and is still, in an English library, and that Anglo-Norman versions of other Charlemagne romances leave no doubt that they were largely read in England in the 12th and 13th centuries. Norman-French poems of the period, moreover, always do honour to Charlemagne and Roland. In some verses, in an early English poem, probably of the time of Edward I., we meet with such a passage as this :

Fele romanses men make newe
Of good knyghtes strong and trewe ;
Of hey dedys men rede romance,
Both in England and in Fraunce,
Of Rowelond and of Olyver
And of everie Doseper.³

In later times the Pyrenees were always identified in England with the disaster of Roncesvalles, and when the Black Prince's expedition to

¹ Mr. Herrtage quotes the famous lines from Wace's *Roman de Rou* on the point (Pt. II. of the Series, p. xix). Mr. Freeman, in his *Norman Conquest* (iii. 478), is of opinion that Wace's statement refers to the *Chanson*.

² *Introd. to Roland*, xiv-xxvi.

³ Quoted in Warton's *English Poetry* from an introductory poem to *Richard Cœur de Lion* (temp. Ed. I.), ii. p. 25. (Hazlitt's Edition.)

Spain was celebrated in a Latin poem, a monkish gloss reminded its readers that *Carolus magnus rediens de Hispania amisit ibi Rothelande et ceteros in Roncevalle sepultos*.¹ Chaucer, moreover, and other poets knew Ganelon, the traitor of Roncesvalles, as a typical villain, worthy of a place beside Judas Iscariot or Sinon.² One circumstance in the legend of Roland—his friendship for Oliver—has given us a very common proverbial phrase which France never possessed.³ Spenser, like many of his predecessors from the time of Robert of Brunne, has anglicized the word *douzeperes*, which in the Charlemagne romances is the technical name of the twelve chief companions of the Emperor, and uses it in the singular in the sense of a mighty warrior.⁴ And for a long time in England the fame of the defeat of Roncesvalles survived in a common adjectival epithet, and a strong voice or a strong woman was known as a *ronceival* voice or a *ronceival* woman.⁵

After the Middle Ages Charles the Great grew less familiar to Englishmen, but he was not unknown to them, and the prose romances, which only show him in inglorious dotage, were widely read. More than one play in the 16th century was based on his exploits and those of his companions, and Dyce's statement that he was unacquainted with any old play in which that monarch figures must be regarded as based on imperfect information.⁶ We

¹ Wright's *Political Poems*, i. 105. (Rolls' Series.)

² Chaucer, *Nonne Prestes Tale*, 15,232-4. The Fox is thus addressed:—

“O false morderour, rucking in thy den!

O newe Scariot, *newe Ganelon*,

O false dissimulour, O Greek Sinon.”

See also *Monkes Tale*, 14,653-6.

³ The exact origin of ‘*A Roland for an Oliver*,’ which is omitted, so far as I can see, from W. C. Hazlitt's *English Proverbs*, has never been explained. The French expression of the same character runs—*Je lui bailleai Gay contre Robert*. A discussion some years ago, in *Notes and Queries*, as to the growth of the phrase, failed to throw any real light on the subject.

⁴ Cp. ‘Big-looking, like a doughty Doucepere,’ *Faerie Queene*, III. x. 30. Warton in his *Observations on the Faerie Queene* (i. 252-8) gives an instructive account of the use of the word in England.

⁵ Nares' Diet, (ed. Halliwell and Wright), s.v. *Ronceivall*, large, strong. ‘Th'art a good *ronceival* voice to cry lantern and candlestick.’—*Satiromastix*. Speaking of gigantic bones seen at Roncesvalles, Mandeville says, ‘Hereof I take it comes that seeing a great woman we say she is a *Ronceivall*.’—*Travels*, Fol. 22. Ed. 1600. Similarly, Tusser, as Mr. Herbage points out to me, calls marrow-fat peas, ‘*ronceivall* peas.’—*Husbandry*, ch. xli. l. 9.

⁶ Dyce's *Pecle*, ii. 88.

have at least one drama in manuscript, of which he is the hero,¹ and two others are known to have existed, although no longer extant, in which he must have played an important part.² Meanwhile Roland or Orlando was re-introduced to English readers in Elizabeth's reign by Sir John Harrington's popular translation of Ariosto's *Orlando Furioso*, and upon this foundation Robert Greene based one of his tame dramatic productions.³ And, though the Roland of the Italian poet differed very much from his prototype in the *chansons de geste*, his reappearance in a new form temporarily renewed their familiarity with his name and many of his characteristic adventures.

Shortly after the 16th century, Charles the Great and Roland, like other mediæval heroes, were practically lost sight of in England, and little attempt has since been made to revive an interest in their legendary history. Not even in chap-books were their achievements perpetuated, and they failed to attract the genius of any great literary worker who might have given them a lasting place in the higher branches of our literature. We have in all periods to seek in somewhat obscure places for indications of their popularity, and, although we may legitimately infer that the Charlemagne heroes were ever held in high honour in mediæval and Tudor England, and although we know that they made their way into the common parlance of our countrymen, we cannot regard them, with one exception, as leaving upon our literature any deep or permanent impression.

¹ My friend, Mr. A. H. Bullen, has pointed out to me the Egerton MS., 1994, in the British Museum, where the play is to be found. He has given an account of it in the 2nd volume of his *Collection of Old Plays*, and I have there, at his request, added a note on the manner in which the legend, embodied in the play, reached this country.

² They were based on Caxton's *Four Sons of Aymon* and Berners' *Huon of Bordeaux*. Vide Henslowe's *Diary*, and *infra*, p. xlvii.

³ *The Historie of Orlando Furioso, one of the Twelve Pieres of France*. 1594. *Infra*, p. xlix.

II.

THE ROMANCE OF HUON OF BORDEAUX.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>§ 1. <i>The 13th century Chanson de geste</i>, p. xxiv.</p> <p>§ 2. <i>Its story</i>, p. xxv.</p> <p>§ 3. <i>Its main characteristics</i>, p. xxvi.</p> <p>§ 4. <i>Historical traditions of Huon</i>, p. xxviii.</p> <p>§ 5. <i>The origin of the Oberon-legend</i>, p. xxix.</p> <p>§ 6. <i>The character of Oberon in the early romance</i>, p. xxxi.</p> <p>§ 7. <i>Amplifications of the Romance</i>, p. xxxii.</p> <p>§ 8. <i>The continuations in the Turin Manuscript</i>, p. xxxiii.</p> <p>§ 9. <i>Other developments of the story in France and Holland</i>, p. xxxv.</p> <p>§ 10. <i>The French prose version</i>, p. xxxvi.</p> | <p>§ 11. <i>Later history of the romance in France</i>, p. xxxvii.</p> <p>§ 12. <i>The English translation</i>, p. xxxviii.</p> <p>§ 13. <i>The political career of Lord Berners</i>, p. xl.</p> <p>§ 14. <i>His literary character</i>, p. xlii.</p> <p>§ 15. <i>His translation of Froissart</i>, p. xlv.</p> <p>§ 16. <i>Other works</i>, p. xlv.</p> <p>§ 17. <i>Lord Berners' death</i>, p. xlv.</p> <p>§ 18. <i>Romances in Elizabethan England</i>, p. xlvi.</p> <p>§ 19. <i>Popularity of Huon of Bordeaux, 1547—1594</i>, p. xlviii.</p> <p>§ 20. <i>Oberon in English literature</i>, p. xlix.</p> <p>§ 21. <i>Bibliography of Huon of Bordeaux</i>, p. lii.</p> <p>§ 22. <i>Conclusion</i>, p. lvii.</p> |
|--|---|

§ 1. The romance of *Huon of Bordeaux* illustrates in several ways the general remarks I have been making on both the French and English versions of the Charlemagne legends, but, beyond the characteristics that it has in common with its class, it possesses certain features peculiar to itself, that perhaps give it its highest interest in the eyes of English readers. In France it has undergone a very extended development, capable of a clearer presentation than in the case of many other of the *chansons de geste*; in England, translated almost literally, it has not only enjoyed its full share of popularity, but, by supplying the Elizabethan poets with the story of Oberon, has exerted upon English literature an influence to which no other members of its class can legitimately lay claim.

None of the forms in which we know the romance of *Huon* can be referred to a very early date. The oldest extant *chanson de geste* on the subject, the manuscript of which is now in the library of

Tours, possesses hardly any of the characteristics of the *Chanson de Roland*.¹ Its incidents are more complicated, and belong for the most part to a very different world. The central interest of the poem is divided between the peer of France, who plays the title-*rôle*, and an omnipotent and omniscient dwarf, who adorns the throne of fairy land. It is impossible to ascribe the story, as it first appears, to any date anterior to the middle of the 13th century. Four times was it probably rewritten in metre before the invention of printing, when it was reduced to prose in France, and in that garb brought to our own shores. But in spite of the amplifications and continuations that the tale has experienced—changes which have more than tripled its original length—the first half of both the French and English prose versions has preserved with little alteration the story as it appears in the 13th century *chanson*. The chapters printed in the volume before us present the old story in its original literary shape. The last portion of Lord Berners' translations, like his French original, owes its origin to sources of far less antiquity.

§ 2. So much of the legend of Huon as reverts to the 13th century is to the following effect. The story in the *Chanson* opens four years after the death of Séguin, the duke of Bordeaux. His two young sons, Huon and Gerard, who have inherited his property, have not as yet done homage to the Emperor, their suzerain. But their troubles have already begun. A traitor at Charles' court, Earl Amaury by name, covets their inheritance, and on the ground that they have not already acknowledged in person their vassalage, denounces them to Charles as rebels against his authority. The Emperor at the moment is of great age and feeble health, and, being about to resign his crown in favour of his son Charlot, is desirous that his supremacy should be recognized in every part of his dominions. Huon and Gerard are, therefore, ordered to appear at once before him at Paris, or forfeit their estates to the Earl, who

¹ For an account of the MS. see M. Guessard's edition of the poem, Paris, 1860, p. xxxix. *et seq.* Its versification is like that of *La Chanson*, but its tirades are much longer, extending at times to 500 vv. The length of the *Chanson* is 10,495 lines. Neither the name nor province of the author is known.

had called the Emperor's attention to their dereliction of duty. Well aware that they could give satisfactory proofs to their royal master of their loyalty, the traitor, as soon as he learnt that the youths were on their way to the capital, induced the prince Charlot, Charles' elder son, over whom he exercised unlimited control, to join him in a plot for waylaying and killing them on their journey. But his plans were unsuccessful. Charlot wounds Gerard, but is himself slain by Huon. The Emperor, on learning the death of his son, vows eternal vengeance upon his murderer. A duel between Huon and Amaury, which proves fatal to the latter, only inflames his wrath, and he finally dismisses the young knight on a grotesque, but perilous, and, to all appearance, fatal mission to Babylon. There the first part of the *chanson de geste* of Huon of Bordeaux may be said to close, and in the remaining verses the form of the story somewhat changes. Very perilous indeed are the adventures that Huon meets in the East, although he is fortunate enough to find a companion in Gerames, an old friend of his father's, who is living a hermit's life among the Saracens. To most of the dangers he must have succumbed, had he only relied on human means of protection. Happily, however, he finds other aid. Oberon, the dwarf-king of the fairies, whose dominions lie between Jerusalem and Babylon, taking pity on the knight's misfortunes, proffers his assistance, and with such support Huon not only successfully performs his mission, but woos and marries Esclaramonde, the daughter of the Emir of Babylon, on her conversion to Christianity. On his return to France the treachery of his brother Gerard plunges him once again into difficulties, but Oberon extricates him from the new dangers, reconciles him to the Emperor, and ultimately names him his successor on the throne of fairy land.

§ 3. The story, it will be perceived, has all the characteristics which were attributed to the *chansons de gestes* in their decline. Charlemagne has no dignity about his bearing. His power is jealously regarded by his vassals, and he is more than once placed in a position of signal humiliation. "Syr, yf ye do as ye haue sayde," are the words addressed to him by one of his counsellors in Lord Berners' version, which here almost literally translates the old French poem—"Sir, yf ye do as ye haue sayd, I nor neuer any other man shall truste you,

& every man shall say, fare & here, that herof (hear of) thys extorsyon, that in the end of your dayes ye are become chyklysche, & more lyke a sot then a wyse man.”¹ Other circumstances are still more decisive. A reference to Tristram’s love for the “fayre Ysoude” and some points in the genealogy of Oberon, indicate that the author was acquainted with the Arthurian romances,² and Huon’s statement that he “departyd out of fraunce . . . That any adventure that I myght here of, though it were neuer so perelous that I shulde neuer eschew it for any fere of deth,” brings him in close relations with the heroes of the *romans d’aventures*.³ The absurd length to which the writer pushes the endeavour, that characterizes the later poems of the *jougleurs*, to bring his hero into lineal relationship with all sorts and conditions of men with whom he comes in contact on his journeyings, is another testimony to the lateness of the present form of the legend.⁴ The important place which the enchantments of Oberon hold in the story, the care bestowed on the treatment of the character and influence of Esclaramonde, the hero’s bride, and the extravagant unreality of Huon’s adventures in the East, likewise supply conclusive evidence in favour of a similar inference. The 13th century *Chanson* must be positively placed among those romances which attempt to graft on the simple lines of the pure *chansons de geste* the varied incident of the tales of the Round Table, and the magical machinery of Eastern stories like the *Arabian Nights’ Entertainment*.

¹ *Infra*, p. 47, ll. 9, *et seq.*—

“Quant les noveles iront par la païs

 Que diront tout li haut homme jentil?
 Vos jugemens n’ert mais en France oïs,
 Tout diront mais, li grant et li petit ;
 Qu’en vo vielleece estes tous rasotis.”

Huon de Bordeaux, ll. 22-29, *et seq.*

See also, Oberon’s reference to the Emperor’s fatal sin, ll. 10,225, *et seq.*, and *infra*, p. 258.

² *Infra*, p. 157, l. 27, *Huon de Bordeaux*, l. 6808,—

“Tristrans morut por bele Iseut amer.”

For Oberon’s genealogy see below, pp. 72-3.

³ *Infra*, p. 97, l. 1, *et seq.*, and *Huon*, l. 4595, *et seq.*

⁴ Huon claims relationship with the Pope of Rome, with the Abbot of Cluny, with Garyn of Saint Omers, a lord of Brindisi, with Macaire, the pagan tyrant of Tormont, with Sebylle, the prisoner of the castle of Dunostre, and many others, as the reader will perceive for himself.

§ 4. There are many traces in the poem itself of a legend of a previous period, devoid of such embellishments as I have noticed,—of a *chanson* celebrating Huon's exploits before an enchanted world had become a commonplace with the *trouveurs* or *jongleurs*. Much of the versification of the 13th century, for example, has an older rhythm.¹ The story of the causes of Huon's banishment, after a few slight modifications have been made, has an early mediæval tone,² and, although the historical element is not readily detected, it is easy to perceive that in it has been incorporated many vague memories of early historical events. An early chronicler tells us how a duke of Bordeaux, whose son once challenged Charlot, the Emperor's heir, bore, like the father of the hero of the romance,³ the name of Séguin. Instances, moreover, of such disagreement with the ruler of France as Huon exhibits, occur frequently in the history of the princes of Aquitaine in the 8th century. Similarly, an early manuscript of an epic poem of the 12th century, narrating the exploits of the chief warriors of Lorraine—*Les Loherains*,—contains seventeen verses which tell how Huon, the son of duke Séguin of Bordeaux, slew an earl at Paris, and, being for the crime banished the Empire, went to Lombardy, where he married the daughter of a Count, and finally died of poison.⁴ If this form of the legend has little claim to be considered of the highest antiquity, it sufficiently proves that Oberon was not originally the protector of Huon after his banishment, and that his journey to the East may be regarded as purely apocryphal. But a closer parallel to the adventures of Huon at Paris has been found by a recent writer in *Romania*, in historical facts which possibly have a better claim to be considered as the prototype of the tale. Certain events that took place under Charles the Bald are almost identical with those recorded in the first part of the romance. And, if we allow the general resemblance, the confusion of identity between the Emperor and his grandson, an error that could be

¹ This and the recurrence of the same couplets are noted by M. Gautier in his support of this view.—*Les Epopées Françaises*, iii. 732.

² That is to say, the first 2000 lines of the *Chanson* and just 20 chapters of this text (pp. 1-53).

³ *Les Epopées Françaises*, iii. 732.

⁴ Quoted by M. Gautier (as above).

paralleled in all popular literature, need not cause us much embarrassment. During the reign of Charles the Bald, authentic records tell us, the county of Bordeaux was governed by a duke, named Séguin, whose bold defence of Saintouge against the Normans, usually confounded in the French national traditions with the Saracens, exactly fitted him to be the hero of popular *cantilènes* and of later epic narrative. Similarly, Charles the Bald's eldest son closely resembles the Charlot of the romance. Like the latter, he was "ryght pryuey" with traitors,¹ and he was slain by a brave warrior in pursuit of a foolish adventure.² How these floating traditions of Séguin, Huon and the heir of Charles the Bald may have crystallized, and at length have been introduced into the great Charlemagne epic cycle, is a process of assimilation that must be readily intelligible to the student of popular mythology.

§ 5. As early as the 13th century, however, we have evidence that Oberon became an essential part of the story. Albericus Trium Fontium, in his chronicles which were finished about 1240, gives a version of the legend very similar to that of the romance. "Mortuus est," he writes, "etiam hoc anno (810) Sewinus dux Burdegalensis, cui fratres fuerunt Alelmus et Ancherus, hujus Sewini filii Gerardus et Hugo, qui Karolum, filium Karoli, casu interfecit, Almaricum proditorem in duello vicit, exul de patria ad mandatum regis fugit, *Alberonem, virum mirabilem et fortunatum reperit*, et cœtera sive fabulosa sive historica connexa."³ The passage constitutes one of the earliest records of the existence of the fairy king under the name of Oberon (Auberon) in European literature, and his importance in our own literature, together with the part he takes in the romance before us, is sufficient excuse for our dwelling on his origin and early history. M. Gaston Paris has attempted to show that an apocryphal prince of

¹ *Infra*, p. 15.

² M. Longnon in *Romania*, t. iii., has carefully worked out the probable connection of Huon with the reign of Charles the Bald, and has reprinted from various early chronicles all that is known of Séguin or the young Charles. Charlot bears in *Huon* exactly the opposite character to that which he does in the earlier *Chanson de Geste* of "Ogier le Danois," and there is no historical basis for his treacherous behaviour, unless we admit M. Longnon's theory.—Gautier, *Les Épopées Françaises*, vol. iii. 734.

³ M. Guessard's *Huon de Bordeaux*, p. xij.

the Merovingian dynasty, who was credited with singular powers of enchantment, bore the name of *Albericus*, but we are not ready to regard the Oberon-legend as based on any strictly historical foundation.¹ He is probably a purely mythical character, and, so far, is wholly foreign to the Charlemagne cycle; but, nevertheless, the author of *Huon* has not the slightest logical justification for placing him in an Eastern environment. He springs from the mythology of the Western world, and though many arguments have been advanced to connect him with Celtic or Welsh myths, I incline to the opinion that he is purely Teutonic. M. de la Villemarqué has most vigorously supported the Celtic theory. He identifies the fairy king with the ruler of the enchanted world in Welsh romances, Gwyn-Araun by name, of which he claims Oberon (*i. e.* Auberon, as it is usually spelt in French) to be a literal translation. In Welsh mythology he asserts that Gwyn is brought up, like Oberon, by "Morge li fée," and, similarly, is a dwarf in appearance, and bears at his neck a magic horn.² But the Germanic theory is based on firmer and wider foundations. Auberon, as Keightley long ago pointed out, very closely resembles the dwarf Elberich or Alberich, who figures in many early German folk tales.³ In the *Nibelungen-lied* Alberich is the guardian of the celebrated hoard which Siegfried won from the Nibelungen, and in a story of the *Heldenbuch*, a collection of German romances of the 13th century, a king of the elves bearing the same name plays a rôle very similar to that of Oberon in *Huon of Bordeaux*. Here Ortnit, a German emperor, visits the Sultan of Syria to gain his daughter. Alberich meets him on his journey, and aids him in his quest. He is three feet in height, can foresee the future, and forbids, as in the case of Huon and Esclaramonde,

¹ Cp. *Revue Germanique*, xvi, p. 387.

² See his letter on the subject in M. Gnessard's edition of *Huon de Bordeaux*. Paris, 1860, pp. xxv-xxix. M. Gaston Paris positively denies that Gwyn-Araun is a translation of Auberon, and thus the basis of Villemarqué's theory is destroyed. Gwyn = white, but Aube, it is asserted, never represented in French the Latin album (*i. e.* Fr. blanc). *Revue Germanique*, xvi, pp. 350-90.

³ Keightley's *Fairy Mythology*, p. 206. Alberich is connected by Grimm (*Deutsche Mythologie*, p. 599) with Alp- Alb- Elb = elf. *Ich*, another writer explains, is a German termination which has been replaced in French by the Romance termination *ou*.

all intercourse between Ortnit and his pagan bride until after the latter's baptism.¹ The connection between him and Oberon is, as Keightley has remarked, indubitable, and the German story, of which he is one of the chief heroes, is almost identical with parts of *Huon*. But there is little need to accept the opinion of some continental critics, and regard either of the tales as borrowed from the other. As M. Gaston Paris has suggested, Alberich or Auberon, perhaps originally a hero of Rhenish folk-lore, doubtless formed part of the Frankish, as of all German, mythology, and his traits have been preserved in the romances of both France and Germany.

§ 6. But though of Teutonic origin, Oberon in the romance before us has submitted in no slight degree to other influences, and has absorbed characteristics from very different sources. His poetic creator would seem indeed to have made of him a *point de rencontre* for those three great currents of the narrative poetry of early mediæval France of which we have already spoken. He represents the ideas that were identified not only with Frankish history, but also with that of *Br-tagne et Rome la grand*. Mainly Frankish in tone, Oberon has assimilated some of the spirit not only of Breton romance, but of classical and scriptural antiquity, as it was known in the Middle Ages. Any one of the curious pedigrees that appear in the various versions of the romance illustrates the mingled elements of which he is compounded. In the 13th century *chanson* he thus describes his birth,—

“ Jules Cesar me nori bien soué ;
 Morge li fée, qui tant ot de biauté,
 Che fu ma mère, si me puist Dix salver.
 De ces II fui concus et engerrés.”—Vv. 3492-6.

He is, in fact, a son of Julius Cæsar and Morgan le Fay. The former in mediæval legend, it should be borne in mind, is little connected with the Cæsar of history. With Alexander the Great, to whom he is often lineally allied, he shares in the romances the honour of typifying papal and imperial Rome, *i. e.* Christianity and the Western Empire, and his introduction into Oberon's genealogy is the mode adopted by the poet to explain, as Teutonic mythology fails to do, the Christian zeal and crusading fervour, combined with the humane

¹ *Infra*, pp. 153-4 ; *Huon de Bordeaux*, 6688, *et seq.*

tenderness and sober temperament, by which the dwarf is characterized in the romance. Even in *Ortnit*, Alberich, who in so many ways is a counterfeit presentment of Huon's fairy king, like most dwellers in the enchanted world of Germany, resembles "Puck or Robin Goodfellow," and bears no trace of Oberon's "note of high seriousness." His mother, who can be none other than the third sister of King Arthur, "a great clerk in nigromancy," is similarly given a place in the pedigree, that her presence may account for the Celtic or Breton features implanted in the Oberon of the story of *Huon*. The fear, with which he is at first regarded by the knight and his faithful companion, Gerames, recalls the reputation which the dwarfs usually bear in Breton tradition.¹ The notion that Huon, like Falstaff,² had of fairies,—“he that speaks to them shall die,”—is not common in purely Teutonic stories. At the same time his delicate beauty—his “aungelyke vysage”—connects him with another aspect of Celtic mythology, while his magic cup, which is always full in the hands of the virtuous man,³ but is empty in those of the sinful, has many parallels in the Arthurian and Gaelic romances, but none in those of ancient Germany, or in the early Charlemagne cycle. Furthermore, his Asiatic home and the luxurious splendour of his enchanted palaces and attire recall the stories of the Caliphs. We may therefore finally conclude that Oberon, as he was known in early French literature, was a figure derived from Frankish folk-lore, but, that he has not only been enveloped by the author of *Huon de Bordeaux* in traditions of Christian Rome and Brittany, but has also been tinged with an Eastern colouring. Such, it may be suggested, is a legitimate analysis of his complicated character.

§ 7. The intricacies and incongruities that had, as we have seen, been foisted on an early and simple legend of Huon, even in the 13th-century *chanson de geste*,—the first connected form in which the story is extant,—did not prevent it experiencing further complications

¹ Ce caractère traître et sournois des nains est le plus ordinaire dans les traditions bretonnes ; ils ne parlent guère que lorsqu'ils trouvent l'occasion de nuire à quelqu'un, comme ici (*i. e.* in *Tristan et Yseult*, where King March's dwarf denounces them), etc. De la Villemarqué.—*Les Romans de la Table Ronde*, p. 421.

² *Merry Wives of Windsor*, V. v. 48 : cf. *Infra*, p. 63. “if ye speke to hym, ye are lost for euer.”

³ *Infra*, p. 76.

at the hands of succeeding *jougleurs bâtarbs*. Oberon was a character capable of inspiring too lengthy a series of strange adventures to allow a speedy arrest of the development of the romance, and the 10,000 lines of the old poem were lengthened almost immediately to 14,000, and ultimately to 30,000 verses.¹ While the story of Huon's quarrel and strife with the Emperor is preserved in all the extant versions in its main outlines, the *remaniements* of the later part of the 13th and 14th centuries either endeavour to supply their readers with more elaborate information as to Oberon's career before he makes the acquaintance of Huon, or extend the history of the knight himself until he is firmly seated on the throne of fairy land. And a series of stories about his sons and daughters and grand-daughters, in many of which he is made to play the part of a *Deus ex machinâ*, is finally added. Such amplifications, it need hardly be said, are purely fabulous; they are crowded with incidents hopelessly irrational, and often brutally unnatural; and a perusal of them must lead every reader to worship with a whole heart at the shrine of Cervantes, who ultimately succeeded in directing into other channels the perverse ingenuity of the authors of like fictions.

§ 8. No less than seven continuations of *Huon* are extant; four of them have been introduced into the prose version, and form, as in his original, the concluding chapters of Lord Berners' translation. The greater number of these extensions may be found in a unique 14th-century manuscript now at Turin.² The document opens with a lengthy metrical prologue entitled *Le Roman d'Auberon*, which is one of the most remarkable examples of the confused historical notions of mediæval writers with which I remember to have met. It is based for the greater part on detached verses of the

¹ The French MSS. of the metrical romance may be arranged thus:—

(1) Tours MS. (10,000 vv.). 13th cent.

(2) Paris MS. I. (14,000 vv.). 13th cent.

(3) Turin MS. (30,000 vv.). 14th cent.

(4) Paris MS. II. (Alexandrine *remaniement*). 15th cent.

(5) Hamilton MS. 1341.

² The fullest description of the MS. and its contents may be found in M. L. Gautier, *Les Épopées Françaises*, iii. 742. Prof. Graf has printed the introductory poem to which I refer as Part I. of a series entitled *I complimenti della Chanson d'Huon de Bordeaux*, Halle a/S. 1878.

13th-century *chanson* of *Huon*, combined with copious extracts from the Arthurian romances, and much Oriental and Scriptural imagery. Judas Maccabæus is the hero of its first pages. After fighting with the Saracens, he marries a Saracen princess, and has by her a daughter, Brunehaut, who is destined by the fairies to pass her life in fairy land. Nevertheless, she is wooed and won by Julius Cæsar; but her married life proves unhappy, and her husband at length deserts her, when on a visit to the court of King Arthur, for Morgan le Fay. Of the last union Oberon is the offspring, and, after many chivalric adventures at King Arthur's court, Caesar's son at a dangerous crisis receives assistance from the dishonoured Brunehaut on condition of befriending Huon, of whose existence he thus hears for the first time. The old tale of the knight of Bordeaux then follows, and it is succeeded by five *chansons* detailing the adventures of Huon's descendants.

Of the first part of the extended romance (*La Chanson d'Esclaramonde*) Huon's wife Esclaramonde is the heroine. Roul the Emperor of Germany, smitten with love for her, lays siege to Bordeaux, and Huon in order to gain assistance sets sail for the East. His adventures there are more astonishing than before. In his wanderings he meets with Judas Iscariot and Cain, and finds apples of youth with which to rejuvenate all his friends. One of his experiences is identical with an adventure of the third calendar in the *Thousand and One Nights*, repeated in the so-called *Travels of Sir John Mandevile*. But Huon survives all his dangers; with Oberon's aid Bordeaux is saved, and the knight and his wife are conducted on a winged horse to fairy land, on the throne of which the former is at length seated. The wooing of Clarisse or Clariette, the eldest daughter of Huon and Esclaramonde, is the subject of another preposterous addition (*La Chanson de Clarisse et Florent*). Courted by all the princes of Europe, from Hungary to Aragon, she is subjected to every variety of persecution. But she finds a true champion in Florent, the son of Peter of Aragon, with whom Huon, in his rôle of king of fairy land, ultimately unites her.¹ The adventures of Ide,

¹ M. Gaston Paris sees in this story the influence of the well-known romance of Aucassin et Nicolette. See the notes on chaps. 158, *et seq.*

the daughter of Clariette and Florent (*La Chanson d'Ide et d'Olive*), immediately follow in the Turin manuscript, and here the imagination of the author assumes very repulsive features. Ide, to escape from the incestuous advances of her own father, travels in man's clothing to the court of the German Emperor, and is forcibly married to his daughter, who has been unhappy enough to fall in love with the stranger. But a strange divine interposition at length extricates the actors from their curious embarrassment. The lengthy series of stories concludes with an account of the misfortunes of Godin, a son of Huon (*La Chanson de Godin*), whose enemies are only routed by his father's enchantments.

§ 9. Another version of Huon's adventures after his reconciliation with the French Emperor is found in a unique manuscript in the National Library at Paris, which is usually referred to the 15th century. Three years pass, and the knight leaves Bordeaux for Oberon's dominions. After passing through Rome and visiting the Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem, he is welcomed to Fairyland, and amid gorgeous ceremonies crowned its king. Dangers, however, beset him even here. He has to fight a lengthy war with a tribe of giants, but after overcoming them, his wife, and a daughter Judic, of whom the writer says, "plus belle rien ne vit nulz lions vivant," come to share his kingdom. The manuscript breaks off when Huon is just entering on a new war. Another manuscript of the same date as the former contains the romance wholly rewritten and amplified in Alexandrine verse. It is of interest mainly for the familiar references it makes to another amplification of the story, *le livre de Croissant*, a great-grandson of Huon, which is only extant in the prose versions.

Of other forms of the story we know very little. A beautiful manuscript in the Hamilton collection—*le Roman du Loyal Comte Huon*, bearing the date of 1341—may or may not be a copy of one of the manuscripts which have been described as unique. So far as we know, it has never been examined by the French critics of mediæval literature, and I have been unable to obtain a glimpse of it.¹ There

¹ My only knowledge of this MS. is derived from an account of the Hamilton MSS. recently sold to the German Government, and now I believe in Berlin, that appeared in the *Athenæum*, November 11th, 1882. The description is as follows :—Huon, de Bordeaux : *Le Roman du Loyal Comte*

exists, however, in the Dutch language two versions of the story, which are of interest as proofs of its ubiquitousness, if of little else. One in verse, dated about 1400, tells the tale of Huon's return from the East with a few slight variations from the tale as told in the 13th century *chanson de geste*. The other is in prose of the first half of the 16th century.¹ It is very short, and the fact that the place of Gerames, Huon's companion in the French romance, is taken there by Aleanne (*Alelmus*), an uncle of the knight, who figures in the Chronicle of Albericus Trium Fontium, leads me to suppose that it is based on the *chanson* in some slightly earlier form than any now extant in France.

§ 10. After so varied an existence as I have here sketched, the romance of *Huon* was finally reduced to prose in 1454. It was immediately based on the previous metrical versions, and probably the manuscript, now in Turin, was most frequently in the hands of its author. Only one difference of any importance is noticeable in the course of the story of Huon and Oberon. The latter's genealogy is slightly developed, and he is credited with other maternal relatives than those mentioned in the metrical romances. According to the prose story his mother was the lady of the island of Cephalonia, "who was sum tyme wel belouyde of the fayre Florimont of Albaney." But deserting Florimont, "who as then was yonge," she married another by whom she was the mother of Neptanabus and the grandmother of "Alexander y^e grate." Her charms subsequently attracted "Sezar as he crossed to Thesalee wher as he fought with Pompee," and thus Julius Caesar was his father as in the previous versions. The reference to Florimont shows that the *proseur* was acquainted with Aimes de Varenne's romance of that name, which, in the spirit of the poetical amplifiers, he doubtless laid directly under contribution when altering the pedigree of his fairy king.² The prose reduction, which

Huon, in verse, a manuscript on vellum of the 14th century, being dated 1341. It is ornamented with 76 curious paintings illustrating the romance.

¹ Cp. Huyge von Bourdeus, ein Niederländisches Volksbuch, herausgegeben von Ferdinand Wolf. Stuttgart, 1860. An original prologue gives some additional information as to Charles's history before the opening of the story. His wife is Hildegaert; she has three sons and three daughters.

² *Florimont* is an early French romance, touching the ancestry of Alexander of Macedon. It has itself undergone a development very similar to that of *Huon*. In its earliest form it has been referred to the 12th century.

has no other claim to originality, includes besides the legend of Huon the stories "of those that issued from him." Three of the *suites* of the Turin manuscript, viz.: (1) the story of Esclaramonde, (2) that of Clariette and Florent, and (3) that of Ide and Olive, have been incorporated with it, and the last portion contains the romance of Croissant, which, as we have noted, has not found a place among the metrical *remaniements*, and occurs here for the first time. The prose version was undertaken, an introductory note tells us, at the express desire of two great lords at the court of Charles VII.—Charles de Rochefort and Hugues de Longueval, and of a third person, Pierre Ruotte. No manuscript of it exists, though it doubtless was largely read in that form by the noblemen at the court of Louis XI., by whom compositions of the kind were held in high esteem. It was printed for the first time at Paris in 1513 by Michel Lenoir.¹

§ 11. Of the popularity of the romance in France there is no lack of evidence, and to grasp its real position in continental literature, I may briefly dwell on it here. Many references to Huon and his adventures occur in the *chansons de geste* of a later date than the one to which he gives his name. His relationship to Oberon made a deep impression on subsequent poets. He is commonly known to them as

Huelin à la clere fachon
A qui fist tout de bien le bon roi Oberon,

and elaborate attempts are often made to connect him and his father, *Serin de Bordele*, in genealogical tables with other great families of the Charlemagne cycle. The number of extant poetical *remaniements* is itself a proof of the favour the tale met with in the middle ages, and the wide dissemination of the prose version of the story in later times is attested by the number of editions through which it passed. In the 16th century it was reprinted no less than six times, and not only at Paris, but also at Rouen and Lyons. In the 17th century seven new editions were published, and others followed in rapid succession in

¹ The colophon of the earliest British Museum copy, which is the only French prose version I have consulted, bears date *le xxvi iour de novembre mil. v. cens et treize*. Brunet (*Manuel du Libraire* s. v.) gives the date of the oldest copy known in France as *le xxiiij iour de decembre mil cinq cens et seize*. The printer is also Michel Lenoir. The Brit. Mus. copy (12311. i. 12) is therefore probably the earliest edition known. No French editor has noted an earlier edition than that of 1516.

subsequent years.¹ A curious fortune awaited the book in the reign of Henry II. The romance was dramatized, and a religious guild at Paris, whose members were known as “les confidères de la passion et resurrection de nostre sauveur et redempteur Jhesus Christ,” undertook its performance during the Christmas festivities of the year 1557. Upon very few of the Charlemagne epics, as we have had occasion to remark already, has the honour of a dramatic version been conferred, and the fact that *Huon of Bordeaux* was selected for the distinction is an emphatic proof of the high place it held in popular esteem. But objections were taken to the proposed representation. The Provost refused to allow the preparations to proceed, and the actors had to appeal to the Parlement of Paris, to enable them to carry out their original intention. Their petition, which greatly agitated the French capital, was granted with the limitation that *le jeu de Huon* was not to be performed within the hours “durant lesquelles se celebre le divin service par les eglises et parroises de ceste ville, et ce le lendemain de la feste de la Nativité Nostre seigneur et sans scandale.” The opposition to the performance was probably due in great part to the strictly religious character that the theatre in France bore at the time. Other indications of the general attention bestowed upon the romance are to be found in the French historical literature of the 17th century, where it is treated as a work of high historical authority, and Huon himself is seriously described as one of the heroes “of the antique world,” to whose valour the development of southern France was mainly due.² In Germany it will be remembered that Wieland has based on the French prose romance of *Huon*, published in 1778 in an abridged form, his long poem of *Oberon*. Whatever opinion we may hold of its literary value, to it is due a wide extension of Huon’s and Oberon’s popularity on the continent.³

§ 12. The first edition of Lord Berners’ English translation of the

¹ Brunet, *Manuel du Libraire*, s. v.

² M. Guessard’s *Huon*, pp. xxvij—xxxiiij

³ M. Girardin (*Cours de littérature dramatique*, iii, p. 235) has elaborately compared Wieland’s poem with the old romance, and with justice complains of the incongruous idyllic sentiment introduced into the story of Huon’s relations with Esclaramonde, whom Wieland has rechristened Rezia, and of the complicated passions that the German poet foists upon his characters. Wieland’s *Oberon* was published in 1780.

romance is wholly based on the French prose version.¹ Chapter by chapter it follows the printed copy of 1513, which may fairly be regarded as its original, and the translator has performed his task with the utmost fidelity. The book is of the highest rarity. For many years collectors imagined it to be irrecoverably lost,² but a copy, the only one of which we have any information at present, was sold at the sale of Dr. Bliss's library, and at the Corsser sale in 1869, when it was purchased by the late Earl of Crawford and Balcarres, and it is now the property of his son.³ Two copies of a third edition of the

¹ Tabulating the results which have been arrived at as to the various portions of the prose story, Lord Berners' translation may be arranged thus:—

LORD BERNERS' TRANSLATION.	WHENCE DERIVED (THROUGH THE FRENCH PROSE ORIGINAL).
I. Chapters 1-85 (included in part I).	I. The xiiiith century <i>Chanson de Geste of Huon</i> as it appears in the Turin MS.
<i>a.</i> Chaps. 1-20.	<i>a.</i> Vv. 1-2000 = an old Carlovingian legend.
<i>β.</i> Chaps. 21-85.	<i>β.</i> Vv. 2000-10041 = later story of Oberon.
Printed in Part II. of this edition.	II. <i>La Chanson d'Esclaramonde</i> in the Turin MS.
	III. <i>La Chanson de Clarisse et Florent</i> in the Turin MS.
	IV. <i>La Chanson d'Ide et Olive</i> in the Turin MS.
	V. <i>La Roman de Croissant</i> , referred to in the Paris MS. (II.) of the Alexandrian <i>rifacimento</i> , but not known elsewhere.
	II. Chaps. 86-157.
III. Chaps. 158-173	
IV. Chaps. 174-180.	
V. Chaps. 181-end.	

Of the extant amplifications *Le Roman d'Auberon*, the story of Huon in Fairyland (in the Paris MS. I.) and the tale of Godin (in Turin MS.) are excluded from the prose versions.

² Cf. Mitson's and Douce's MS. notes reprinted from a copy of the 3rd edition, *infra*, p. lvi.

³ Through whose hands the copy has passed in previous centuries we do not know. Early in the 16th century it was probably in the hands of some love-sick youth who, in the writing of that date, has placed on the margin of Lord Crawford's copy (fols. cviii, back, and cix) the following lines:—

My faythfull hart dothe loue right well
 Her that I can not atayne :
 Wherefore ther is no towng can tell
 The grefes that I sustayne.
 If I showlld spend a sumers day
 To wrytte in verse or prose,
 I cowlld my dolent mynd display,
 Nor yet halff my loue disclose,

In the seventh line *not* has been erased, and *my* superscribed, but both are

English romance are also extant,—one at the British Museum, and the other at the Bodleian Library,—and it is stated on their title-pages that the rude English of the earlier editions has been here corrected and amended. Of the intervening edition no trace has yet been found.

§ 13. The life of Lord Berners, the English translator of the story, whose name has been “canonized in Fame’s eternal calendar” as the translator of Froissart, forms an interesting but little-known chapter of our political and literary history, and a brief summary of such facts as I have been able to collect together will tend to give the romance before us an additional interest. Born probably at Tharfield in Hertfordshire about 1469, Anthony à Wood¹ is of opinion that, like Tiptoft, the Earl of Worcester, whom in point of literary culture he closely resembles, Berners was educated at Balliol College, Oxford. As early as 1474 he succeeded to the title of his grandfather, John Bouchier, who had been created Baron Berners² in 1455 and was a descendant of Edward III. through his mother, and a younger brother of Thomas Bouchier, Archbishop of Canterbury (1454-1486). On the marriage of one of the royal princes in 1477 he was knighted, and in 1484 at the early age of fifteen Lord Berners would seem to have entered into very active political life. He apparently joined in a premature attempt to raise Henry, duke of Richmond, to the throne, and on its failure he had to flee to Brittany.³ After the accession of Henry VII., who had received much assistance from his friends, Berners came prominently forward in English politics. In 1492 he entered into a contract “to serue the king in his warres beyond see on hole yeere with two speres.”⁴ Five years later he gave signal aid in needful for the sense. The copy sold for £19 at Dr. Bliss’s sale, and £85 at the Corsser sale.

¹ Anthony à Wood, *Athene Oxonienses*, i. 72; see also Fuller’s *Hertfordshire Worthies*, p. 32. By far the best memoir of Lord Berners is that prefaced to Mr. Utterson’s edition of his translation of Froissart, but it is very imperfect. (Lond. 1812), i. pp. 4-23.

² Dugdale’s *Baronage*, ii. 129. Lord Berners’ father is described as Humphry Bouchier, and was slain at the battle of Barnet, and buried at Westminster Abbey. His mother was Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Frederick Tilney and widow of Sir Thomas Howard, knight. The first Lord Berners was the youngest son of the Earl of Ewe, whose heir was created Earl of Essex by Edward III.

³ Hardyng’s *Chronicle* (ed. Ellis, 1832), p. 529.

⁴ Rymer, *Foedera*, xii. 479.

crushing a rebellion of Cornishmen against Henry VII.'s tax-gatherers under Michael Joseph, the blacksmith, and from that date he was received with high favour at court, as "a martial man, well seen in all military discipline."¹ Henry VIII. we know from many circumstances to have been intimately acquainted with him. In 1513 he travelled in the king's retinue to Calais,² and was present with the English army at the capture of Terouenne, where he performed services of no little valour. The war in Scotland was also probably conducted under his superintendence, and he was marshal in the Earl of Surrey's army about the time when Flodden Field was fought.³ On the occasion of the marriage of Princess Mary to Louis XII.,⁴ Lord Berners was appointed Chamberlain to the English Queen of France,⁵ but he had no intention of remaining permanently abroad. He had already been granted by the king (18th May, 1514) the reversion to the office of Chancellor of the Exchequer,⁶ and in 1516 (28th May) he was apparently inducted into the honourable post.⁷ Arrayed in his official robes he at a later date sat for his portrait to Hans Holbein, the painter to Henry VIII.'s court.⁸ In 1518 Berners was sent with the Archbishop of Armagh, a notable diplomatist of the day, on a special mission to Spain to form a lasting alliance between Henry VIII. and Charles of Spain, and the letters of the envoys represent Lord Berners suffering from a severe sickness.⁹ He is, however, at times well enough to send home to Henry VIII. accounts of the bull-baiting and other sports that took place in the Spanish capital. Negotiations dragged on from April to December, and money was not sent from England with such regularity as to enable the am-

¹ Fuller, p. 27. Walpole's *Royal and Noble Authors*, i. 239

² Brewer's *Letters and Papers of Henry VIII.*, i. nos. 4307, 4314, &c.

³ *Ibid.* i. 4375.

⁴ Oct. 9, 1514.

⁵ *Ibid.* i. 5483.

⁶ No. 5097.

⁷ *Ibid.* ii. no. 1946.

⁸ Wornum's edition of Walpole's *Anecdotes of Painting*, i. 82. In one hand he holds a lemon, which is thought to have been regarded as a safeguard against plague infections, and perhaps alludes to Lord Berners' escape from the disease, while attending to the duties of his office. The picture is now in the possession of the Hon. H. Tyrwhitt Wilson, a lineal descendant of Lord Berners, and is at Keythorpe Hall, Leicestershire.

⁹ Brewer's *Letters*, ii. 4383, 4436, &c. At times Berners is described as sick in bed, and the Archbishop has to perform the business of the embassy alone. In one letter gout is mentioned as the cause of his sickness.

bassadors to live with comfort or dignity.¹ "God send hit (*i. e.* the embassy) an ende," Berners writes to Wolsey (26th July, 1518), "for we lye here with most charge and expence, horse & man, & in most scarcitie of all things as well meate as drink that may be thought." Early in 1519 Berners was again in England, and among the noblemen who were ordered to attend the king at The Field of the Cloth of Gold his name occurs. His reputation stood at the time very high, and the Privy Council gave him a vote of thanks (July 2nd, 1520) for an account of the interview between the English and French kings that he had sent them from France. But Lord Berners' busy career was approaching an end. His activity can hardly be exaggerated. While holding high state offices, he had frequently attended Parliament, and had regularly performed the duties of Justice of the Peace for Hertfordshire and Surrey.² He had, moreover, entered upon several harassing law-suits, touching the ownership of several manors in Staffordshire, Wiltshire, and elsewhere,³ and he was experiencing much pecuniary embarrassment. He had borrowed as early as 1511 £350 from the king,⁴ and the loans were frequently repeated. He had no means wherewith to pay his debts: his health was failing, and he apparently desired leisure. A vacancy in the governorship of Calais seemed to present a means of relieving him of his difficulties, and in December 1520 he was appointed deputy of Calais during pleasure with £100 yearly for himself and £104 as 'Spyall money.'⁵ And the remaining years of his life were spent in such retirement as his new position afforded.

§ 14. It was at Calais that he undertook almost all his literary work. He had probably been, like several of his younger contemporaries, a considerable reader from his youth, and may possibly have been one of those persons "of noble estate and degree," whom Caxton frequently describes as ever ready to assist him in his enterprises. Berners doubtless became well acquainted early in life with the French and Spanish languages, and thus he was enabled to make direct

¹ Brewer's *Letters*, ii. no. 4312, 1228. &c. The payments to the embassy were 5 marks a day.—ii. p. 1177.

² In all the Commissions of the Peace issued for these counties during the early years of Henry VIII.'s reign his name appears: *v.* Brewer's *Letters postum.*

³ *Ibid.* iii. nos. 1286-8. ⁴ *Ibid.* i. no. 2044. ⁵ *Ibid.* iii. no. 1074.

acquaintance with the chivalric romances that formed the popular literature of both Spain and France. After his energetic work in previous years, time at Calais probably hung heavily on his hands, and he tells us that it was "somewhat in eschewing" of idleness which "is reputed to be the moder of al vices" that he began his labours as a translator. History, whether of fact or fiction, was, according to his own confession, his literary passion. "When I aduertysed, & remembred the many-folde commodityes of hystorie," he writes in the prologue to Froissart's *Chronicle*, "howe benefyciall it is to mortall folke, & eke howe laudable, & merytoryous a dede it is to write hystories, [I] fixed my mind to do some thyng therin, & euer, when this ymaginayon came to me, I volued, tourned & redde many volumes, & bokes conteynyng famouse histories." And it was thus that he was led to undertake the translation of a book like Froissart's *Chronicles*. But he was troubled by little critical sensitiveness as to the truth or falsehood of historical records, and he interpreted history in the freest possible sense. The impossible adventures in some of the books that he "did into our maternal tongue," he admitted "to our humayne reason, sholde seme to be incredible." "But then," he proceeds, "I called agayne to my remembrance, that I had redde, and seene many a sondrye volume of dynerse noble hystories, wherein were contayned the redoubted dedes of the auneynt inuynsyble conquerours, & of ether ryght famous knightes, who acheued many a straunge & wonderfull aduenture, the whyche, by playne letter to our vnderstandynge, sholde seme in a maner to be supernaturall; wherefore I thought that this present treatise myght as well be reputed for trouthe as some of those." But credulity was by no means the most striking feature of Lord Berners' literary character. There is a humility and simple piety in all his original writing that claims the loving respect of his readers. He did not presume, he says of one of his books, "to have reduced it in to fresshe ornatte polysshed Englysshe, for I know myselfe insuffeyent in the facondyous arte of rethoryke." He never regarded himself as other than "a lerner of the language of Frensshe," although he had spent years in studying it. His prefaces invariably concluded with a hope that the reader would kindly view his shortcomings, and

often with the words:—"In theyr so doynge, I shall praye to God that, after this vayne & transytory lyfe, he may brynge them vnto the perdurable joye of heuen. Amen."¹

§ 15. It was Henry VIII., who had already so often befriended Lord Berners, that first encouraged, if he did not suggest, the great undertaking of his literary career—the translation of Froissart's *Chronicle*; and he writes himself that he was moved to the task "at the highe commaundement of my most reldouted souerayne & lorle kynge Henry the viii." The first volume of the work was published in London in 1523, and the second and last in 1525. And I regard this translation as Lord Berners' first published book. In the introduction he speaks with more than his usual modesty as an untried author, and in the tentative tone of a literary beginner details the principles of translation he has thought proper to adopt. He begs all the "readers & herers therof to take this my rude translacion in gre." "And in that," he continues, "I haue not folowed myne anthour worde by worde, yet I trust I haue ensewed the true reporte of the sentence of the mater: & as for the true namyng of all maner of persanages, contreis, cyties, townes, ryuers, & fields, whereas I coude not name them properly nor aptely in Englysshe, I haue written them accordynge as I founde them in frenche."² Of the success of the book it is unnecessary to dwell here. The noble gentlemen of England, for whom the translator stated it to have been written, gave it a warm welcome, and to its popularity has been ascribed the taste for historical reading and composition by which later literary compositions of the century were characterized.³ The style is vivid and clear, and although a few French words have been introduced, Lord Berners has adhered, as a rule, so closely to English idiom that the work might almost be mistaken for an original English production. It was the longest, as

¹ See besides the Introduction to Froissart, that to *Sir Arthur of Lytle Brytayne* in Utterson's reprint (1812), and to *Castel of Love* in Walpole's *Noble Authors*, i. 243-4.

² These quotations are taken from the earliest edition of the translation (1523).

³ Marsh, *Hist of English Language*, 1862, pp. 495-501, where a suggestive criticism of Berners' translation will be found.

it was the highest in point of literary merit, of any of the few prose histories that had appeared in our language. Hall, Fabian, and Holinshed were subsequently all more or less indebted to it, and repeated editions, published in Elizabeth's reign, testified to its continuous popularity.

§ 16. The other works that Lord Berners undertook at Calais were of a very varied kind. The Charlemagne romance of *Huon of Bordeaux*, I think it probable, followed Froissart's *Chronicle* at no long interval, although its publication was probably much delayed. About the same time he undertook the translation from the French of *The History of Sir Arthur of Lytle Brytayne* (i. e. Brittany), and of a Spanish romance known as *The Castel of Love*.¹ Later he rendered into English from a French version *The Golden Boke of Marcus Aurelius*, and although no other works from his pen are extant, he is credited by some writers with a 'comedy' entitled *Ite in Vineam*, which, Anthony à Wood tells us, was frequently acted at Calais after vespers, and a tract on *The duties of the inhabitants of Calais*.² Warton, on the authority of Oldys, also ascribes to him a translation of Petrarch.³

§ 17. But while engaged in literary pursuits he did not neglect the duties of his office. In 1522 he had received the Emperor Charles V. before crossing the Channel on a visit to England, and the State Papers contain numerous letters from him to Wolsey and other great officers of State, as to the provisioning of the fortifications of Calais; as to the distinguished strangers who arrived there; as to the movements of the armies of France or the Low Countries in the near neighbourhood, and like details.⁴ But the close of his life does not appear to have been a happy one. Weak in health and embarrassed by debt, had it not been for the encouragement he received from noble lords and ladies, at the special request of one or more of whom each of his books was undertaken, he would not, it seems, have persisted in his laborious work of translation.⁵ He

¹ Walpole's *Royal and Noble Authors*, i. 242.

² *Ath. Oxon.* i. 33.

³ Warton, *Hist. of English Poetry*, iii. p. 64.

⁴ *Henry VIII.'s Letters*, vols. iv. v. vi., *passim*.

⁵ The introduction to *Huon of Bordeaux* in the Oxf. copy of the 1601 edition; see *infra*, p. li.

is bitterly harassed, as his letters show, by his continual lawsuits, which begin to touch his Hertfordshire property, and by the loans that the king had from time to time made him, and which still remained unpaid. In the last years of his life he tried to conciliate his Sovereign, who probably demanded payment in no gentle tone, by frequent presents of hawks;¹ but Henry apparently looked anxiously for the death of his old friend in order to distrain on his property for the debts still owing to him. During his last illness special agents of the king were despatched with indecent haste to watch over Berners' personal possessions in behalf of his creditors. At length on March 16, 1533, the end came.² Six days before, Lord Berners had completed his rendering into English of the *Golden Boke of Marcus Aurelius*, and doubtless knew then that his end was near.³ On his death Henry showed little respect for his memory. He at once ordered all his goods in his house or the town to be arrested until further notice, and his post to be filled immediately. His affairs were found, owing to his illness, to be much disordered, but the inventory taken of his property, and, now at the Record Office, proves that he lived in no little splendour, and it contains an interesting entry stating that eighty books and four pictures formed part of his furniture. Unfortunately all details of these possessions are irrecoverably lost.⁴ It was thus experiencing his full share of the petty vexations of life that Lord Berners passed away. To most readers he survives nowadays as a shadowy name; but such details as I have set down show that his exploits in the various spheres of war, politics, and literature give him a strong claim to a place among the worthies of 16th century England.

§ 18. Of the popularity of all Lord Berners' works, and of *Huon* in

¹ Cp. Privy Purse Expenses for 1529-31, pp. 54 and 231, where gratuities to Lord Berners' servants for bringing the hawks are recorded.

² *Henry VIII's Papers*, vi, nos. 238 and 239. A letter begins bearing date March 16, 1533, "My lord deputy is dead."

³ The first edition of 1531 has in the colophon the words: "Ended at Calais the tenth Day of Marche, in the yere of the Reigne of our Soveraygne Lorde Kyng Henry the VIII. xxiii." (*i. e.* 1533).

⁴ I carefully examined the inventory in the hope of finding some account of Lord Berners' books. All that occurs there on the subject is:—"Item in the study iiij books vz oon of Latten & frenche," and below, "iiij pictours."—Cp. Brewer's *Letters* (in Mr. Gairdner's continuation), vi, p. 611.

particular, there is no lack of evidence. Romances from the reign of Henry VIII. to that of Charles I. formed the most popular literature in England. Their numbers were prodigious. A brief examination of the *Stationers' Registers* shows with what energy the printers set before their public translations of French, Oriental, Italian, and Spanish story-books. At the opening of the century Caxton and Lord Berners have themselves described how anxiously the noble classes, who formed the only contemporary reading public, awaited the publication of their translations. Nor, when the stage was at the height of its prosperity, did the romances cease to be the favourite recreation of the reading classes, which grew in number as the century advanced. The plays, it must be remembered, were not designed for private perusal. Their appearance in print was due to fraud and piracy, and was a constant source of complaint with authors, managers, and actors. Only a few play-books found their ways into the hands of readers, and recourse continued to be made to works like those before us. A writer in 1586 tells us with what unalloyed delight a country gentleman would listen to "pleasant mad-headed knaves, *that* bee properly learned & will reade in diuerse pleasaunt bookes & good Authors: as Sir Guy of Warwicke, the foure sonnes of Ammon," and works of like description.¹ Edmund Spenser in his famous letter to Sir Walter Raleigh writes that it was because he desired to be "most plausible and pleasing" that he coloured his allegory "with an historical fiction, the which the most part of men delight to read." George Chapman² in 1611 describes a typical Statesman as one who was well acquainted with the *Gesta Romanorum* and similar volumes. Some writers are inclined to bestow extravagant eulogy on the romances of Chivalry. Thus John Taylor, the water-poet, writes, with perhaps a touch of sarcasm, when speaking of their heroes: "In all ages and countries it hath euer bin knowne that famous men haue flourished, whose worthy Actions & Eminency of place haue euer bene as conspicuous *Beacons* Burning & blazeng to the Spectators' view. The sparkes & flames

¹ *English Courtier and the Countrey Gentleman*, 1586, quoted in Mr. Furnivall's edition of *Captain Cox's Ballads*.—Ballad Society, p. xix.

² Chapman's *May Day*, iii. 1.

whereof haue sometimes kindled courage in the most coldest & effeminate cowards." But such literature had at the same time its detractors, as much of it well deserved. Roger Ascham in his *Scholemaster* (1571), like the niece of Don Quixote, regarded all the romances as mischief-makers, and complained that even Sir Thomas Malory's *Morte d'Arthur* was full of 'slaughter' and 'bawdrie.'¹ Similarly, Francis Meres, in his *Palladis Tamia* of 1598, censured romantic histories as being "no lesse hurtfull to youth then the works of *Machiavel* to age."² Robert Burton bitterly complains of the gentry: "if they read on a book at any time it is an English Chronicle" (like *Annotis de Gaule*, &c.), "a playe booke or some pamphlet of news,"³ and elsewhere he says of "such Iuamoratoes as read nothing but play-bookes, idle poems," and so forth, that many "proue in the ende as mad as *Don Quixot*."⁴ But nevertheless romances continued to be generally read till the time of the Rebellion, especially by the half-educated classes.⁵ Beaumont and Fletcher in their humorous farce of the *Knight of the Burning Pestle* show how chivalric tales fatally disturbed the equanimity of the lower middle classes at a little earlier date.⁶

§ 19. Of such popularity and such censure Lord Berners' translation enjoyed a full share. His hero for a hundred years was given a place among the worthies of antiquity. He is set beside Godfrey of Boulogne, King Arthur and his knights in a poem, written shortly after the death of Henry VIII.,⁷ the form of which is almost identical with Villon's *Ballade des dames mortes*, familiar to most English readers in Rossetti's exquisite translation. In 1558 the book is mentioned in an inventory of the property of Richard Brereton,

¹ Ascham, *Scholemaster*, p. 80. (Arber's Edition). Cp. his *Toxophilus*. Pref.

² Meres's *Palladis Tamia*, 1598, p. 2668.

³ *Anatomic of Melancholic*, ed. 1621, p. 183.

⁴ *Ibid.* p. 353.

⁵ Cp. *London Chauciteles*, 1659, where much popular literature of the kind is referred to.—Hazlitt's *Dodsley*, vol. xii.

⁶ The play was first performed 1613. A grocer's apprentice is there driven from his shop by a desire of pursuing feats of arms, and cuts a very ridiculous figure. It reached its height of popularity about 1635.

⁷ Percy's Folio MS. *Ballads and Romances* (ed. by Hales and Furnivall), 1868, iii. p. 171. On the Fall of Princes:—"Where is Huon of Bordeaux, where is he?"

and valued at the high sum (for those days) of xviii*l*,¹ and in 1572 the work is referred to among others, in a brief pamphlet, as fit for gentlemen's reading.² Three years later Master Laneham in his letter, descriptive of the Kenilworth festivities of 1575, tells us how Cox, the quixotic old Captain of Coventry, who took a leading part in the pageants, had *Huon of Bordeaux* among other famous romances "at his fingers' ends."³ Gervase Markham, a voluminous prose writer on practical subjects in Elizabeth's day, in *A Health to the Gentlemanly profession of Serving men* (1578), has quoted largely from Lord Berners' translation, when ingeniously illustrating the evil influence of Mammon.⁴ Spenser was evidently well acquainted with the book, and describes how Sir Guyon, his knight of Temperance,

"kighthood tooke of good Sir Huon's hand,
When with King Oberon he came to Faery land."⁵

Similarly *Huon of Bordeaux* is panegyricized by John Taylor, the water-poet, in the passage I have quoted above, and bitterly censured by Francis Meres and Robert Burton. But there exists another curious indication of the high place the romance continued to hold in popular esteem at the end of the century. An entry in Philip Henslowe's *Diary* proves that it was dramatized and produced in that form by the players of the Earl of Sussex in 1593-4. The note runs as follows:—

Rd at hewen of burdoche, the 28 of desembr 1593 ij*ij*^l. x^s.

Rd at hewen of burdokes, the 3 of Jenewary 1593(-4) xiii*ij*^s.

Rd at hewen, the 11 of Jenewary 1593(-4).⁶ v^s.

The play, although no trace of it is now extant, was thus at least three times performed.

§ 20. A review of the position that *Huon of Bordeaux* holds in our literary history would be manifestly incomplete without some reference

¹ Halliwell's *Folio of Shakespeare*, vol. v. p. 85.

² *A Brief and Necessary Instruction, &c.*, by E. D. 1572. Quoted from Collier by Mr. Furnivall in his introduction to Cox's Ballads.

³ Nicholl's *Progresses of Queen Elizabeth*. London, 1823, i. 449. Laneham's letter is here reprinted.

⁴ Fol. G, 4. Only two copies of this rare pamphlet are, I believe, known. Both are in the Douce collection of the Bodleian Library. See below, chaps. cviii.-cx. (the story of the Adamant), whence the passage is taken.

⁶ *Faerie Queene*, bk. I. i. 6.

⁶ Henslowe's *Diary* (ed. Collier), pp. 31-2.

to the Oberon of Elizabethan literature. That the fairy king first became known to this country through the agency of Lord Berners' version of his story, there cannot be a shadow of a doubt. Chaucer, it is true, gave to Pluto the title of "King of Faerie" in his *Marchantes Tale*,¹ but the little dwarf Oberon, with his unapproachable beauty and gentle carriage, is the only rightful possessor of the throne of fairy land in our literature. The question has before been raised as to whether Shakespeare was acquainted with Lord Berners' *Huon of Bordeaux* when he wrote *Midsummer Night's Dream*. There is no obvious identity of spirit between the protector of Huon and the husband of Titania, and we can only give a tentative answer. Oberon had appeared on the throne of fairy land before Shakespeare produced his comedy. In the *Faerie Queene* he figures in the *Antiquitie of Faerie* as the latest sovereign of the enchanted world.² In 1591 the fairy king had appeared in a dramatic entertainment, exhibited before Queen Elizabeth when on a progress in Hampshire.³ Similarly, he plays a part in Green's tragedy of *James IV.* (1594),⁴ but he there retains so few of the characteristics of the French original, and holds so incongruous and absurd a position, that we should be loth, although many critics have supported the assumption, to believe that Shakespeare was under obligation to so despicable a production. The Oberon of the great poet's fairy-comedy, although he is set in a butterfly environment, still possesses some features very similar to those of the romantic fairy king. If he is not brought into relations with so purely mundane institutions as the Papacy and the Empire, he is concerned in the affairs of Athens. One point in *Midsummer Night's Dream*, moreover, seems to make the relationship between the two Oberons a matter of less doubt than has been generally allowed. The mediæval fairy dwells in the East: his kingdom is situated somewhere to the east of Jerusalem, in the far-reaching district that was known to mediæval writers under the generic name of India. Shakespeare's fairy is similarly a foreigner to the western

¹ *Canterbury Tales*, line 10,101, &c.

² *E. Q.*, bk. II, x, 75.

³ Halliwell's *Folio of Shakespeare*, i, 80.

⁴ *The Scottishe story of James the Fourthe slayn at Eglodden intermixed with a pleasant Comedie presented by Oberon kinge of fayres.*—Arber's *Transcript*, ii, 648.

world. He is totally unlike Puck, his lieutenant, "the merry wanderer of the night," who springs from purely English superstition, and it is stated in the comedy that he has come to Greece "from the farthest steep of India." Titania, further, tells her husband how the mother of her page-boy gossiped at her side,¹ in their home, "in the spiced Indian air by night-fall."² And it will be remembered that an Indian boy causes the jealousy of Oberon. Some portions of the romance I, therefore, believe Shakespeare to have assimilated, and to be still visible in his ethereal play. The inference is perhaps supported by a direct reference to *Huon of Bordeaux*, as some commentators have regarded it, in another of Shakespeare's comedies. In *Much Ado About Nothing*, Benedick offers among the many "embassages" he would undertake rather than hold three words with Beatrice, to "fetch you the hair of the Great Cham's Beard,"³ and it has been supposed that we have here an allusion to Huon's endeavour to obtain the beard of the Admiral of Babylon.⁴ The origin of the later Oberons of Drayton, Randolph, and Herrick calls for no comment here. They are obviously based on Shakespeare's own fairy king.

When Lord Berners' translation ceased to be read, the achievements of Huon of Bordeaux lapsed into obscurity. But his story was curiously revived at the beginning of this century. Wieland, the German poet, as I have said already, based on *Huon of Bordeaux* his poem of *Oberon*, and Mr. Sotheby's English translation of the production gained great popularity in this country. Upon it, moreover, was based the libretto of Weber's opera of *Oberon*, which was written for and first performed in a London theatre (April 12, 1826). It is thus that the name of the knight of Bordeaux, as the hero of the opera, has found brief mention in one of Thackeray's novels.⁵

¹ *M. N. D.* II, ii, 65-6. ² *Ibid.* II, ii, 10. ³ *Much Ado*, II, i, 263.

⁴ Halliwell's *Folio of Shakespeare*, iv, 77. Cartwright in his *Siege, or Love's Convert*, 1651, p. 157, has imitated the passage and brought it into closer harmony with Huon's mission.

"Fetch you a hair of the Great Cham's beard;
No more? I'd thought you would have bid me pull
The Parthian king by th' beard, or draw an eye-tooth
From the jaw royall of the Persian monarch."

⁵ *Newcomes*, i, 115. J. J. Ridley when listening to Miss Cann's feeble piano-strumming imagines he sees before him "Sir Huon of Bordeaux sailing up the quay with the Sultan's daughter of Babylon."

§ 21. The bibliography of Lord Berners' translation demands some fuller attention than we have already given it. The *editio princeps* is a black-letter folio of 191 leaves, and is embellished by grotesque initial-letters, and by numerous woodcuts which are more than once repeated, and often indicate much delicacy of workmanship. It is in many ways imperfect. The book almost certainly began, like Caxton's romances, and the other extant works of Lord Berners, with an address to the reader, followed by "a table with all the chapters as they stande in the boke in order," both of which the extant volume is without. In its present condition it abruptly opens with the statement that "here begynnethe the boke of duke Huon of Burdeaux, and of them that issuyd fro him." The last page is likewise missing, and half of the last but one has been torn away. Thus we have lost the colophon with its record of the date of the work. It is therefore a difficult matter to state precisely to what year its publication should be assigned. We have some external evidence to guide us, and the internal character of the book and its typography may give some assistance. But it is a question which we cannot decide with absolute certainty.

A few of the facts in Lord Berners' career will aid us in fixing approximately the time during which the book was written.

The length of the romance of *Huon* precludes us from supposing that it could have been completed before his retirement to Calais; and, if I am right in assuming that Froissart's *Chronicles* was the first literary work that he produced, we must pronounce *Huon* to have been translated between 1525, the date of the completion of *Froissart*, and 1533, the year of Lord Berners' death. But whether it was published within that period, other external evidence renders by no means certain. I believe that like the *Golden Boke of Marcus Aurelius*, and possibly other of his works, it was published posthumously through the aid of an old friend.

In the Oxford copy of the third edition, dated 1601, occurs some thirty lines bearing the superscription—*The printer to the Historie ensuing*—and an examination of this prefatory note which, I cannot doubt, was reprinted, with some revision, from the first and probably the second editions, will, we hope, materially aid us in

settling the question. The preface is divisible into two parts. The first rehearses in general terms the uses to which the good examples of such chivalric knights as Huon may be put, and resembles so closely in style and sentiment the introductory notes written by Lord Berners' own hand in his other works as to create a presumption in favour of the belief that it has been rewritten in somewhat heightened language from his own manuscript.¹ The second details the circumstances under which the romance came to be translated and printed. The concluding half runs as follows:—

“Hence ensued (*i. e.* from the desire to promulgate heroic examples—as expressed in the opening sentences) that desertfull & worthy to bee remembred purpose, of Sir *John Bourchier*, Knight, Lord Berners, when not onely in the woorke of *Huon of Bourdeaux*, but many other famous translations of like conse-

¹ For purposes of readier comparison, and to prove that the prologue in the 1601 edition, does not contradict, with any internal evidence, my belief that it has been taken from the first edition with possibly some “amendment,” I have printed the opening sentence of it and the *Froissart* prologue side by side.

FROISSART.

What condygne graces & thankes ought men to gyue to the writers of histories, who with their great labours, haue done so moche profyte to the humayne lyfe: they shewe, open, manifest, & declare to the reader by example of olden antiquitie & what we shulde enquire, desyre & folowe: & also what we shulde eschewe, auoyde & utterly flye: for whan we (beynge vnexpert of chanches) se, beholde & rede the auneynt gestes & dedes, howe & with what labours, daungers & paryls they were gested & done, they right greatly admonesh, ensigne & teche, vs howe we maye lede forthe our lynes: & farther he that hath perfyte knowledge of others ioye, welth & highe prosperite & also trouble, sorowe & great aduersyte, hath thexpert doctryne of all parylles; . . . What knowledge shulde we haue of auneynt thynges past, & historie were nat? whiche is the testimony thereof, the lyght of trouthe, the maystres of the lyfe humayne, the presydent of remembrance & the messanger of antiquyte.

HUON.

The foundation of all true fame & repute, which in this world is most to be reckoned of & esteemed, (according to the opinion of all writers both ancient & moderne) consisteth in bold, honourable, & heroycall resolution, which enflames the soule with a continuall thirsting desire, of pursuing braue & generous purpose, performing of high & adventurous actions, which (when their bodies are mantled up in the obscure mould of earth) leaueth their names cannonized in Fames aeternall Calender, & renounes them as rare presidents to all following Posterities.

quence by him performed, he gaue witness to the world of so laborious an endeavour, & (as it were) squared out an excelent platfourme for generous imitation. But let me not herewithal forget, that the right noble Earle of *Huntington*, Lord *Hastings*, was a continuall spurre to him in the pursuite of such paines, & likewise a cheerfull encourager of me in the imprinting, assisting euer both with his purse & honorable countenance the travaile that sorted so good example. Which being now finished & made compleat, etc." The colophon of the same volume states similarly that the translation was undertaken by Lord Berners at the request of Lord Hastings, Earl of Huntington.

We have here a clear allusion to Lord George Hastings, who was the companion of Lord Berners in more than one of his campaigns in France, and who was created Earl of Huntington in 1530, after which date these sentences must have been written. Similarly, it will be noticed that the reference to Lord Berners' labours is couched in the past tense, and could scarcely have been penned in his lifetime (*i. e.* before 1533). The services done by Lord Huntington to the printer here commemorated are, however, clearly connected with the first publication of the romance,—with the printing of Lord Berners' manuscript. The expression of thanks for his aid is directly rendered to the Earl, so that the preface and the book, to which it refers, must have been printed while he was still alive,—that is, before 1512, the year of his death. We should therefore assign the first edition to some date after 1533, and before 1542.

The conclusion is supported by the opinion of bibliographical experts. Lowndes, in the *Bibliographer's Manual*,¹ stated that he believed it to have been printed by Copland about 1540, but the date we are inclined to think is too late by about six years. It is also improbable from a comparison of Lord Crawford's *Huon* with the type and woodcuts of works from William Copland's press that he was the printer. No folio romances, it should further be remembered, were printed by him before 1550. Mr. William Pickering, who carefully examined the type and paper of the unique copy of the first edition, judged that it proceeded from the press of Wynkyn de Worde

¹ 1853, p. 1116.

or Pynson.¹ Mr. R. A. Graves of the British Museum, whose opinion is of a high value in a question of this kind, although he has been unable to find any book with exactly the same type, woodcuts, or initial letters, as in the one before us, has arrived at the conclusion that in its typographical features it most closely resembles the works of Wynkyn de Worde. The differences between the type and initial letters, for instance, of the present book and Wynkyn de Worde's *Boke named the Roiall*, are certainly minuter than in any other works of the time that I have examined. Wynkyn de Worde died towards the end of the year 1534, and was engaged at his press until the last. My final conclusion, therefore, is that Lord Crawford's copy of *Huon of Bordeaux* should be dated about 1534 (*i. e.* after March 16th, 1533, and before January, 1535), and that Wynkyn de Worde was its printer.

It is still more difficult to determine the date of the second edition, which has been wholly lost. No trace of it appears in the *Stationers' Registers*. But the colophon of the third edition, which was probably a rough reprint by an enterprising bookseller of the second edition, itself doubtless a reprint of the first, may enable us to fix the year of publication. It is there stated that the book was translated by Lord Berners "in the year of our Lord God one thousand five hundred three score and ten." Such an assertion taken literally is wholly gratuitous, but it seems probable that it applies to the date of the second edition, whence the words were erroneously copied into the third. Lord Berners' romance may therefore be said to have been published for a second time in 1570. The fact that several bibliographers at the beginning of the century assert distinctly that *Huon of Bordeaux* was printed by Copland, makes it just possible that the second edition came from his press.

¹ Mr. W. C. Hazlitt (*Handbook to Popular Literature of Great Britain*, 1867, p. 289) states it to have been published by Robert Redborne, in 1535. The entry of the book in the catalogue of the Corsser sale, makes it clear that Pickering's opinion, which is quoted by several authorities in favour of Redborne, was as we have stated it above. It is worth noting that several cuts resembling those in *Huon* appear in Pynson's *Sege and dystruccyon of Troye* (1513). They are, however, less finished, and are evidently taken from wholly different blocks. It is just possible that they were copied by the engraver who worked the *Huon* illustrations.

The circumstance that he was the leading publisher of romantic literature at the time, strongly supports the inference.

The edition of 1601, of which, as I have noted, two copies are extant, calls for some comment. It is evidently carelessly edited, and has incorporated, I have shown, features peculiar to the first and second edition indifferently. Its title-page runs as follows:—
 “The / ANCIEN / HONORABLE, FAMOUS / and delightfull Historie of
Huon of / Bourdeaux, one of the peeres / of *Fraunce and Duke of*
Guyenne / Enterlaced with the loue of many La/dies as also the
 fortunes & adventures of Knights’ / *errant, their amorous Seruants* /
 Being now the Third time imprinted & the rude Eng^lish corrected
 and amended. / London. Printed by *Thomas Purfoot*, and are to be
 sould by / *Edward White*, at his shop at the little North dore / of
 Poules at the signe of the Gunne. 1601.”¹

Neither the copy at the British Museum, nor that at the Bodleian library is quite perfect. The former wants the last pages, and from the latter some twenty pages towards the end are missing.² They are in black-letter octavos, but in type and paper are very inferior to the first edition, and are without woodcuts. A rude attempt has

¹ 1. The Brit. Mus. copy (C. 40d. 42) has on the fly-leaf a MS. note by Mr. Pitterson, who reprinted several of Lord Berners’ works at the beginning of this century. It runs as follows:—“This is the only copy of L^d Berners’ translation of *Huon of Bourdeaux* I have ever met with, although in search of it for many years.”—E. V. U. “The writing on the last page,” it continues, in reference to the beautiful manuscript imitations of print which stands in place of the lost pages, “in completion of the work, is, I am told by a competent hand (C) that of the late Mr. Henderson, the Tragedian, to whom, therefore, it is fair to infer the volume had formerly belonged.” On the same page is the autograph of “R. Farmer,” and in two different hands (probably of booksellers) are set the prices £0 10s. 6d. and £1 10s. 0d.

2. The Bodleian copy belonged to Douce, and in his hand appear the following MS. notes:—I. “This the third edition, no other is known at present to exist.” II. “Tho’ i have entered the fel title in my list, it neither appears where there is a copy of it nor how i am authorized to say Lord Berners was the translator for w^h however i presume there is good authority” (Eitson). This copy is further stated in another note to have been bought at Major Pearson’s sale for £1 1s. 0d., and at Mr. Stevenson’s sale for £1 5s. 0d.

² In the Bodleian copy, all between chapters 166 and the middle of chapter 171, and between chapter 176 and the last page of the last chapter 181 is missing. It, however, possesses the preface which we have already discussed, and a table of the chapters, both of which the British Museum copy is without. The latter copy has lost its proper title-page and colophon. They are *written* in printed characters.

been made to revise the language of the translation, and to adapt its style to the euphuistic prose of the later part of the 16th century. But after the first few pages the reviser of the "rude English" has abandoned any intention of radically "correcting" the text, and he has contented himself with translating the conspicuously obsolete words and phrases into their more modern equivalents. His labour has for us a very high value. A comparison of the first and third editions very adequately illustrates the change our language had undergone, between the early and the late years of the century, and the variant readings of the latter have therefore been collated in the present edition with Lord Berners' own version and printed at the bottom of each page.¹

Of a later edition of *Huon of Bordeaux* we have no positive information, but the following entry in the *Stationers' Register* in 1615 proves that its copyright continued to be of value to the publisher, and that it may possibly have been subsequently reprinted.

Sexto Novembris : 1615

Master **Purfoote** / Entred for his copies by order of a full Court holden this Day all theis following which were the copies of Master **Thomas Purfoote** his father Deceased x^s
vizt.

*The History of Huon of Burdeaux.*²

§ 22. Thus it will be seen that Lord Berners' rendering of the romance before us has many points of interest for English readers. To the bibliophile the first edition has infinite attractions. All Lord Berners' works are in his eyes to be more coveted than "fine gold," but none has so painfully tantalizing a bibliographical history as the book before us. By the student of language the work must likewise be highly valued. The translator's literary style displays, as well as he could desire, the capacity of the English language at the date of its composition, and the presence of a third edition of a later date

¹ With Part II. will be published an essay on the linguistic points of difference between the two editions.

² Arber's *Transcript*, III. 265h. *Huon* stands among a number of other books; next above it is *The booke of Palmestrye*, and below, *The Italian scholemaster*.

in which Lord Berners' English has been "amended" gives him the best procurable opportunity of tracing the growth of our language in Tudor times. Nor by the reader of English literature must the romance be lightly estimated. It beguiled, as we have seen, the leisure hours of many generations of our ancestors, and it introduced King Oberon to the Elizabethan dramatists and poets. I have omitted to dwell here upon its purely literary characteristics, not because they are deficient in number or without prominence, but because I desired my readers to detect them for themselves. Although the story has not the variety or the sustained interest of the *Morte D'Arthur*, and cannot escape censure for glaring faults of construction, that it shares, throughout its latter portions, with others of its class, many pages in the chapters contained in the present volume are characterized by high artistic merit. Although the battles of brave Huon, and his murderous attacks upon infidel Saracens may prove wearisome at times, the simple honesty of his character cannot fail to win our sympathy, and we feel drawn closer to him because he is no model knight; because he cannot always resist the ordinary human passions, and is cursed with a perilous inquisitiveness. Similarly Esclaramonde, the Saracen maiden, "the most fayrest creature in all Inde, the most swetest and most courtesest," is depicted with a charming *naïveté*. Love at first sight could hardly be portrayed with a more fascinating quaintness than in the words describing the effect upon her of Huon's first rude embrace, which it is part of his mission to Babylon to hazard. "She sawe hym so fayre & felte his mouth so swete that she thought without she myght haue hym to her louer, she sholde dye for sorrow, so *that* she chaunged couloure, & blusshyd as ruddye as a rose." Of Oberon I have already spoken at some length, but I have left it to my readers to appreciate for themselves the grace and sweetness of his character. He is only half a fairy. The grief that Huon's many failings cause him, his high moral tone, and his humble bearing give him a higher human interest than we are accustomed to associate with the inhabitants of a supernatural world; and there is nothing grotesque about his powers of enchantment. Throughout the story he embodies the spirit of mediæval piety with its material anticipations of a future

life. "And whan," he says, as he concludes his account of the marvellous capacities with which the fairies have endowed him, "I shall departe out of this worlde, my place is aperrelyd in paradyce, for I know that all thyngs creatyd in this mortall world must nedys have an ende." With some occasional omissions, which each reader will determine for himself, the romance cannot fail to reward perusal. If the language is less melodious than the minstrel's viol described in its pages as making "so swete a sownde that it semed to be the mermaydes of the see," much of it is not to my ear without a music of its own, and, if the pleasure that the story can give, is not that to be derived from the most cunning literary workmanship, the travellers who are wont to saunter along the bye-ways of our literature will not, I believe, regret such time as they spend in surveying its "antique pageantry," and in listening to its recital

"Of turneys and of trophies hung,
Of forests and enchancements drear."

THE ADVENTURES OF

Duke Guon of Burdeaux.

Huon of Burdeux.

¹Here begynnthe the boke of duke Huon of
burdeux & of them that issuyd fro him.

4 Capitulo i.



8 ⁿ² the tyme acountyde the yere of grace
.vii. c. & lvi. yeres after the crueyfynge
of oure Sauyour Ihū Cryst, ther reygnyd
in france the ryght glorious and victor-

A.D. 756.

12 the grace *that* oure lord god had gyuyn hym in this
transetory worlde / for he sayd that god had gyuyn hym
the grace to haue the wyt and conduyt so to do / god
sent to aid hym, to acomplyshe, & to brynge to an ende

Charles the
Great reigned
in France.

16 his noble enterprysys many a noble prynce and baron /
so that, by the ayde of theyr forsses, with the noble
proues that god had enduyd *them* withall / he conqueryde
the Almayns / Sclauoney / & Spayne / and parte of

With the aid of
his princes and
barons he had
already conquered
the Alemanni,
Slavonia, Spain,

¹ Fol. i. col. 1 (A. i.).

² In the 'amended' edition of 1601, this paragraph runs thus :—I italicize all changes :—

In the time *by computation called* y^e yeere of grace, which was Seauen Hundred, Fifty & Six yeeres after our Sauours sufferings; Charles the great, *more vulgarly known by the name of* Charlemaine, a right *royall, religious, & warlike* Prince, rained as *KLING* in Fraunce, Emperour of Rome. *Whose course of time was applyed to many high & heroyeall enterprises, wherein the fauour of heauen was euermore so assistant to him, as his owne heart and good hopes crowned him with the honour of many successfull victories: enabling all his endeavours with the aid of diuers noble Princes & Barons, whose chiuallrie & right knightly performances, entituled him to the conquest of* Almaine, Sclauonia, Spaine,

part of Africa
and Saxony,

Affryke & Saxoney / wher as he had moche ado / but at
the ende, by the ayde of his noble barons and chynalrey /
he subduyde and put them to playne dyscounfyture, and
was crownyde with the crowne of the holy empyre of 4
Rome / the renowme of hym and of hys noble valiaunt
chynalhy strechyd out of y^e cest in to the west in such
wyse that for euer theyr shalbe¹ made of hym perpetuall
memory, as here after ye shall here. 8

and gained
immortal renown.

¶ How the Emperour Charlemayn requyryd
hys barons that they wolde chose one
amonge them to gouerne his empyre.

Ca. .ii. 12

After the
Emperour's pitous
loss of eleven of
his twelve peers
at Roncesvalles,



o it was after that this ryght noble
Emperour charlemayn had lost his
dere nephuse Rolant & Olyuer, &
dyners other barons and knyghtes, in 16
the ryght pyteous² & dolorus batayle
that was at Rowncseuall / where as theyr was so
grete & so pyteous a losse *that* al y^e.xii. peres of
france theyr were slayne excepte the good Duke Names 20
of Bauier. On a day y^e noble Emperour held open
count at his noble³ Cite of Paris / where as their was⁴
many Dukes, Erles / and barons / sonnes / and
nephuse & parentes⁵ of the noble prynces before slayn 24
and deed in the fore sayde batayle / by the purchase⁶
and grete treason done and ymagenyde⁷ / by Duke

he summoned his
vassals to a meet-
ing at Paris.

Saxonie, & a great part of Affrike, in all which attempts it is
not to be doubted, but both he & they had their hendes full of
busie employments. But let it suffice, God was their guide,
Religion the obiect, Honour the obiect, & perpetuall Fame the
reward, which both led him & his traine to these worthy
attempts, & still brought them backe with the due to their
valerious Enterprises: extending both his & their renouwe
to all parts of the world, & registering their names in the
Kalender of neuer dying memorie.

¹ shalbe be orig.

² unfortunate.

³ cheefe.

⁴ were assembled.

⁵ kindred.

⁶ falshood.

⁷ contrived.

Ganelon / the noble Emperour euer beyng after in
 doloure / and thought¹ / by reason of the grete anoyauce
 and dyspleasure that he hade of² hys sayde losse / and
 4 also by cause that he was sore³ febylle for⁴ the grete
 age that ⁵he felt hymself in.⁵ Thus when the kynge /
 and the prynces and barons hade dynyd⁶ / the noble **Having dined
with them,**
 Empe⁷roure called hys lordys before hym, he syttyng
 8 on a benche rychely aperelyd⁸ / and besyde hym
 satte⁹ hys noble barons and knyghtys. Than the kyng
 called to hym Duke Naymes, and sayde / ‘Syr Duke
 Naymes, and al ye ¹⁰my barons beyng here present¹⁰ /
 12 ye know ryght well ¹¹the greate tyme and space that I
 haue bene kyng of Fraunce / and emperour of Rome¹¹ /
 the whiche tyme duryng¹² I haue bene seruyd and
 obeyed of you¹² al, whereof I thanke you / & render **Charles thanked
his barons for
their long service.**
 16 grace and prayse to god my swet creatore / and now by
 cause that I knowe certenly / that my lyfe by course
 of nature can not long endure / for thys cause¹³ **He knows his
end is near,**
 pryncipally I haue causyd you all to be assemblyd here
 20 to gether / to declare to you my pleasure & wyll / the
 whiche I requere you all, & humblye desyre you / that
 ye wyll counsell together, and aduyse whiche of you
 may & wyll haue¹⁴ the gouernaunce of my realme / for
 24 I can no longer bere the traunyle and payn of the
 gouernynge¹⁵ therof / for I wyl fro hense forth lyue y^e
 resedew of myn age in peace, and serue our lorde
 god / wherefore, as moche as I may, I desyre you all to
 28 aduyse whiche of you all shalbe therto most able / ye
 know all that I haue two sonnes / that is to say, **He has two sons,**

¹ Greefe & heavynesse. ² by. ³ growen verie. ⁴ through.

⁵⁻⁵ now was stollen upon him. ⁶ were there assembled.

⁷ Fol. i. bk. col. 1 (A. i). ⁸ in his royall Chaire of Estate.

⁹ likewise placed in their severall degrees.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ hether summoned by our royall commaundement.

¹¹⁻¹¹ howe longe I haue gouerned this kingdome of Fraunce
 & likewise swayed the imperiall Diadem of Roome.

¹²⁻¹² I haue found your duty & service so agreeable.

¹³ reason. ¹⁴ undertake. ¹⁵ belonging to the ruling.

Lewis and
Charlot,

but neither is
fitted for the
crown.

It was Charlot
who slew the son
of Ogyer the Dane,
and caused much
evil thereby.

Loys,¹ who is to younge, and Charlot, whom I loue well, and he is of age suffysyent to rewll. But hys maners and condesyons are not mete to haue the gouernaunce of suche two noble empyrs² as the realme of Fraunce / 4 and the holy empyre of Rome / for ye know well in dayes past, by reason of hys pryde, my realme was lykely to haue bene dystroyed, and I to haue had warre agynst you all, whan by hys felony³ he slew 8 Baudouyn, some to good Ogyer the Dane / 4 wherby so many illes hath fallen⁴ / that it shall neuer be⁵ out of remembrance: wherfore, as long as I lyue, I wyll not consent that he shal haue the gouernance⁶ / though he 12 be ryghtfull enherytor / and that after me he ought to haue the syngnory. 7 Thus I desyre you to aduyse me⁷ what I shall do.'

¶ The conclusyon & answer that the barons 16 made, & of the ill^s erle Amaury / & of the counsell that he gaue to the kyng agaynst the .ii. sommes of Duke Seuin of Burdeux, wherof grete myschycf fell after⁹ / and 20 of the good counsell¹⁰ that duke Naymes gaue to the emperour. Capitulo .iii.

The barons
consult and

de lise for
Charlot.



han duke Naymes / & all the barons assemblyd to gether in a corner¹¹ of y^e 24 palays, and there were long to gether. At last they al concludyd that to Charlot y^e kynges eldest sone aperteynyd the gouernyng of the sayd realmes. Then they returnyd to 28 the 12th kyng, and shewyd hym there conclusyon where

¹ Lewis. ² States. ³ rashness.

⁴ ¹ wheron so many mishaps ensued. ⁵ rased *added*.

⁶ government.

⁷⁻⁷ But instantly I entreat your Noble opinions.

⁸ dishonorable. ⁹ afterward ensued. ¹⁰ aduice.

¹¹ priuate parte. ¹² Fol. ii. col. 1.

a pon they were agreyd / of the whiche themperour was
 ryght ioyfull. Than he called before hym hys sone, and
 shewyd hym many fayre reasons before all hys barons /
 4 therwith anauncyd¹ forth a felon traytour who had greate
 audyence² with themperour, & he had the gouernaunce
 of Charlot the kynges sone, who dyd no thyng but by
 hym³ / he was called Erle Amaury / he was son to on
 8 of the newewse of the traytour Ganelon. Than he
 sayde to the kyng & noble emperour, ⁴ 'how is it that
 ye hast so sore to delyner londys to gouerne to Charlot
 your sone?'⁴ Syr, be not yet so hasty.⁵ But, *ser*, to se &
 12 to prone hys gouernaunce,⁶ gyue hym a lond that ought
 to be your owne, wherof ye be nother honoryd nor
 seruyd⁷ / y^e which⁸ londe .ii. prouwd boyes doth kepe /
 who, this vii. yere passyd, wolde not serue you / nor,
 16 syn theyr father y^e duke Seunyn dyed, wold do you any
 obeysaunce / the eldest is namyd Huon / and the other
 Gerarde / they kepe Burdeux and all the londe of
 Aquitaine / they thynke skorne to releue⁹ theyr londys
 20 of you. But, *ser*, yf ye wyl gyue me men,¹⁰ I shal
 brynge them as prysoners in to your paleys, to do
 your wyll with them / and than the londe that they
 hold / gyue it to Charlot your sone.' 'Amaury,' quod
 24 the emperour, 'I can you gret thanke *that* ye haue
 aduertysyd me of thys mater. I wyl ye take of your
 best frendys, and besyde theym ye shall haue of myn
 .iii. M.¹¹ knyghtys, wel chosen and prouyd men of
 28 warre / & I wyl that ye brynge to me the two sonnes
 of duke Seunyn, that is to say, Huon / and gerarde,
 who by theyr pryde settyth¹² no thyng by me.'

Amaury,
 a traitorous Earl,

points out
 Charlot's
 inexperience,

and advises that
 as a test he
 should govern
 Bordeaux,
 whose princes
 Huon and
 Gerard,

having done no
 obeisance,

he will make
 prisoners.

The emperor
 assents.

¹ stepped. ² too much secrecie. ³ his direction.

⁴⁻⁴ whence proceeds it that you are so forward in deliuer-
 ance of your kingdome to the weake gouerning of Charlot your
 sonne?

⁵ forbearre this hastnisse. ⁶ his ablenesse in such a case.

⁷ where you haue as yet neither fealtie nor seruice.

⁸ this. ⁹ hold. ¹⁰ and authoritie added.

¹¹ Thousand. ¹² set.



Duke Naymes
complains of
Amaury's guile
and the king's
haste.

He advises that
Huon and his
brother, who are
very young,

Han Duke Naymes, beyng there
present, herd the wordys of Amaury,
and saw how the emperour consentyd
to hys desyre, he stept forth fyerslye,¹ 4
& ² beheld Amaury, and sayde openly:³
'syr emperour, grete yll and greate syn it is *that* ye so
lyghtly do beleue suche men as ye know wel were neuer
certen nor trew. Syr, duke Seuyng hath seruyd you all 8
hys dayes wel and trewly / nor neuer dyd thyng wherby
ye ought to dysenheryte hys chydren / the cause that
they haue not come to your presence or thys tyme to
serue you is none other cause but by reason they be so 12
yonge. And also theyr mother who louth them in-
tierly / wyll not gladly suffer them to departe fro hyr,
by cause of theyr yonge age. But, syr, yf ye wyll beleue
me, ye shal not be so hasty to take from them there 16
londes. But, syr, do as a noble prynee ought to do
for y^e loue of theyr father who so trewly hath seruyd
you / syr, sende .ii. of your knyghtes to y^e duches theyr
mother / & let them say to hyr fro you, that she do 20
sende hyr tow somes to you in to your court to serue


¹ boldly. ² Fol. ii. col. 2.

³ This speech is wholly rewritten in the later edition, and runs thus:—The ill is great but the saine farre greater, when men of no truth or certaintie are so highly listned unto. As for Duke Seuyng, is it not well knowne, my Lord, what true & honorable service all his dayes he did you? & can you then bee so easilye woone to disinherite his children? Consider, good my Lord, that the reason why as yet they haue not tendered their dutie in your presence, is nothing else but their want of years for such allegiance, & their Mother deerey respecting them, is loath to leane their companie so young. And would your Highness but be adyused by me, you should not so rashly deprive them of their londes: but rather as best becomineth a vertuous Prince, & in some regard of their Father's good service, first send two of your knyghtes to the Duchesse & let them in your name commaund her Somes personall appearance at your Court in case of service & dutifull homage: which if she or they shall refuse to doe, then may you justly procede otherwise against them. But I dare (my Lord) engage my honour, that send them shee will, and that onely a Mother's loue & care of her Children hath been the reason of their absence all this while.

you and to do theyr homage. And yf it be so that she
 nor they wyl not obey your *commaundement*, then
 shall ye haue a iust cause to prouyde a remedye. But,
 4 syr, I know for certeyn / y^e duches wyl send them to
 you, for y^e absence that they haue made is for no
 thyng / but for the loue that the mother hath vnto
 hyr chyl dren.⁷

should be sent for
to do homage.

8 ¶ Howe that the emperour Charlemaigne sent
 two knyghtys to the duches to burdeux to
commaund hyr to sende hyr two sonnes to
 hys court. Capitulo iiiii.

12 ¹  Han the emperour Charles had hard
 duke Naines speke, he sayde, 'Syr
 duke, I knowe certenly ² *that* duke
 Seun hath seruyd vs trewly / and the
 16 reason that ye haue shewyd is iust.

Charles approves.

And therefore I graunt that it shalbe as ye haue
 deuensyd.³ 'Syr,⁴ quod y^e duke, 'I thanke your
 grace.' Than incontynent the kyng sent for two

Messengers are
sent in haste to
Bordeaux.

20 knyghtes, and gaue theym in charge to go to burdeux
 to do hys message to the duches, and to the sonnes of
 duke Seun / the whiche they dyd, and so departyd
 fro Parys *without* restyng past one night in a plase,

24 tyll⁵ they aryued at burdeux / and than incontynent
 they went to y^e palays, where as they founde the
 duches, who was as than but newly rysyn fro hyr
 dyner; and whan she was aduertysyd of there *comm*

28 yng / she cam in haste to mete theym / acompenyd
 with Huon hyr son, who was by hyr; and Gerarde
 came after with a sparhawk⁶ on hys fyst / when the
 messengers saw the duches and hyr two goodly sonnes /

32 they kneyled down, and salutyd the duches / & hyr
 two sonnes ⁷ fro kyng Charlemaign, and sayd, 'Lady.

They salute the
duches and her
sons from the
Emperor,

¹ Fol. ii. back, col. 1.

² for certainty.

³ advise l.

⁴ My Lord.

⁵ untill.

⁶ sparrowhawk.

⁷ col. 2.

to you we be sent fro our emperour Charles / who by
 vs sendyht to¹ you hys salutasyon with honour and
 amyte.' When the noble lady vnderstode that they
 were messengers sent fro the noble emperour Charles / 4
 she anaunsyd and embrasyd theym / and sayde how they
 were ryght welcom. 'Dam,'² quod they, 'our emperour
 hath sent vs to you / & commaundyth you to send to
 hym your two sonnes to serue hym in hys court / for 8
 ther are but³ few in hys realme, but that are come to
 his seruyce, except your sonnes / &, lady, syn ye know
 that the londe *that* ye hold parteynyng to your sonnes
 is holden of y^e emperour Charles, by reason of his 12
 realme of⁴ Fraunce / and he hath greate merueyll *that*
 ye have not sent *them* or⁵ thys tyme to do hym seruice
 as other dukes & prynces⁶ hath⁷ done / wherfore,⁸
 lady, he commaundyth you for your welth, and con- 16
 cernasyon of your londys, *that* ye send *them* to hym /
 or yf ye do not / know for certeyn he wyll take fro
 you suche londys as ye hold, & gyue *them* to Charlot
 hys sone /⁹ Wherfore may it please you to shewe vs 20
 your good wyll.'⁹

and bid her send
 her sons to court
 on peril of losing
 her land to
 Charlot.

¶ The aunswer that the duches of burdeux
 made to themperours messengers.

Capitulo v. 24



¶ Han the good lady hade well vnder-
 stonde the messengers, she aunswered
 them swetye,¹⁰ & sayde, 'Syr,¹¹ knowe
 for certeyn the cause that¹² I have not 28
 sent my sonnes / to the court or¹³ thys
 tyme / to serue y^e kyng as reason is¹⁴ / was by cause I

The duchess
 pleads in excuse
 their youth,

¹ unto. ² Madome. ³ verie. ⁴ royall prerogative in.
⁵ ere. ⁶ in like case, *added*. ⁷ have. ⁸ In this respect.
⁹ ¹⁰ This is the summe of our Message, and wee attend
 your answeare.

¹⁰ gently. ¹¹ My Lordes and honourable Freendes.

¹² the reason why. ¹³ before. ¹⁴ dutie required.

saw theym so yonge;¹ and also for the loue of duke
 Seunyn theyr father / and by cause I knewe eertently
 that my ryghtfull ²lorde, the emperour Charlemayne /
 4 loued alwayes the duke Seunyn, trustynge alwayes
 that he wold take no dyspleasure with the chyldren /
 these thynges hath³ ben the pryncypall cause that I
 haue not sent them or thys⁴ to serue the kyng /
 8 wherfore, Syrs, I requyre you, as affectuosly as I can,⁵
 to be meanes to theemperour and to al the other barons
 to haue me and my chyldren excusyd, for y^e faulte is
 alonlye in me and not in them.' Than Huon stept
 12 forth before hys mother and sayde :—' Madame, yf
 it had ben your pleasure, ye myght haue sent vs or⁶
 thys tyme' / 'that is trew,' quod Gerardyn / 'for we be
 grete ynow to be made knyghtes.'⁷ The lady behelde
 16 hyr two sonnes and wepyng sayde to the messengers,
 'Syr, ye may retourne to the kyng / howe be it ye
 shal reste you thys nyght in my house, and to morow
 retourne⁸ at your pleasure / and ye shall recommend
 20 me and my sonnes to y^e kynges good grace & to the
 other barons and knyghtes / and amonge other salute
 duke Naymes, who is nere parent⁹ to my sonnes / and
 desyre hym for y^e loue of duke Seuin to haue my sonnes
 24 as recommendyd.'¹⁰ ¹¹' Dame,'¹² quod the messengers,
 'haue ye no dought / for Duke Naymes is a noble man
 and a trew knyght / nor he wyl neuer¹³ be in no¹⁴ plase
 where any yll iugement¹⁵ shulde be gyuen.' Than the
 28 duches commaundyd hyr sonnes / that they shulde make
 the kynges messengers good chere and to bryng them in
 to theyr chambre to reste them / the whiche they dyde /

and the Emperor's
love to their
father.

She bids the
messengers stay
the night,

and salute Duke
Naymes on their
return.

¹ in regarde of their tender yeares. ² Fol. iii. col. 1 (A. iii.).

³ haue.

⁴ all this while.

⁵ let my entreats preuaile so much with you as, ⁶ before.

⁷ are old ynough to haue our knighthood. ⁸ depart.

⁹ kinsman,

¹⁰ to stand a continuall freend unto them.

¹¹ Fol. iii. col. 2.

¹² Madame.

¹³ will he at any time.

¹⁴ omitted.

¹⁵ opinion.

and were serued, and festyd as it aparteyned.¹ Than
y^e next mornyng they returned to y^e palayes where as
they founde the duches and hyr two sonnes / and they
humbly salatyd the lady / whan y^e duches sawe them 4
she called Huon and Gerardyn, and sayde, ‘chyl-
dren,
here in the presence of these two knyghtes I say that
at Ester ye shal go to our soueren lorde themperour
Charlemayn / and, when ye be in y^e court, serue your 8
soueren lorde well & trewly, as subgettes ought to doo ;
be delygent at all tymys to serue hym trewly,² and
kepe company with noble men such as ye se *that* be
of good³ condysyons / be not in the plase where yll 12
wordys be spoken, or yll counsell gyuen / fly fro com-
pany of them *that* lonyth not honour & trouthe /
open not your eeres to here liers, or false reporters, or
flaterers / hamt often the chyrche, and gyue largely 16
for goddes sake / be lyberal and courteys, & gyue to
poore knyghtes / fly the company of ianglers / and all
goodnes shall folow therby. I wyll there be gyuen
to eche of these knyghtes a courser & a ryche 20
gowne, as it aparteyneth to the messengers of a noble
emperour as is Charlemayne / & also eche of them
to haue a C.⁴ florence / ‘Madame.’ *quod* Huon, ‘your
pleasure shalbe acomplyshed’ / than the .ii. sonnes 24
causyld to be brought before the palays two goodly
horses, and presentyd them to the two knyghtes, and
gave eche of them a ryche gown and a .C. florence /
Whereof the messengers were ioyfull, and thanked the 28
duches and hyr two ⁵sonnes, & sayde that theyr
courtesey shulde be remembred in tyme to come / how-
beyt they knew well it was done for y^e honour of the
kyng / then they toke leue of the duches and of hyr 32
two sonnes, and so departyd / and rode without lette

In the presence
of the messengers,
the duchess
promises to send
Huon and Gerard
to the Emperour at
Easter,
and advises them
as to their
conduct at court.

Presents are
given to the
messengers,

and they depart
for Paris.

¹ as appertained to their woorth ² faithfully.

³ and vertuous *allded*. ⁴ hundred.

⁵ Fol. iii. back, col. 1.

tyll they came to Parys, where as they founde the
emperour in hys palayes syttyng amonge hys barons /
the kynge parseyued them / and incontynent called
4 them to his presence, and, or¹ they hade layser to
speke, the kyng badde them welcome home, and
demaundyd of them yf they had ben at Burdeux, and
spoken with the duches and the .ii. sonnes of duke
8 Seuyne, & whether they wolde come and serve hym in
hys court or not. ‘Syr,’² quod they, ‘we haue ben at
burdeux, and done your message to the duches / who
ryght humbly reseyyved vs, and made vs grete fest³ and
12 chere / when she had hard vs speke, and knewe that
we were your messengers, she made vs the best chere
that she cowde deuise, and sayde *that* the cause why
she had not sente hyr sonnes to your courte before thys
16 tyme, was by cause of theyr yonge age / and she
humbly requyreth your grace ⁴to haue⁵ hyr and hyr
two sonnes excusyd / and that at thys next Ester she
wyl sende them to your court. And, syr,⁶ the two
20 chyldren are so goodly⁷ that it is pleasure to beholde
them / specyally Huon the eldest is so fayre and so
well formyd that nature cannot amende hym. Also,
syr, for the loue of you she hath gyuen eche of vs a
24 goodly horse, & a ryche gowne, and a C. florence of
gold. Syr, y^e goodnes, the valewre and y^e courtesey
that is in the duches and in hyr sonnes cannot be
recountyde. Syr, y^e duches and hyr two sonnes
28 requyreth your grace⁸ to retayne them alwayes in your
faouere and good grace / and to pardone the faulte of
theyr longe absence.’

On their arrival
they inform the
Emperour of the
duchess’ promise,

and her sons’
behaviour
towards them.

¹ ere. ² Dread Lord. ³ gaue us gentle entertainment.

⁴ Fol. iii. back. col. 2. ⁵ hold. ⁶ trust me, my Lord.

⁷ two such lovely Gentlemen.

⁸ and on their behalf are we to entreat your Maiestie.

¶ How themperour was content with the report of the two knyghtes / and howe the traytor erle Amaury went & compleyned to Charlot the kynges sone. Capitulo .vi. 4



¶ When themperour had hard y^e messengers speke, he was ryght ioyfull, and sayd / 'alwayes I haue harde say that a good Impe¹ bryngethe forth 8 good ²frente / I say it for duke Senyn / who in his tyme was a valyant & trewe knyght, & by *that* I se and here³ the two chyl dren resembleth theyr good father. I se⁴ they haue reseyued my 12 messengers ryght honorably, and with grete reuerence hath gyuen them grete⁵ gyftes, y^e whiche shalbe to them vaylable⁶ in tyme to come / for they shal no soner be come to my court, but in the dyspyght of them⁷ 16 *that* wyll speke agaynst them, I shall do for them in suche wyse that it shalbe an ensample⁸ to al other to do well / for I wyll make them, for loue of theyr father, of my pryuey counsell.' Than themperour 20 behelde duke Naymes and sayde: 'Syr duke,⁹ alwayes your parentes¹⁰ hath¹¹ ben good and trew, and certenly I wyll *that* Amaury be banys hed my court / for he, nor neuer none¹² of hys lynage, gaue as yette any good 24 counsell.' 'Syr,' quod the duke, 'I knewe well y^e longe absence of duke Seuyns sonnes was for none other cause but by reason of theyr yought' / When the erle Amaury had harde the kyng speke, & sawe howe 28 he was chafyd¹³ agaynste hym, he was sorowful, and so departed secretly fro the courte, and sware that he wolde purchae¹⁴ for the two sonnes of duke Senyn

Charles commends the conduct of the youths as worthy the sons of his friend and knight Duke Sevin,

and promises them high posts at court.

He orders Amaury to be banished.

Amaury in grief, and filled with hate of Huon and Gerard, devises a plot against them.

¹ tree.

² Fol. iiii. col. 1.

³ that.

⁴ perceine.

⁵ no meane.

⁶ auailable.

⁷ any.

⁸ example.

⁹ My Lord.

¹⁰ kindred.

¹¹ haue.

¹² euer any.

¹³ offended.

¹⁴ prouide.

suche a broth¹ that they shulde bothe dye in dolowre,²
 and wolde do so myche that he wolde brynge all
 Fraunce in to heynes and trouble³ / so he went to hys
 4 lodgyng sorowfull and in grete dyspleasure / and than
 he imagyned and studyed on the mater, & howe to
 brynge about his interpryse / than he departed fro hys
 lodgyng, and went to Charlot the kynges sone, with
 8 whome he was ryght pryuey / he founde hym syttyng
 on a ryche couche⁴ deuysynge⁵ with a yonge knyght /
 than Amaury⁶ wepyng with a peteous vysage / and
 hys eyen full of water,⁶ he entred in to the chambre /
 12 and knelyde downe before Charlot, who hadde of hym
 grete petye to se hym in that case. Than⁷ Charlot
 toke hym vp, & demaundyd wherfore he made that
 sorow, and whether any man had dyspleased hym.
 16 ‘Syr,’ quod Amaury, ‘I shall shew you / trew it is⁸
 the two sonnes of duke Seuyng of burdenx / shal come
 to the courte, and, as I haue harde say, the kyng hath
 sayde that, at there commynge, they shalbe made of hys
 20 pryuey counsell / so that none other aboute the kyng
 shall haue⁹ no profyght nor wynyng. But they and
 I can se none other that yf they thus come / by them,
 all other⁹ that be now grete about the kyng shalbe
 24 chasyd away, so *that* within this .ii. yere they shall
 haue y^e beste quarter¹⁰ of the realme of Fraunce / &
 you, yf ye suffer it, they shal brynge you clere out of
 temperours fauore your father. Therefore, Syr, I requyre
 28 you helpe me now in thys besynes / for *in* tyme past
 duke Seuyng theyr father, by grete wronge and grete

He reveals it and
 his wrongs to
 Charlot the king's
 son,

and begs for his
 aid.

¹ fraine. ² as should cost both their liues.

³ and hazard the heauinesse & trouble of all Fraunce
 beside. ⁴ bed. ⁵ communing.

⁶⁻⁶ shewing a very sad countenance, the teares in his
 eyes & trecherie in his heart.

⁷ Fol. iiii. col. 2. ⁸ my greefe is not without great cause, for.

⁹⁻⁹ any honour or reckoning made of them. And assure
 yourselfe, my Lord, that if the State be thus aduanced, they.

¹⁰ partes.

treason, he toke fro me a strong castell of myn owne, & I neuer dyd him dysplesure / *ser*, ye ought to ayde in this besines,¹ for I am of *that* lynage / by reason of the noble quene your mother.' 4

¶ Whan Charlot had wel understonde y^eerle Amaury, he demaundyd in what maner he myght ayde him / 'syr,' quod he, 'I shal shew you. I shall assemble y^e best of my lynage, & ye shal let me haue of yours .lx. 8 knyghtes well armyd, & I shal lye in y^e way / to mete with y^e .ii. boyes / & I shal lay y^e bushment² in a lytyll wood a lege fro Montleherry on y^e way to Orleance, by y^e whiche waye they must nedes come / 12 & than we shall sette on them, & slay them also, *that* none shal speke therof / and if it be knowen after, who dare say agaynst you, or were any helme³ agaynst you?' / 'syr,' quod Charlot, 'sease⁴ & apeace your 16 sorow / for I shal neuer haue ioy in my herte tyll I be reuengyd of these .ii. boyes / goo, & make redy your men, & I shal prepare myn, & I wyl go my self with you y^e soner to make an end of this besynes'⁵ / whan 20 Amaury hard⁶ Charlot so liberally to offer hym selfe to go in hys ayde, he thanked hym, and embrased hys lege, & wolde a⁷ kyssed his shoo. But Charlot wold not suffer hym. But toke hym vp, and sayde:—'Syr, 24 haste you / and put to your payne that thys besynes may com to a good end.' Amaury departed fro Charlot ryght ioyous, and, at the day apoynted, he seasyd not day nor nyght to assemble hys men and hys next⁸ 28 frendys / and, in the euenyng before, he came to Charlot, who was as than also redy, and hys men / and, as secreately as they myght, they departed about the owre of mydnyght out of Parys, al armed, and they 32 seasyd⁹ not tyll they came to the plase apoynted to

The earl proposes to lay an ambush on the road,

and set upon the youths and slay them in their journey from Bordeaux.

Charlot agrees to assist him.

Charlot and Amaury prepare the plot,

and leave Paris at midnight with their men.


¹ serious matter. ² ambushment. ³ helme in feeld.

⁴ qualifie. ⁵ businesse. ⁶ Fol. iiii. back, col. 1.

⁷ haue. ⁸ nearest. ⁹ stayed.

tary the commynge of the .ii. sonnes of duke Seun /
 now I wyll leue to speke of them, and returne to
 speke of the two sonnes of duke Seun / Huon and
 4 Gerardyn.

¶ Howe the two sonnes of duke Seun of
 burdeux toke leue of the duches there
 mother / & howe *in* there way they ouer
 8 toke the good abbot of Cluny there vncle
 goynge towardys Paris to the emperour
 Charlemayn. Capitulo .vii.

12  E¹ haue wel harde here before howe the
 messengers of the kynges departed fro
 burdeux. Than the two chyl dren² made
 them redy to go to the courte, ryehely
 apareyled / and well fornysshyd of
 16 euery thyng ne defull, aswell of gold & syluer & other
 aparel of sylke as to theyr estate apperteynyd / than
 they³ assemblyd the bar⁴ons of the countre, to whom
 they recommaundyd theyr londys and sygnoryes /
 20 and dyd chose out .x. knyghtes and .iiii. counsellers
 to ryde with them to ayde and to gouerne theyr
 besynes. Than they sent for y^e provost of Gerone,
 called *ser* Guyre, to whom they recommaundyd all the
 24 feactes⁵ of iustice / than,⁶ when Huon and his brother
 had chosen them that shuld go in theyr companye,
 than⁷ they toke theyr leue of y^e duches there mother,
 and of the barons of the countre, who sore dyd wepe
 28 by cause of there deperture / of⁸ the which they had
 good occasyon so to do / and more yf they hade knowen
 the peteous⁹ aduenture that ¹⁰fell after to the two
 chyl dren ; for, yf y^e duches had knowen¹⁰ therof, she

Huon and Gerard
 take leue of their
 friends and their
 mother.

Ten knyghts bear
 them company.

¹ You. ² sons. ³ there. ⁴ Fol. iiii. back, col. 2.

⁵ affaires. ⁶ Then. ⁷ than *om.* ⁸ for. ⁹ haplesse.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ afterward befell them on the way. Or had the good
 Duchesse but dreamed.

The duchess and

her people weep
at their departure.

wold neuer haue sufferyd them to departe fro hyr / for
after there fell suche myschyfe that it is a peteous¹
thyng to recount it. Thus y^e .ii. bretherne departyd
& kyssyd theyr mother, sore wepyng. Thus² they 4
toke theyr horses and theyr company, and in passyng
by y^e strettys of y^e towne / y^e people made grete
sorrow for theyr departyng, &, sore wepyng, prayed to
god to be ³theyr gyde and condute. The wepynges & 8
lamentacyons were so extreme *that* the .ii. brethern
kowd not haue so ferme a⁴ courage. But that they
gaue many a sore seygh at theyr⁵ departinge out of
the town / and when they had rydyn a certeyn space, 12
and that theyr sorrow was sumwhat apeasyd / than⁶
Huon called hys brother Gerarde & sayde, ‘Brother,
we go to the court to serue the kyng, wherfore we
haue cause to be ioyfull / wherfore⁷ lette vs two synge 16
a songe to refreshe vs / ‘brother,’ quod Gerarde, ‘my
hert is not very ioyfull to synge nor to make fest⁸ / for
thys nyght I drempt⁹ a merwelous dreme / me thought
.iii. lybardes¹⁰ assayllyd me and drew out¹¹ my hert out 20
of my body. But me thought ye skapyd¹² saue and
sownd, and retounyd bak / wherfore, dere brother, yf¹³
it be your pleasure / to withstond my dreme, ¹⁴the
whiche I reken our wyage to be a dauzgerous passage / 24
therfor I wold desyre you lete vs retourne¹⁴ agayn to
Burdeux to our mother. She¹⁵ wyll be ioyfull of our
retourne.’ ‘Brother,’ quod Huon, ‘& god wyll, we
shall not retourne for feer of a dreme, it shuld be for 28
euer to our reproche and shame / I wyll not retourne
to Burdeux tyll¹⁶ I haue sene the kyng. Therefore,

On their way
Gerard tells Huon
a dream of evil
import.

¹ lamentable. ² Then. ³ Fol. v. col. 1. ⁴ firme.

⁵ the. ⁶ then. ⁷ therefore.

⁸ sing or make any sport at all. ⁹ dreamed. ¹⁰ Leopardes.


¹¹ drewe. ¹² you escapyd. ¹³ if so.

¹⁴⁻¹⁵ which makes me dread our iourney to be dangerous:
might I preuaile with you, we would ride backe.

¹⁵ who. ¹⁶ vntill.

swete brother, dismay you not. But rather make good
 chere; our lorde Ihesu Crist shal gyde & condute vs
 in saue gard.' Thus these two bretherne rode nyght
 4 and day so longe tyll they parseyued before theym the
 Abbot of Cluny with a .xxx. horse in hys companye,
 and he was goynge to the kynges court.

They see before
 them the Abbot of
 Cluny and his
 company.

8  Han Huon parseyued that companye, he
 called hys brother Gerardyn and sayde:
 'loo, yonder I se men of relygyon hold-
 ynge the way to Parys / & y^{e1} know
 well whan we departyd fro y^e duches
 12 our mo²ther, she chargyd vs that we
 shuld always companye with good peopyl / therfore
 it is good that we make hast to ouertake them.'

'Brother,' quod Gerardyn, 'your pleasure be fulfilled: '
 16 so they rode so longe that they ouertoke the Abbot,
 who regardyd on y^e ryght syde, and saw the .ii.
 bretheren *commyn*g to ouertake hym. Than³ he stode
 styll, and saw Huon who came rydyng on before /
 20 Huon salutyd hym humbly / and the abbot in lyke
 maner to hym / & demaundyd whether he rode so
 hastely, and fro whense he came, and what he was,
 and who was hys father. 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'syn⁴ it
 24 is your pleasure to knowe, Duke Seuyne of burdeux was
 our father: it is .vii. yere syns he trepasyd⁵ thys lyfe.
 And, *ser*, behold here my brother, who is yonger than⁶
 I, and we are goynge to noble kynge Charlemayns
 28 court, to releue of hym our londys and countre / for he
 hath sent for vs by two noble knyghtes / and, syr, we
 are in dowt of sum truble by the way' / When the
 good Abbot vnderstode that they were sonnes to duke
 32 Seuyne, he was ryght ioyfull / and in token of trew
 amyte he embrassyd theym one after another, and
 sayde / 'dere frendys, haue no dowt, for, by the grace

They ride on and
 salute the Abbot.

The Abbot
 welcomes them
 kindly,

¹ you.

² Fol. v. col. 2.

³ Then.

⁴ since.

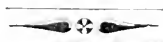
⁵ departed.

⁶ then.

and offers to
conduct them to
Paris.

of Ihesu Cryst, I shall condute¹ you sauely to Parys /
for duke Seayn your father was my cousyn germain,
wherefore² I am bownd to ayde you: know³ for
trought, I⁴ am sworne of the greate counsell with **4**
kyng Charlemayn / and yf there be any that wyl
moue or styre against you, I shall ayde you to my
power / wherefore ye⁵ may ryde suerly in my company
without any dowt.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you' / **8**
thus they rode talkyng with y^e abbot theyr parent:⁶
that nyght they came to Montleherry. Than the next
day they rose⁷ be tymys and herd masse, & after
masse⁸ toke theyr horses; and they were in all a .iiii. **12**
score horses / & they rode so longe tyll they came to a
lytyll ⁹woodsye / where as Charlot and the erle
Amaury lay in a bushment / and¹⁰ they spyed Huon
and Gerarde rydyng before, wherof they were ioyfull. **16**
Than Amaury¹¹ sayde to Charlot, 'Syr, now is the tyme
come to be reuengyd of the damage that duke Seayn
dyd to me / yonder I se hys .ii. sonnes *commyng*: yf
they be not incontynent slayne by vs, we are not **20**
worthy to haue any lond.¹² And Syr, by theyr deth
ye shall be lord of Burdeux / and of all the duchy of
Aqyntanie.'¹³

Together they
approach the
wood,
where Charlot
and Amaury lie
in ambush.



14 ¶ Howe by the counsell of the erle of¹⁵ **24**
Amaury they ran fyrst¹⁶ [at] Gerardyn,
brother to Huon, & bare hym to the erth,
and sore wouddyd hym, wherof Huon was
ryght sorowfull. Capitulo .viii. **28**

¹ condute. ² therefore. ³ and know. ⁴ that I.
⁵ you. ⁶ kinsman. ⁷ arose. ⁸ afterward.

⁹ Fol. v, back, col. 1. ¹⁰ lay closely ambushed, there.

¹¹ Then Amerie. ¹² Land or life. ¹³ Aquitaine.

¹⁴ Fol. v, back, top of col. 2. ¹⁵ of Earle ¹⁶ firste at.



4 **W**han¹ that Charlot vnderstode the erle
 Amaury, he streehyd hym in hys
 steropes, and toke a spere with a
 sharpe hed, and issuyd out² alone out
 of the wood / when Amaury saw that
 Charlot went out of the wood alone, he drew a lytyll
 out of the way, & sayde to hys men, ‘suffer Charlot
 8 alone, there nede none go to ayde hym.’ Thys sayde
 y^e false traytour, by cause he desyred no thyng elles,
 but³ one of the sonnes of duke Seuyng myght sley Charlot,
 4 wherby he thought [Charlot] shuld be dystroyed
 12 in acusyng *them* of murder, wherby he myght come
 to⁴ his dampnable⁵ intent / Charlot came agaynst thes
 .ii. brethern / the Abbot of Cluny saw Charlot *comm-*
 yng al armyde / and saw in the wood a greate *nombre*
 16 of armyd men⁶ / then he stode styll, and called Huon
 & Gerarde, & sayde / ‘dere newewe, I parseyue⁷ in
 yonder wood a knyght all armyd, and the wood full of
 horsemen : I can not tell what they meane. Haue ye
 20 done any wronge to any man? yf ye haue done, or
 holde any thyng that ys not your owne / steppe forth
 and offer hym reason, and promyse to make a mendys.’
 ‘Syr,’ quod Huon, ‘I know no man lyuyng that I or
 24 my brother haue done to hym any displeasure / nor
 we know not that any creature do⁸ hate vs’ / than
 Huon sayde to hys brother, ‘Syr,⁹ ryde on before, and
 mete with yonder knyght / and demaunde what is hys
 28 pleasure.’ Gerarde rode forth and mette with Charlot,
 and demandyd what hys pleasure was to haue, or
 whether he was kepar of that passage or not, and
 demandyd any trybute or not : yf he dyd, he was
 32 redy to pay yt. Charlot aunswered hym fyersly, and
 sayde, ‘what art thou?’ Gerarde aunswered and

Charlot advances
alone from the
wood fully armed

The Abbot
perceives him
afar off.

Huon sends
Gerard to ask his
pleasure.

¹ Across the page, not in columns. ² yssued. ³ but that.

⁴⁻⁴ and as himselfe detecting them of the murder.

⁵ Fol. vi. col. 1. ⁶ men more. ⁷ perceine.

⁸ doth. ⁹ Brother.

sayde, 'Syr, I am of the Cite of Burdeux, and sone to duke Seunyn, whom god pardon; and herafter commyth Huon myn elder brother, and we are goyng to Parys to the kynges court, to releue our londys and our fees, 4 and to serne hym / and yf there be any *that* wyl any thyng with vs, let hym come to Parys, & we shall do hym reason.' 'Hold thy toung,' quod Charlot, 'whether thou wylt or not, I wyll haue reason ¹of that / that 8 Seuin thy father toke fro me¹ / for he toke .iii. of my Castelles,² and I kowd neuer ³haue reason of hym.³ But now, syne⁴ thou art here, I wyl be reuengyd of the wronge that thy father dyde to me, for as long as thou 12 and thy brother be a lyue, I shall neuer haue ioy in my bert / there for ⁵beware of me, for, or⁵ it be nyght, I shall ⁶make thy lyfe depart fro thy bodye.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'haue petye of me: ye may se I am but 16 naked without armure. It shalbe greatly to your veleny⁷ and reproche yf I be thus slayne by you: it neuer commyth of a yentyll courage of any⁸ knyght to assayle any *person* without armure or wepeyn / howe 20 be it, syr, I crye you mercy / wel ye se *that* I haue nother swerde / shyld / nor spere / to defende me with all / ye may se yonder comyng my elder brother, who shalbe rely to make you amendes, yf any harme hath 24 bene done to you.' 'peace,' quod Charlot / 'theyr ys as now no thyng so dere to⁹ me as can moue me contrare. But that shamfully I shall put [thee] to y^e¹⁰ deth / beware of me.' Gerarde, who was but yonge, 28 was in greate feer, and called apou our lorde god, and tournyd hys hors to come agayne to hys brother. But Charlot, who was in hys foolyshe opynyon,¹¹ cowehyd hys spere, and ran after Gerarde, and strake¹² hym on 32

Charlot replies
t hat their father
did him base
wrong,

for which he will
revenge himself
now by slaying
Gerard.

Gerard pleads that
he is unarmed.

Charlot will hear
nothing,

and rushes upon
him.

¹—¹ for some wrongs done me by thy Father Duke Seuin.

² Castles from me. ³—³ know the reason thereof. ⁴ since.

⁵—⁵ stand on thy ground, for before. ⁶ Fol. vi. col. 2.

⁷ shame. ⁸ or a. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ put thee to.

¹¹ desperate moode. ¹² strooke.

the syde with suche force that the spere ran throw
 parte of hys body, and so bare hym to the erth, Gerard falls.
 wenyng he had bene slayn / how be it y^e stroke was
 4 not mortale / ¹our lord god sauyn hym at that tyme ;
 howbeit¹ he was so sore hurte that he kowd not
 remoue for payne that he felt. The good Abbot of
 Cluny behelde Gerarde, and saw hym borne to the
 8 ground, and peteously wepyng,² sayde to³ Huon / ‘ha,
 cosyn, I se yonder your brother Gerarde slayn, the
 whiche⁴ sleyth my⁵ hert.’ ‘A, ser,’ quod⁶ Huon, ‘for
 goddessaie counsel me.’⁷ Alas, what shall the duches our
 12 mother say when she knowith that my brother is slayne,
 who so swetly⁸ hath norysshed vs. A, my dere brother
 Gerarde / now I se wel your dreame is⁹ trew. Alas *that* I
 had not belyued you; yf I hade thys had not fortunyd.¹⁰
 16 A, Syr,’ quod⁶ Huon to the Abbot, ‘I requere¹¹ you¹²
 socoure me / for yf I shulde be slayne I wyll go and
 wyl demaunde of yonder knyght for¹³ what occasyon he
 hath slayne my brother, nor I shal neuer retourne tyl¹⁴
 20 I haue slayn him or he me.’ ‘A, fayre nephew,’ quod⁶
 the Abbote, ‘beware what ye do / haue no trust to be
 socouryd by me / for ye knowe well in thys eas / I
 can not ayde you / I am a prest & serue gode; I may
 24 not be where any man ys slayne.’ ‘Syr,’ quod⁶ Huon,
 ‘of suche companye as yours is we myght well forbeer.’
 Then Huon behelde peteously¹⁵ the .x. knyghtes that
 came with hym fro burdeuxe / And sayde, ‘Syr, ye
 28 that are come hether with me / and haue bene
 norysshede in my hous, how say you, wyll ye ayede
 me to reuenge y^e deth of my brother / & to socoure me
 agaynst thys fals murtherers that hath lyene¹⁶ in a

Huon thinks him
slain,

and in vain begs
aid of the Abbot,

who is a priest
and man of
peace.

He appeals to the
knights of his
escort.

1-1 although in sooth verie dangerous, for.

2 (overcome with great greefe.) 3 unto.

4 the sight whereof. 5 poore *added*. 6 tooth.

7 in this heaue case *added*. 8 louingly. 9 too *added*.

10 happened. 11 desire. 12 to *added*.

13 Fol. vi. back, col 1. 14 untill. 15 heavily. 16 lain.

They gladly lend
assistance.

wayte and slayn my brother Gerarde?' 'Syr,' quod¹
they,² 'to dye in the quarell³ we shall⁴ ayde & socoure
you:⁵ goo forth & haue no dowt' / and then they
rode forth with suche smal defence as they had. Then ⁴
Huon brochyd⁶ forth his hors *with* such fyersnes that
he made the erth to trymble vndere hym / and hys
knyghtes folowyde hym *with* a hardye courage, deter-
mynde⁷ to do walyauntly / when the goode Abbot ⁸
saw hys nephew depart and hys companye he had grete
petye / he prayed our lorde god to defende them fro
deth. And the Abbot wyth hys companye folowyde
softly after Huon to see what ende y^e matere shulde ¹²
come vnto. Huon rode so long til⁸ he came wher as
hys brother lay sore woundyd. Then he cryede alowde,
'my ryght dere brother, yf theyr be any lyfe in your
bodye, aunswer me, & shew me how ye fele your selfe.' ¹⁶
'Brother,' quod¹ Gerarde, 'I an sore woundyde; I can
not tell yf I may skape a lyne / thynke on your selfe /
yt ys no losse of me / fly ye away yonder; ye may se
how the woode ys full of armyde men / and they ²⁰
abyde for no thyng but to sley you as they haue
done me.'

Huon rides to
wher his brother
lies sorely
wounded.



²⁴ Howe Huon of Burdenxe was soroufull
when he sawe hys brother Gerarde so sore ²⁴
woundyde / and how he slew Charlotte /
and how he came before the kyng at
Parys and apealyde¹⁰ hym of treason.

Capitulo .ix. 28

¹ quoth. ² were we sure *added*. ³ yet *added*.
⁴ should. ⁵ therefore *added*. ⁶ spurred.
⁷ determining. ⁸ untill. ⁹ Fol. vi, back, col. 2.
¹⁰ appeached.



4 **W**hen Huon vnderstod his brother / he
 hade grete petye,¹ and sayde how² he
 hade rather dye then to³ departe
 wythoute reuengynge of hym, ' & god
 wyl I shall not departe tyl I haue
 slayn hym that hath brought you in to thys poynte'⁴ /
 then he sporryd hys hors, and folowyd after Charlot,
 8 who was retournynge to the woode to hys companye /
 but when Charlot parseyuyde how Huon folowyd
 hym / he tournyde hys hors and behelde hym fyerslye.
 Then Huon cryed *with* a hye voyse & sayd, 'wassale,⁵
 12 who⁶ art thou *that* hath⁷ slayn my brother? wher wert
 thou borne?' / Charlot answeyrd⁸ & sayde, 'I was borne
 in Almayne, & I am sone to Duke Thyrrey' / Huon
 beleuyd he had sayd trouthe, by cause⁹ Charlot had a
 16 dysgysyd shyld bycause he wolde not be knowen / 'a,
quod Huon, 'god gyue the incombraunce; ¹⁰ why hast
 thou slayne my brother?' / than Charlot answeyrd
 fersly,¹¹ and [sayd], 'thy fader Duke Seyn toke fro me
 20 .iii. castels, and wolde neuer do me ryght / therfor I haue
 slayne thy brother, and in lyke wyse so shal I the.'

Huon promises to
avenge the injury,

and challenges
Charlot,

who falsely
declares himself
Duke Thierry's
son.

¶ Then Huon in grete yre¹² sayd, 'false and vntrew
 knyght & morderer, or¹³ it be nyght, I shall shewe thee
 24 thy dolour that thou hast brought me in'¹⁴ / than
 Charlot sayd, 'beware the of me fore I defy the' /
 Huon, who had but small¹⁵ armure, toke hys cloke of
 skerlat & wrappyd it about hys arme, & drewe hys
 28 sworde & sporryd his hors, & came agaynst Charlot
 with his sword in his hande, and Charlot on the other
 parte came agaynst him with his spere in the reste, &
 he stroke Huon about the ryght arme, so *that* the
 32 stroke passyd through the doublenes of his cloke, and

Huon prepares to
fight,

¹ was verie sorrowfull. ² that. ³ omitted. ⁴ perill.

⁵ villaine. ⁶ what. ⁷ hast. ⁸ Fol. vii. col. l.

⁹ for. ¹⁰ shame for y^e fact. ¹¹ boldly.

¹² rage. ¹³ before.

¹⁴ quittance this wrong appon thine own head. ¹⁵ no.

and strikes
Charlot dead.

through his gowne and shyrt, & myst the¹ fleshe / thus
Huon scapyd² that stroke, & thankyd god therof / then
he lyfte vp his sworde with bothe his handys and lette
the brydell of his hors goo, and so with all his myght 4
and vertu he stroke Charlot on the helme in suche
wyse that the serkell nor coyfe³ of stele cowd not
defende hym. But that the sworde went in to his
brayne, and so fell to the erth, and neuer rose after: 8
thus Charlot was slayne miserably / then the traytour
Amaury, beyng in the wode, perseuyd well how
Charlot was slayn, wher of he thankyd god, & sayde,
'Charlot is deed, god be thankyd / for by that stroke 12
I shall brynge Fraunce in to suche a trouble, that I
shall atayne to all my desyres.' Then Huon, seyng
Charlot deed, retournyd to Gerarde hys brother, lyenge
styll on the 4erthe, brought hym Charlot horse, and 16
demaundyd yf he myght ryde or not / 'brother,' quod
Gerarde, 'I thinke yes; yf my wounde were bounde
fast I wolde assay.'

Huon binds up
his brother's
wound,

and sets him on
Charlot's horse.

¶ Then Huon alyghtyd and toke a peece of his shyrt, 20
and therwith bounde his brothers wounde / therwith⁵
Huons knyghtes came to hym, and aydyd⁶ to set
Gerarde on his hors: but for the payne that he
sufferyd he swounyd⁷ twyse / then when he came 24
agayne to hym selfe they set hym on an amblynge
palfrey, and a knyght behynd hym to sustayne hym vp
ryght / then he sayde to Huon / 'brother, I requyre⁸
you let vs departe fro hense without goynge any 28
farther forward; rather let vs retourne to Bourdeux
to the Duches our moder, for I dowght yf we goo
any farther that some grete yll shall come to vs / I
promyse you yf we be perseuyd by them that be in 32
the wode, and *that* they knowe that ye haue slayne
hym that hurt me, I fere me they wyll sle vs al' /

¹ his ² escaped. ³ wikle nor coft. ⁴ Fol. vii. col. 2.
⁵ then. ⁶ helpe. ⁷ swounded. ⁸ desire.

‘brother,’ quod Huon, ‘by the grace of god I shal not
 retourne for feer of deth / tyll I haue sene y^e kyng to
 apele¹ hym of treason, when vnder his condught and
 4 commaundement we be betrayed, and watchyd by y^e
 waye to murder vs’ / ‘brother,’ quod Gerard, ‘as your
 plesour is, so be it’ / then they rode forthe the way to
 Parys fayre and easly, by cause of Gerard who was sore
 8 hurt / then y^e knyghtes that were inbushyd² in the
 wode sayd to syr Amaury, ‘syr, what shall we doo,
 seme³ Charlot is slayne and lyeth in the playne / and
 yf we shall goo after them that hath done this dede /
 12 it shall be yll done yf they scape⁴ alyue a way.’
 Then syr Amaury answeyrd and sayde, ‘let them goo,
 god curse them, lette vs folowe them aferre of / tyll
 they come to Parys / let vs cary with vs the body of
 16 Charlot and brynge it to the kynge / and there ye
 shall se what I shall saye, and yf ye wyll agree to bere
 wytnes⁵ of that I shall say to y^e kyng, I shall⁶ make
 you all so ryche that ye shall neuer be power after’ /
 20 they answeyrd they wolde fulfyll his pleasure / then
 they went out of y^e wode, and came there as Charlot
 lay deed / then they toke hym vp and layde hym
 before y^e erle Amaury on his horse necke / and so
 24 rode forth that, god confounde them,⁷ / for as moche as
 in them lay, they dyd⁸ to haue Huon ingyrd to dethe /
 thus they rode the hye waye to parys / & the abbot of
 cluney, who was rydyn⁹ on before, lokyd behynde hym
 28 and sawe the .ii. brethren comynge after hym / then he
 taryed and demandyd of Huon what aduenture he had
 founde / ‘syr,’ quod he, ‘I haue slayne hym that hath
 sore hurt my brother / and¹⁰ he thought to haue slayn
 32 me / but, thankyd be god, I haue lefte hym ded in the

He proceeds to
 court to accuse
 the Emperor of
 treason,
 for the attack
 has been made
 while under his
 safe conduct.

Amaury raises
 Charlot's body on
 to his own horse,
 and follows after
 Huon.

Huon with his
 brother meets the
 Abbot again.

He recounts to
 him the
 adventure.

¹ appeach. ² ambushed. ³ see. ⁴ escape.

⁵ Fol. vii. back. col. 1. ⁶ will.

⁷ mischeefe & mishap followe them. ⁸ laboured. ⁹ ridden.

¹⁰ where.

The Abbot
promises to plead
for him to the
King.

place' / 'fayr nephew,' quod the abbot, 'I am sory
therof, but seen¹ it is done / yf any plee² come therby,
and *thot* ye be excusyd³ before ye kynge, I shall ayed
you with all my power' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of that 4
I thanke you' / then Huon lokyd behynde hym and
sawe were⁴ the erle Amaury with all his powre came
fayre & easely after hym / therwith all his blode⁵
trymbelyd / then he sayd to the abbot / 'syr, what 8
shall I do? yonder I se them aproche that desyryth⁶
my deth / they be the same that laye in ye wode
wachynge for vs' / 'fayr nephew,' quod the abbot,
'haue no dought / for they that come after vs cometh⁷ 12
but a soft pase; they make no semblant to ouer take
you / let vs ryde on a good pase, we shall be anone at
Parys; it is but .ii. myles thether.' Then they rode on,

They reach Paris.

and restyd not tyll they came to the paleys, and ther 16
alyghtyd and went vp. Huon helde his brother by the
hande, and the abbot by the other hande / then they
sawe the kynge syttyng amonge his barons / then
Huon salutyd duke Naymes and all the other barons, 20
and sayde / ⁸'god that for vs dyed on a crosse saue all
these noble barons / and ⁹confounde the kynge whome
I se there syttyng⁹ / for there was neuer harde of a
greter¹⁰ treason then the kynge hath purchasyd for¹¹ 24
vs / seynge that by his messengers and his letters
patentes he hath sent fore vs to do hym seruyce / the
which *commaundement* we haue¹² obbeyed as to our
souerayne lorde / but by false treason & a wayte hath¹³ 28
layde asspyall¹⁴ fore vs, and a grete busschement,¹⁵ for to
haue murderyd vs by the way / and¹⁶ they haue¹⁷

Huon tells the
barons in the
King's presence
of the treachery
he has practised
on them.

¹ seeing. ² hurt. ³ accused. ⁴ where.

⁵ heart. ⁶ desire. ⁷ come. ⁸ Fol. vii. back, col. 2.

⁹ Health & faire hap to all these noble Lords, but shame
& dishonour to my Lord the King.


¹⁰ fowler. ¹¹ practised against. ¹² in all dutie.

¹³ been *added*. ¹⁴ secretly. ¹⁵ close ambush. ¹⁶ first.

¹⁷ *omitted*.

assaylyd my brother here present, and by them was he brought in to that poynt¹ / *that* they lefte hym for deed / and he sayde that² they set on me to haue
 4 slayne me / but by y^e ayed of oure lord Ihesu Cryste with my sworde I so defendyd me / *that* he that thought to haue slayne vs, I haue slayne hym.³

¶ How the kyng was sore dyspleasyd with
 8 Huon bycause he apeychyd hym of treason / & how Huon shewyd all the maner why he slewe the knyght that woundyd his brother. Capitulo .x.

12  Hen the kyng vnderstode³ Huon he sayd, 'wassell,⁴ beware and thynke well what thou sayest here before all my barons / for neuer of⁵ all my lyfe I
 16 nother dyde⁶ nor consent⁷ any treason / but by the fayeth that I owe to saynt Denys,⁸ and by my berde / yf it be so that thou canst not proue this that thou layest to my charge / I shall cause bothe the
 20 and thy⁹ brother to dye an yll¹⁰ deth' / whan Huon herd the kyng how he toke his wordes / he stept forthe and sayd / 'O thou¹¹ kyng, beholde here my brother, who by the¹² is sore hurte and in iuperdy¹³ of
 24 hys lyfe' / and so dyd¹⁴ of his brothers gowne and his doublet to his shyrt, and than vpeneth the grete wounde, so that the blode ranne out,¹⁵ so that Gerardyn fell¹⁶ in a swoune before the kyng and the barons, for¹⁷
 28 the grete payne¹⁸ that he felt: wherof the emperour

Charles is
 wrathful at the
 charge brought
 against him by
 Huon.

Huon shows
 Gerard's wound
 to the court.

¹ into such danger. ² afterward. ³ had heard.

⁴ knight. ⁵ in. ⁶ did I euer act. ⁷ give consent to.

⁸ my maker. ⁹ Fol. viii. col. 1. ¹⁰ euill. ¹¹ Great.

¹² thy meanes. ¹³ ieopardie. ¹⁴ did take.

¹⁵ abundantly added. ¹⁶ it enforced G. to fall. ¹⁷ through.

¹⁸ anguish.

Charles pities the
injured youth,

had suche pyte¹ / that his herte tenderyd² / than
incontynent³ he sent for his surgens, causyng them to
serche his wounde / than he demaundyd yf they coude
saue his lyfe / and when they hadde well vysytyd⁴ the ⁴
wounde, they sayde / ‘syr, by the plesure⁵ of god with
in this moneth he shal be hole & sounde’ / the kyng
was glad of that answeere / than he regarlyd⁶ Huon
and sayde, ‘sene thou leyst this deed to my charge / ⁸
⁷by the feyth that I owe to god & to saint Denis /
neuer in my lyfe I thought to do this treason⁷ / but by
y^e glorious saynt James,⁸ and by the crowne that I bere
on my hede / yf I may knowe who hath done this⁹ I ¹²
shall do suche puysson¹⁰ and so grete iustyce that it
shall before euer¹¹ a perpetuall memory¹² / & I shall
do you suche ryght¹³ that ye shall haue no cause to
complayn’ / ‘syr,’ quod¹⁴ Huon, ‘I thanke you, for in ¹⁶
obbeynge of your commaundement this myschif is
fallen to vs. I can not thynke nor knowe that any
tyme of oure lyfe nother I nor¹⁵ my brother dyd neuer
wronge nor¹⁶ trespase to any creature / syr, at lenght I ²⁰
shall shewe the maner of this dede¹⁷ / after that why¹⁸
departyd fro Burdeaux we founde no aduenture / but
whan we came with in a lege of mount leherry / we
met with our vncle, the Abbot of cluney / and so fell in ²⁴
company with hym / to conducte vs to your court, and
so we rode to gether tyll we came on this syde mount
leherry / than ¹⁹we sawe a lytell wode, and by the

and promises to
punish him who
has brought him
to such a plight.

Huon describes at
length the manner
of the attack,

¹ took such compassion.

² that he could not choose but much bemoane him.

³ And therefore immediately. ⁴ thoroughly searched.

⁵ help. ⁶ and beholding.

⁷⁻⁷ thou must thinke, that thou hast touched the royall
reputation of a King & that in such sort, as verie hardly may
the condition of Majestie endure it.

⁸ by my Countreys honour. ⁹ heynous offence added.

¹⁰ right. ¹¹ as it shall remaine for. ¹² of due honour added.

¹³ And that yourselves shall report. ¹⁴ My Lord, answered.

¹⁵ either . . . or. ¹⁶ ever . . . or.

¹⁷ but thus (by your kingly patience) the case happened.

¹⁸ we.

¹⁹ Fol. viii. col. 2.

bryghtnen of the sōnne we sawe the helmes and
 speres and shyldes of them that were embusshyd in the
 wode, and the one came out of y^e wode all armyd, his
 4 spere in his hande, and shyld aboute his necke, and
 he came softe a¹ pace to warde vs / than all we stode
 styll, and sent my brother to the knyght to know
 wether they were spyes or men to kepe y^e passage, to
 8 y^e entent that, yf they demandyd any trybute, they
 shold haue ryght of vs / yf they wolde haue any of
 vs / whan my brother came nere to the knyght he
 demandyd what we were / & my brother sayde / how
 12 we were the chyldren of the Duke of burdeux, and
 where comynge by your commaundement to your court,
 to releue our londys and fees of your grace / than the
 knyght sayde how we were the same persons that he
 16 sought for / and sayd how that a .vii. yere² passyd that
 duke Senyn our father had taken fro hym .iii. castels /
 the whiche was neuer so / than my brother offeryd
 hym that if he wolde com to parys before you & your
 20 barons he shuld haue ryght done to hym, yf he hadde
 any wronge done to hym / than the knyght answeyrd
 that he wolde not so do / and ther with sodenly
 couchyd his spere, and stroke my brother as ye see, he
 24 beyng vnarmyd, so that he fell to the erthe, wenyng
 he had been slayne / and than he rode agayne fayre
 and easley towarde the wode. And whan I sawe my
 brother borne to the erthe, I had suche sorowe at my
 28 herte that I coude tarry no lenger to be auengyde /
 than I demandyd of myne vncler yf he wolde ayed me /
 he answeyrd and sayd no, because he was a preest, so
 he and all his monkes departyd, and lefte me alone /
 32 than I toke the .x. knyghtes that came with me out of
 my countre / and I rode as faste as I coude to the
 entent that he sholde not ³skape⁴ that had so woundyd

and of his
brother's fall.

¹ a soft. ² yeares ³ Fol. viii. back, col. 1.

⁴ escape.

my brother / & as sone as he sawe *that* I folowyd
 hym / he retourneyd agaynst me / than I demaundyd
 of hym what he was / he sayd he *pertheynd* to Duke
 terrey of Ardayn / than I demaundyd why he had 4
 slayne my brother; he answeryd & sayd in lyke wyse
 he wold serue me / & therwith he couchyd his spere &
 stroke me on y^e syde through my gowne & dowblet, &
 hurte not my fleshe, as it was the pleasure of god / than 8
 I wrappyd my mantell aboute myne arme & I drew out
 my sworde, & with bothe my handys as he passyd by
 me I gaue hym such a stroke *that* I clone his hede
 nere to the tethe / & so he fell downe to y^e erthe 12
 deed. I know not what he is / But what soeuer he be,
 I haue slayn hym / & yf there be any *that* wyll
 demaund ryght in this case, let hym in to your royall
 court before al your peeres, & I shal do hym reason yf 16
 it be founde *that* I haue done any wronge; & whan
 I had slayne hym, I layde my brother on y^e deed
 knyghtes horse, & ouer toke y^e abbot myne vncle / as
 I rode I sawe¹ behynd me I saw² them *that* where 20
 inbusshyd in y^e wode come rydyng after, & one knyght
 came before & brought vpon his horse y^e sayde deed
 knyght. I knowe well, yf they be not come, they
 wyll soone be here / whan kyng Charlemayn vnder- 24
 stode Huon / he hadde grete meruayll what knyght it
 was *that* was slayne, and sayd to Huon / 'knowe for
 trough I shall do you reason, for I know none so grete
 in my realme, who so euer it be, yf I can *proue* on hym 28
 any poynt of treason, but I shall cause hym to dye an
 yll² deth / for y^e mater touchyth me ryght nere, syn³
 vnder myne assurance & by my *commandement* ye
 are come hether.' Than y^e kyng *commaundyd that* 32
 Gerarde sholde be had to a goodly chambre & well
 lokyd vnto y^e whiche was done.

He tells how he
 slew his brother's
 would-be
 murderer,

and how his body
 is now being
 borne to the
 court.

Charles wonders
 who the false
 knight may be.

He and by the
 king's order is
 carefully tended.

¹ and looked.

² euill.

³ seeing.

¶ How Charlot the kynges sone ¹ was brought
 before hym deed, & of the grete sorow
 that he made / & how the erle Amaury
 4 appellyd ² Huon for the deth of Charlot /
 & how the kyng wolde haue runne vpon
 Huon / & of the good counsell that Duke
 Naymes of bauyer gaue to the kyng.

8 Ca. .xi.



12 ³ Ow³ Huon of Burdeux & y^e abbot
 of cluney his vncler herd the good
 wyll of the kyng & the offer *that*
 he had made / they knelyd down
 to haue kyst his fote, & thankyd
 hym of his courtesey / *than*⁴ y^e
 kyng⁵ toke hym vp. *Than* y^e abbot sayd, 'syr, all
 16 that my nephew Huon had sayd is trew' / y^e ki[n]ge
 sayd, 'I belyue you wel' / y^e king dyd to *them* honour,
 & feest⁶ / but he had grete desire to knowe the trowth
 of *this* case / & sayd, 'Huon, & ye, abbot of cluney /
 20 know for trowth⁷ I haue a sone whome I loue
 enteerly / yf ye haue slayne hym in doynge suche a
 velayn⁸ dede as to breke my assurance, I do *pardon*
 you, so *that* it be as ye say' / 'syr,' *quod* Huon, 'of⁹
 24 *that* I thanke your grace / & surely y^e trowth is as I
 haue shewyd you' / then y^e kyng sent for Charlot his
 sone / so he was serchyd for in his logynge / & there
 it was sayde how he was departyd out of y^e towne y^e
 28 nyght before / so y^e messengers departyd, & whan they
 came in to the strete / they sawe where the erle Amaury
 came rydynge with Charlot deed on his horse neck /
 & they herde in stretes lordes, knyghtes, ladyes, &

Huon and the
 Abbot thank the
 king for his
 courtesy.

Charles asserts
 that if Charlot
 himself proved
 the traitor his
 death should be
 readily pardoned.

He sends for
 Charlot.

But meanwhile
 his body is being
 carried to the
 palace.

¹ Fol. viii. back, col. 2. ² appeached. ³ when.

⁴ but. ⁵ knyng *in orig.*

⁶ fested them in his Pallace royally. ⁷ certaintie.

⁸ villainous. ⁹ for.

The people throng
the streets,
and greet the
cortège with
lamentation.

Charles hears the
cry, and
bids Duke
Naymes discover
its cause.

But straightway
Amaury brings
the corpse into
the audience
chamber,

and lays it down
before the King.

Duke Naymes
endeavours to
assuage Charles'
grief.

damasels making grete cryes & pytyous complayntes
for Charlot, the kynges sone, whome they sawe deed /
these messengers had grete meruayll¹ / at the last they
persayuyd it was for y^e loue of the deth of Charlot / 4
than they returnyd to the palayes / but by rayson of the
cry² that the pepull made, ³the noyse therof ⁴cam to
the palayes. Y^e kyng Charlemayn herd his sonne
Charlot namyd / than he sayde to duke Naymes / 8
'syr, I haue grete meruayll what noyse is it *that* is
made in y^e towne, & as me thynkyth I here my sonne
Charlot namyd / sertenly my hert gnyyth me *that* it is
my sone that Huon hath slayne, wherefore I requyre 12
you go & knowe what the matter is.'³

¶ Than duke Naymes / departyd, & incontenent he
incounteryd Charlot borne deed betwene .iiii. knyghtes
vpon a shyld / whan he sawe *that*, he was ryght 16
sorowfull, so *that* he coud speke no⁵ worde / than y^e
vnhappy erle Amaury went vp in to y^e hall, & came
before y^e kyng & all his barons, & ther he leyde
downe Charlot / whan Charles sawe his sonne so 20
slayne / y^e doloure & sorow that he made was inport-
able ;⁶ it was pyte to se him / than duke Naymes had as
mych sorow as other,⁷ seyng the pytfull aduenture,
& also y^e sorow⁸ *that* his lordes made / than he came 24
to the kyng & sayde / 'syr,⁹ *comforte* yourselfe in this
mysaduenture / syr, by takyng this dolour¹⁰ ye can

¹ were annoyed at these exclamations, but.

² outeries & pityous moone.

³ From 'the noise . . . is' is thus altered:—with oft repetition of Charlot's name (all which the Emperour, leaning at a windowe, confusedly heard) his heart woxed wondrous heauie, saying, 'Mee thinkes I heare such sorrow as hath not been usuall, and my Sonne Charlot's name is tossed to & fro in this outery; it maketh me feare that it is my Sonne whome thou hath slain.' Then calling Duke Naymes unto him, requested him to goe forth & resolue him on this matter.

⁴ Fol. ix. col. 1. ⁵ one. ⁶ unspeakable.

⁷ any other. ⁸ moane. ⁹ Good my Lord.

¹⁰ by ouergreening at this ill hap.

wynne nothyng / nor recouer your chyldre agayne / syr,
 ye know well *that* my cousin Ogver the dane slew my
 sonne Bertrand / who bare your message of defyaunce
 4 to the kyng of Pauey / yet I dyd suffer it without any
 grete sorow making, by cause I knew well sorow coule
 not recouer hym agayne' / 'Naymes,' *quod* the kyng,
 'I can not forȝete this / I haue grete desyre to knowe
 8 the cause of this dede' / than duke Naymes sayd to
 duke Amaury / 'syr, know you who hath slayne
 Charlot, & for what cause?' Than erle amaury stept
 forthe, and sayde *with* a loude voyse¹ / 'syr² kyng
 12 Charlemayn / what³ demaunde you any forther, *whan*
 ye haue hym before you *that* hath slayn your sonne? &
 that is Huon of Bourdeux, who is syttyng there in
 your presence' / *whan* the kyng herd what the erle
 16 Aman⁴ry had sayd / he lokyd feersly on Huon, and had
 strykyng⁵ him with a knyfe,⁶ & duke Naymes had not
 ben,⁷ who blamed the kyng, & sayd, 'a, syr,⁸ what
 thynke⁹ you to do this day, to receyue y^e chyldren of
 20 duke Seyn in to y[ou]r court, & hath promysed to do
 them ryght & reason, & now wold sle them / so may
 all suche as shall here of y^e mater shal¹⁰ say *that* ye
 haue sent for them to¹¹ murder & to sle them / and *that*
 24 ye sent your sonne to lye in a wayte for them, to haue
 slayne them / syr, ¹²by that I se in you / as now ye
 maynteyne not youre selfe lyke a man, but rather lyke
 a chyldre¹² / syr, demaunde of erle Amaury / the cause
 28 why he had forthe Charlot your sonne / & why *that* he
 assaylyd y^e .ii. brethren' / ther was present Huon, who
 was gretely abasshyd of the kyng¹³ / who receyuyd
 hym so humbly,¹⁴ & now wolde sle hym / he was in

The King inquires
the manner of his
son's death.

Amaury
denounces Huon
as the murderer.

Charles would
have rushed upon
Huon but for
Duke Naymes'
intervention.

Huon fears the
King in his
wrath.

¹ voyce. ² Great. ³ why. ⁴ Fol. ix. col. 2. ⁵ stroken.

⁶ his Sceptre. ⁷ but for duke N. ⁸ Forbeare, my Lord.

⁹ meane. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ to no other end but to.

¹²⁻¹² By this may be discerned, that you forget the true
Maiestie of a King, & expresse actions unseeming Charlemaine.

¹³ at the Kings furie. ¹⁴ first so kindly.

grete fere / and as moche as he myght he drewe backe
fro the kyng / & was abasshyd¹ in *that* he had slayn
the kynges sonne vnknowyng;² & than he was sore
troubelyd it was no meruayll, for theyr³ he sawe no 4
man *that* perteynyd to hym nor⁴ to ayed hym / nor⁵
too mayntayne his ryght / but alonely y^e good abbot of
eluney. his vnele / who coul gyue him none other ayed
but *with* his wordes: than he toke on hym corage, & 8
ryght humbly sayd to y^e kyng / ‘syr, I requyre your
grace touch me not / for, syr, know for troughe / he that
lyeth ther deed before you / I slew him in my defence /
& not knowyng *that* he was your sonne Charlot / 12
for, syr, yf I had knowyn him I wolde in no wyse haue
touchyd hym / for, syr, ye may well knowe yf I had
knowyn *that* it had ben he I wolde not haue com
to you for resyne;⁶ I wold rather haue fled awaye 16
so farre that no man shulde haue herd any tydynges of
me / &, syr, for goddes sake I requyre you, as hertely
as I can, to let me haue ryght / I submyt my body / to
abide the iugement of your noble Peres, ⁷and yf it can 20
be prouyd *that* I slewe Charlot knowyng hym to be
your sone / than, syr, let me haue a shamefull dethe’ /
than all the Peeres & barons beyng theyr sayde with
a hie voyse / how he had spoken resonably, & that yf 24
the erle Amaury wolde any *thinge* say to the contrary,
it was tyme than to speke and to shewe it.

He pleads that he
slew Charlot in
his own defence,

and knew him not
to be the King's
son.

The barons ask
Amaury for his
account of the sad
business.

¶ How the traytour erle Amauri chargid
Huon before the emperour, how that he 28
traytourously with treason prepensyd⁸ had
slayne the kynges sonne, & in that quarell
he appellyd Huon to batayll. Ca. .xii.

¹ greatly agreed. ² not knowing him.

³ And blame him not to be much troubled in mind when.

⁴ omitted. ⁵ or. ⁶ rescue. ⁷ Fol. ix. back, col. 1.

⁸ pretended.



4 **W**hen the kynge had harde Huon speke,
 he beheld duke naymes, & desyred
 him too shewe¹ hys aduysse. ‘syr,’
 quod the duke, ‘I can seye none other
 thyng to you but as I sayd before /
 demaunde erle Amaury why he led fourth your sonne
 all armed, and kepte the busschement in the woode to set
 8 on the .ii. bretheren, or elles what was it that he sought
 for there’ / then erle Amaury sayd, ‘syr, I shall shewe
 you the trouthe, & yf I do otherwyse let me dye a
 shamefull dethe / trewe it is, this nyght passyd, your
 12 sonne sent for me, desyryng me to ryde with hym an
 hawkynge / and I desyred hym to abyde tyll² the
 mornynge / but he sayd *that* he would nedes go afore
 nyght / then I grauntyd to go with hym, so that he
 16 woude ryde armyd / for I doughtyd the men of Arden,
 to the entente that yf we met with eny of them we
 myght be able to resyst them ; and so we dyd / thus we
 rode out of this towne, and came into a lytell wode,
 20 and there *we* cast of our hawkys, and theyre we lost one
 of them, and therwith the same waye came the chyldren
 of duke seyn / and there we sawe Huon, the eldest, who
 is here present, who ³had taken vp oure hawke / and
 24 your sone came in courteyse manner to hym, and
 desyryd hym to rendre agayne his hawke, but the
 traytoure would not in no wyse / then Gererde, the
 yonger brother, came to your sonne, and they straue so
 28 togyther that your sonne strake him ; then Huon, with-
 out eny word spekyng, lyft vp his swerd, & so
 petuously⁴ slew youre sone / then he & his brother ran
 awaye so fast that we coude not ouer take hym,⁵
 32 wherof we were sory / thus he knewe well your sonne,
 and he slew hym / and yf he wyll say the contrary,
 here is my gage, the which I present here before you /

The King follows
Duke Naymes'
advice,
and appeals to
Amaury.

The false Earl
tells a lying story

how he and
Charlot, while
hawking, lost a
hawk,

which Huon
seized and refused
to restore,

and how Huon
thereon struck
Charlot down.

Amaury
challenges Huon
to reassert that he
knew not who
Charlot was.

¹ giue. ² untill. ³ Fol. ix. back, col. 2.

⁴ villaynously. ⁵ them.

and yf he be soo hardy to lyfte vp my gawge, I shall make hym confesse it or¹ it be nyght that it is trew that I haue sayd: and this I wyll proue,² my body ayenst his.' 4

¶ How the abbot of cluney wold proue that the sayeng of the erle amaury was fals & vntrew, & how the erle dyd cast his gauge ayenst Huon, who toke it vp. Ca. .xiii. 8

The Abbot of Cluny declares Amaury to have falsely spoken.



After that erle Amaury had endyd his tale, y^e abbot of cluney stept fourthe, and sayd to the kyng, 'syr, ye neuer herd so fals a tale before as 12 this traytour Amaury hathe sayd, for I and .iiii. moo³ of my mounkes,

beynge preestes here presente, ar redy to swere & to make solempne othe *that* the sayeng of this traytour is 16 false, and therefore there ought no gage to be layde in y^e cause, synse⁴ there is trew wyttenes of the mater' / 'syr,' quod the kyng, 'the wyttenes is to be beleuyd / syr Amaury, how say you therto?' / 'A, syr,' quod 20 he, 'I wolde be lothe to say agaynst y^e abbot, but y^e trowth is as I haue sayd / y^e abbot may say as it playse him / but yf Huon be so hardy to deny this *that* I haue sayd before you / let him com in to y^e felde 24 agayn t me, & or⁵ it be nyght, I shall cause him to 'confesse it openly' / whan y^e abbot harde *that*, he had grete meruayll, & beheld Huon, & sayde⁷ / 'fayr nephew, offer your gage, for the ryght is with y^e / for 28 yf thou be vanquysshid in this quarel, yf ouer I retourne in to myne abbey theyr is no seynt in my church, but I shall with a staffe beat & breke them all to pyces /

Amaury adheres to his story.

The Abbot bids Huon accept the false Erle's challenge.

¹ ere. ² with *added*. ³ more. ⁴ seeing.

⁵ before. ⁶ Fol. x. col. 1.

⁷ he grew offended, & looking stearnly upon H., sayd.

for yf god wyll suffer suche a wronge, I shal gyue
 suche strokes vpon y^e shryne of seynt Peter *that* I
 shall leue nother gold nor preeyous stone hole to-
 4 gether' / 'syr,' quod Huon / '& god wyll I shall not
 let to lyft vp his gage, for I shall proue *that* falsly and
 vntrewely / syr Amaury lyeth, as an yll¹ & a false
 traytour, & shal make him to confesse *that* I neuer
 8 knew *that* he *that* I slewe was y^e kynges sonne' / than
 y^e kyng sayd *that* Huon muost lay² hostage / 'syr,'
 quod Huon, 'ye shall haue my brother; I can not
 delyuer you any *that* is so nere me as he is / for here I
 12 haue nother cosyn nor kynsman *that* wyl lay in hostage
 for me' / 'fayre neuwe,' quod y^e abbot, 'say not so /
 for I & my monk^{es} wyl be pledges for you, & yf
 anythinge shuld fall to you other wyse than wel,
 16 which god forbed, than shame haue kyng Charlemayn,
 without he hange on the galous bothe me & all my
 monk^{es}.' 'A, syr,'³ quod the kyng, 'ye say yll / for
 I wold neuer do *that*' / than sayde the kyng to
 20 Amaury' / 'sir, lay⁴ pledges for your part' / the traytour
 answeyrd / 'sir, here be .ii. of my nephese shall be
 pledge for me' / 'I am content,' quod the kyng, 'on y^e
 condyeyon *that* yf thou be vanquysshid or dysecomfytd
 24 I shall cause them to dye an yll deth.' than y^e pledges
 said they wold be no pledges on *that* condyeyon: let
 other be pledges who wold: but they sayd yf y^e king
 wold take them on the lesynge⁵ of ther londes / they
 28 were content / & the kyng graunted them.

If his nephew
 be defeated,
 he will break all
 the images of the
 saints in his
 church.

Huon takes up
 the challenge,

and gives his
 brother as
 hostage.

Amaury offers his
 two nephews as
 pledges.

¶ How those .ii. champions came in to the
 felde where as they shuld fyght, accompanyd
 with there frendis. Capitulo .xiiii.

¹ euill.

² giue.

³ Go to, Abbot.

⁴ bring in.

⁵ loosing.



¹ Thus as ye herd both *partey*s delueryd
pledges; than y^e kyng, to be in y^e more
suerte, put them both in a toure² tyll
y^e day of y^e batayll: than y^e feld was **4**
ordaynyd, for / y^e kyng than sware *that*
his sonne shuld not be buryed tyll he that were van-
quysshyl were hanged, yf he were not slayne in y^e felde /
than he *commandy*d duke Naymes to be redy with an **8**
C. knyghtes to kepe y^e felde & to se *that* no treason
shuld be done; for he sayd he had rather lese³ y^e best
Cyte of his realme / 'syr,' *quod* duke Naymes, 'be y^e
pleasour⁴ of god, the mater shall be so orderyd for y^e **12**
suerte of both partes, *that* none shal haue wrong' / y^e
which thinge was done so delygently *that* euery thinge
was redy / so bothe *partes* were brought in to the
church of our lady in Paris, accompenyd with theyr **16**
frendes, as in suche a case requyryd. with Amaury
was is next frendes, all issuyd of y^e genalogeny of
Gannelon / whan they both had hard masse, they toke
a sopp⁵ of wyne / than they were rychely armyd & **20**
mounytd on good hoisses, & so tooke y^e way to y^e
felle / y^e stages were redy, & y^e kyng & his barons
there redy⁶ / abydyng for the .ii. elampyons / who
came one after another through y^e strettes / fyrst came **24**
y^e erle Amaury, & he rode tyll he came to the felde,
& than he alyghtyd, & salutyd y^e kyng & all the
barons / than Huon cam anone after, accompenyd with a
goodly soort / there was⁷ lenyng in wyndous lads & **28**
damesels a grete nombre, who all prayed our lord Ihū
Cryst to ayed & to defend Huon fro the traytour
Amaury / the peopell compleynyd / and thought it in
possyble that Huon shulde resyst agaynst erle Amaury / **32**
by cause Huon was so fayre and yong / but of the
age of foure an twenty yere. But he was so fayre and

The lists are prepared for the duel.

The Duke Naymes makes all arrangement.

The champions with their friends repair to church on the day appointed for the fight,

and thence ride to the field.

The people desire the chances of the warriors.


¹ Fol. x. col. 2. ² Tower. ³ loose. ⁴ grace.

⁵ draught. ⁶ present. ⁷ were.

so well made of body that he coude not be amendyd,¹
 nor none more replete with vertu / there fore he was
 sore bemoyn² both of men and³ woman that sawe hym
 4 passe by / & by cause y^e erle Amaury was a byg⁴ man
 & a valyant, & an expert man⁵ in armes, none stronger
 in all the kynges court / he was prey⁶ with the
 kyng, & welbelouyd / pyte it was that⁷ he was suche
 8 a traytour, for a worse coud not be founde in any
 realme / he had grete trust in his owne strenthe / &
 lytyll praysyd⁸ Huon of bourdeux, thynkyng he
 shuld not longe endure agaynst hym / but there is a
 12 comon prouerbe / the which hath begyld many a
 man: it is sayd that a small rayne abatyth a grete
 wynd / for yf our lord Ihū Cryst wyll saue Huon / y^e
 foree & puyssance of erle Amaury shall do Huon but
 16 small hurt / for the ryght excellent proffers⁹ and grete
 corage that was in Huon defendyd hym, as ye shall
 here here after.

¶ How those .ii. champions made theyr
 20 othes vpon the relykes that theyr sayenge
 was trewe / & what the kyng sayde.

Capitulo .xv.

24  Thus Huon [rode]¹⁰ tyll he came in to
 y^e felde: than he salutyd the kyng &
 all the barons ryght humbly / than he
 aprochyd to the relykes, & ther made
 his soleme othe in the presence of
 28 duke Naymes of Bauyer, who was
 keper of the felde, affermyng *that* neuer in his lyfe he
 knewe not *that* he had slayne Charlot, the kynges

Huon swears on
 the relykes that he
 has spoken truth.

¹ no knight so gallant & seemly. ² bemoyned in the orig.

³ Fol. x. back, col. 1. ⁴ big boned. ⁵ knight.

⁶ inward. ⁷ everie one greatly pityed that. ⁸ regarded.

⁹ partes. ¹⁰ rode is written in the orig.

some, &¹ all *that* erle Amaury hath sayd was false & vntrew, & that he lyed lyke a false traytour, & so kyssed the relykes / whan Huon had thus made his othe, erle Amaury stept forthe all afrayde / and sware 4 how Huons othe was false, and *that* [he] surely knew *that* it was Charlot whan he slewe him, by cause he claymyd his hawke, y^e which Huon had taken vp, & *that* he sayd he ²wold cause hym to confesse or³ it 8 were nyght. whan he had sworne, he thought to haue retournyd to his horse, & stumblyd so *that* he had nerehand fallen to y^e erth. all *that* saw it toke it for an yll syne, & ingyd in ther mindes how y^e mater was 12 lykely to go yll⁴ agaynst the erle Amaury. whan bothe those champyons had made⁵ theyr othes, & the duke Naymes had causyd the felde to be avoydyd / had set the keepers of the felde in deu order as it 16 aperteynyd / *than* the .ii. champyons lept on theyr horses, theyr speres in theyr handys, & there shyldes about theyr neckes / *than* a crye was made *that* none shulde be so hardy to mone or to make any token to 20 any of y^e partes vpon payn of deth / after *that* crye made y^e noble emperour Charlemayn, full of Ire & dyspleasour, causyd it to be cryed,⁶ *that* yf it fortunyd *that* the vanquysser sle his enymye in y^e feld / or⁷ he 24 confesse y^e treason for y^e deth of his sonne, *that* *than* y^e vanquesser to lese all his londys, & hym selfe to be bannysshyd out of y^e realme of france, & out of y^e empyre of Rome for euer / after *that* crye made⁸ duke 28 Naymes & y^e other barons & peeres cam to the kyng and sayde / 'A, syr, what wyll ye do? / this that ye wolde do⁹ is agaynst the statute of the noble realme of fraunce & of y^e empyre of Rome / for often tymes it 32

Amaury swears that Huon speaks falsely.

Amaury stumbles when mounting his horse.

The champions enter the lists.

The Emperor proclaims that should either of them be slain before he had confessed the truth as to Charlot's death, the survivor should be bani-bled and lose his land.

¹ that as he was true knight, & loyall liegeman to the Emperour, *added*.

² Fol. x. back, col. 2, ³ ere. ⁴ euill. ⁵ taken.


⁶ againe to be proclaimed, ⁷ before.

⁸ proclamation ended. ⁹ you haue proclaymed.

happyth¹ *that* one of y^e champyons is slayne & haue
 no puissance² to speke³ / for your grete renowne, the
 whiche so long tyme hath been spred abrode, that it
 4 shulde be quenshyd or blamysshyd, it shall be sayde
 that you who hath lyuyd in so grete tryumphe⁴ all y^e
 dayes of your lyfe, & now in your latter dayes to
 become a⁵ chylde;’ of the which wordes / the kyng
 8 toke small ragarde.

Duke Naymes
 urges that the
 King is herein
 unjust.

¶ How Huon of burdeux and the erle
 Amaury fought together be⁶fore kyng
 Charleman, & how the traytour Amaury
 12 was slayne by the noble prowes and
 cheualry of Huon. Ca. .xvi.

16  Han kyng Charlemayn had herd Duke
 naimes / he swore by saynt Denys of
 fraunce & by his crowne & berde that
 it shulde be as he had sayd, nor other
 wyse he wolde not do it / than the
 noble barons where sory & sore dyspleasyd. and they
 20 departyd fro y^e kyng, & sayd *that* by all senylytude⁷ fro
 thens forth ryght sholde haue no place in his court. many
 noble prynces & barones murmuryd sore at y^e crye⁸
that was made / those⁹ .ii. champyons drew a parte, &
 24 eche of them fersly regardyd other / than erle Amaury
 spake aloude & sayd / ‘*thou* Huon of burdeux, false
 traytour¹⁰ knyght / this day I shall cause the to confesse
 thy falsnes / how be it I haue grete pyte of the, I see
 28 the so yonge¹¹ / yf¹² *thou* wylt confesse this murder
 that *thou* hast done / I shall desyre kyng charlemayn

His barons make
 like complaint,
 but Charles will
 hear nothing.

Amaury cries
 aloud that Huon
 is a false traitor.

¹ happeneth. ² power.

³ shall therefore the conquerour been so much iniuried?
added.

⁴ dignity. ⁵ weaker than a. ⁶ Fol. xi. col. 1.

⁷ likelyhood. ⁸ proclamation. ⁹ and the.

¹⁰ trayterous. ¹¹ in regard of thy youth.

¹² therefore.

Huon answers
in rage.

to haue mercy¹ vpon the' / whan Huon² herde the
 treatour so speke, for anger he blusshyd red & sayde /
 'a! *thou* false gloton and yll traytour,³ thy venemus
 wordys full of bytternes doth no thyng⁴ abasshe me / 4
 for the good ryght that I am in shall ayed me by the
 helpe of our lorde Ihesu Cryst / and I shall so ponyshe
 thy trespace / *that* this day I shall make the to confesse
 thy falsnes haue ther of no dought' / ther with couchyd 8
 ther speres & dasht⁵ so to ther horses / *that* it semed
that the thounder had fallen fro heuen / thus with
 ther sharpe speres they encounteryd in suche wyse *that*
 ther spers brake to ther handes, so *that* y^e sleuers flew 12
 a hie in y^e ayer, & in to y^e kynges stage / & both ther
 horses fell to the erth / & the knyghts sore astonnyd
 with ther fallyng / than venturously⁶ they releuyd
 them with ther swordys in ther handys, & so aprochyd 16
 eche to other / and so fought eche with another⁷ &
 Huons horse strangelyd syr Amauryes horse, &⁸ whan
 he saw his horse slayne / Amaury stept to Huon for to
 haue slayne him / ⁹ than Huon stept betwene them⁹ & 20
 lift vp his sword, & gaue y^e erle such a stroke *that* he
 was astonnyed therwith, & reculyd¹⁰ backe more than
 .ii. pases, & more¹¹ had he not fallen to y^e erth¹¹ / so
that all *that* sawe them had meruayll of Huons vertu & 24
 force, seyng y^e grett strenght *that* was in syr Amaury /
 than whan y^e erle Amaury felte hym selfe in grete
 payne he began to dysspyse the name of god and of the
 glorious vyrgyn mary / how be it, as well as he myght 28
 he aprochyd to Huon, and with his sworde gaue Huon
 suche a stroke on the helme that all the floures &
 precyous stones ther flowe abrode in the felde, and the
 syrele of the helme all to broken / and the stroke was 32

They rush on
one another,
and their horses
fall.

They fight on
foot.

Amaury strikes
Huon's helmet
so that he nearly
swoons.

¹ compassion. ² Fol. xi. col. 2. ³ most disloyall knight.

⁴ at all. ⁵ gave such carrier. ⁶ very holdly.

⁷ so long while that. ⁸ who.

⁹⁻⁹ but Huon met him valiantly. ¹⁰ staggered.

¹¹⁻¹¹ hardly holding himself from falling to the earth.

so puyſaunt that Huon was therewith aſtonyd, and by
 force was fayne to ſyt¹ on one of his knees to the
 erthe² / and he hadde nere almoost fallen to the erthe /
 4 & there was present in y^e feld lordes & knyghtes / &
 one of y^e abbot of ³cluneyſ ſyruantes / whan he ſaw y^e
 grete ſtroke *that* Huon had receyuyd, he departyd out
 of y^e felde & went in to y^e church, were as he founde
 8 his mayſter y^e abbot in his prayers for y^e good ſpede of
 Huon his nephew / than the varlot ſayd,⁴ ‘a, syr,⁵ pray
 hertely to our lorde Iheſu Cryste to ſocoure your
 nephew / for I ſawe hym fayne to knell upon one of his
 12 knees in grete dought of deth’ / than y^e good abbot
 with out any auſwer lyfte vp his handys to warde
 heuen deuoutly, & wepynge, prayyng to god ayed & to
 defende y^e honoure of his nephew & to mayntayne his
 16 ryght / thus Huon beyng in y^e felde in grete doute
 of his lyfe, felyng *that* force⁶ of y^e erle Amaury / he
 callyd with a good herte to our lorde Iheſu Cryste /
 requyrynge hym to ayed his ryght, y^e whiche he
 20 knewe *that* it was trew⁷ / whan erle Amaury ſawe
that Huon had receuyd of hym ſuch a heuy ſtroke, he
 ſayde, ‘Huon, I belyue *thou* wylt not endure longe /
 better it were *that thou* confesse y^e dede or⁸ I ſlee
 24 *thee*, for, or it be nyght, I ſhall cauſe *thee* to waue in
 the wynde’ / ‘holde thy toung, thou falſe traytour,’
 quod Huon; ‘thyne ylnes⁹ ſhall not ayed the / for I
 ſhall brynge the to that poynt / that all thy frendys
 28 ſhall haue ſhame of the’ / than Huon auanſyd hym,
 and made ſemblant too haue ſtryken Amaury on the
 helme. Than Amaury lyfte vp his ſhyld to haue
 receuyd y^e ſtroke / but whan Huon ſawe that / he
 32 tornyd his ſtroke to a reuerſe, and ſtroke Amaury

The Abbot prays
for his nephew's
ſafety.

Amaury threatens
to ſlay Huon
unleſs he
confesse the
wilful murder of
Charlot.

Huon deſies him,

and ſtrikes off
Amaury's left
arm.

¹ fall. ² the other Legge but weakly ſupporting him.

³ Fol. xi. back, col. l. ⁴ to whom the ſeruant ſayd.

⁵ Ah, my Lord. ⁶ ſturdie ſtrength. ⁷ to be moſt true.

⁸ before. ⁹ illneſs.

under the arme with his sharpe sword, so that he stroke of his arme, the which fell downe into the felde, shykde and all.

¶ whan erle Amaury sawe & felt y^e meruelous 4
stroke, & that he had loste his lyfte arme, & sawe it
lay in y^e felde, he was full of payne and sorow / &
aduysyd hym selfe of a grete treason. Than he spake to
Huon and sayde / 'a, noble knyght, haue pyte of my, 8
for ¹wrongfully & without cause I haue appellyd you
of the deth of Charlot, y^e kynges soue / but I knowe
y^e trought ye knew hym not / but he is dede by my
neymes; for I brought hym in to the wode for to 12
haue murderyd you and your brother. I am redy
knowlege² this before the kyng and ail his barons,
and to dyscharge you therof / I pray you slee³ my
not; I yelde me to you / take here my sworde' / than 16
Huon came to hym and put downe hys arme to haue
taken the sworde / but than the false traytour Amaury
with a reuerse stroke / stroke Huon on the arme,
thynkyng to haue stryken it of / but he faylyd. How 20
be it, he gaue hym a grete wounde in the arme, so that
the blode fell downe./ whan Huon sawe his grete⁴
treason / he sayd, 'O thou vntrew & false traytour /
thyne ylnes can no *lenger* saue the / for thou shalt 24
neuer do trayson more' / than Huon lyft vp his
sworde / & gaue the erle suche a meruaylous stroke
betwene the helme & the shulder / that he stroke of
his hede clene fro y^e body, so *that* the helme & hede 28
fell one way and y^e body another way / alas, what hape
was it to Huon *that* he dyd not remembre or he slewe
Amaury y^e crye⁵ *that* y^e emperou had made before /
for after Huon sufferyd so moche payne & traunayell⁶ / 32

Amaury falsely
appeals to Huon's
pity,

and offers him his
sword.
But when Huon
advances to
take it,

Amaury deals
him a fierce blow
which misses its
aim.

In anger Huon
cleaves Amaury's
head before
he can confess
his sin.


¹ Fol. xi. back, col. 2. ² to acknowledg.

³ kill ⁴ horrible. ⁵ Proclamation.

⁶ iniurie as might moue the verie hardest heart to compassionate his case, and as you shall more large vnderstand in the following discourse.

¹that they is no clerke can wryten it nor bryng it in to memorey / and so Huon slewe the erle Amaury.¹

¶ How² that³ after the emperour Charlemayn
4 had seen the erle Amaury⁴ slayn, he com-
mandyd expresly that Huon shoulde avoyde
the realme and empyre and to be banny hyd
for euer. Capitulo .xvii.

8 ⁵  Hen that duke Naymes who kept the
felde / sawe how by Huon the erle was
slayne he was ryght ioyfull / and came
to Huon and demaundyd how he dyde /
12 'syr,' quod he, 'thankyd be god I
fele no dolour nor grefe' / then they brought hym to
the palayes to the kyng, whoo was departed out of
the felde, when he saw y^e erle slayne and was therof
16 ryght sorowfull / then he demaundyd of Huon and of
the duke Naymes yf they had herde y^e ⁶ erle Amaury
confesse the treason that he had layde to Huon for the
deed⁷ of Charlot his sone / 'syr,'⁸ quod y^e Duke, 'I
20 thynke he dyd confesse it / but I herde it not / for
Huon pressyd so sore on hym that he had no leyser to
do it' / then Charlemayn sayde / 'a, erle Amaury,
I knowe certainly *thou* dydest neuer *that* treason, nor
24 neuer thought it / wherfore thou art slayne wrongfully
and with out cause / for ther was neuer a trewer
knyght than thou wert / for⁹ I am sure yf thou
haldest done it thou woldest haue confes-yd it before
28 me' / then the kyng sayd to¹⁰ Huon, 'I charge the
incontenent to avoyde my realme / out of the whiche I
bannysche the for euer / nor *thou* shalt neuer enjoy
one fote of lounde in Bourdeaux nor in Aquitanie / and

Huon is brought
before the King.

Charles asks if
Amaury confessed
his sin,

and when he
learns that none
heard his
confession,

he bids Huon
depart the
realm,
and surrender
his lands.

¹ omitted in Lord Berners. ² after. ³ the. ⁴ was.

⁵ Fol. xii. col. 1. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ death. ⁸ My Lord.

⁹ and. ¹⁰ vnto.

also I defende¹ the that thou neuer be so hardy to go
to Bourdeux / for by my² lorde saynt Denis,² yf I
knowe that thou goest thether I shall make *the* to dye
an yll deth / nor ther is no man lyuynge, though he be 4
neuer so nere³ fremd to⁴ me,⁵ yf he make any request
for *the* I shall neuer loue hym / nor he shall neuer
after come in to⁶ my syght' / then Huon sayd, ⁷ 'syr,
how is it?⁷ ⁸ haue I not done my denore / sene before 8
you & all your barons I haue dyscomfytyd in playn
batayll he *that* hath brought you in to all this trouble? /
⁹ syr, sertenly yf ye do to me as ye say, I shall
complayne me to god / for neuer more wronge was 12
done to any noble man / yll ye remembre y^e good
seruyce⁸ *that* the noble duke Senyn my father hath
done to¹⁰ you / so *that* by¹¹ this ye shewe grete
ensample to all your noble barones and knyghtes for 16
them to be well aduysyd how fro hense forthe they
shuld order *them* self, & how to truste in you, *when*
that by your owne aloneley¹² opinion, foundyd vpon all
yll¹³ grounde / & agaynst all statntes royal & emperall, 20
wold execute your owne vnreasonable wyll / *sertenly* yf
it wher another¹⁴ prynce besyde you *that* wolde do me
this grete wronge, or I wolde *consent* so to be delt with
all / many a castell and many a good towne shuld be 24
distroied & brought to ruyn, & many pour men
dystroyed¹⁵ and dysherytyd, & many a knyght brought
to dethe.'

Huon begs
Charles haue
mercy upon him,

and denounces his
injustice.

¹ forbid. ²⁻² honour & crowne. ³ a.

⁴ vnto. ⁵ but. ⁶ to omitted.

⁷⁻⁷ Alas, my Lord, what iustice is this?

⁸⁻⁸ haue I done any more then knighthood bound me
too? haue not you and your Barons scene him discomfited in
playne Battaile that hath brought you unto all this trouble?
vndoubtedly, my Lord, if you doe to me as you say, God in
heauen be my wites that neuer more wrong was done to any
noble man. This is but bad remembrance of the good
seruice. ⁹ Fol. xii. col. 2. ¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ for.

¹² obstinate. ¹³ euill. ¹⁴ any other.

¹⁵ more impouerished.

¶ when Huon had thus spoken to y^e kyng / duke
 Naymes stept forthe and sayd to the kyng / 'syr,¹
 what thynke² you to do? / ye haue seen *that* Huon had
 4 done his deuore³ / when he hath brought his enemy
 to vttrance, and slayne hym⁴ / ye may well thynke
that it was the worke of god when suche a chyld
 shuld brynge to vttrance⁵ & dysconfyt suche a pusant
 8 knyght as was y^e erle Amaury. Syr,⁶ yf ye do as ye
 haue sayde / ⁷I nor neuer any⁷ other man shall⁸
 truste you / ⁹& euery man shall say fare & nere *that*
 herof thys extorsyon,⁹ that in the ende of your dayes
 12 ye are become chydysche,¹⁰ & more lyke a sot¹¹ then a
 wyse man.¹² then Huon desyryd all y^e barons *that*
 were ther present *that* they wold all requyre y^e kyng to
 haue mercy¹³ of hym, seen they were all boude so to
 16 do in that he was one of the peeres of the realme /
 then all the prynces and barons, holdyng Huon by
 y^e hande, knelyd down before y^e kyng / than Huon
 sayd / ¹⁴'syr, sene your grace to hate me so sore as ye
 20 speke of / I requyre you at y^e ¹⁵request her of all your
 barons / that ye wyl graunt me *that* I may abyde
 in myne owne countree for euer, and neuer to com
 in your syght, and in this I requyre your grace of
 24 mercy.¹⁴

Duke Naymes
 intercedes for
 Huon.

The barons
 entreat Charles
 in his behalf.

Huon begs
 Charles to permit
 him to live for
 ever at
 Bourdeaux.

¹ My Lord. ² meane. ³ no more then his dutie.

⁴⁻⁴ hauing brought his enemy to confusion, and slayn him.

⁵ shame. ⁶ Therefore, my Lord.

⁷⁻⁷ neither I nor any. ⁸ euer.

⁹⁻⁹ but euery one farre & neere that shall heare of this
 crueltie, will report.

¹⁰ sencelesse. ¹¹ Tyrant.

¹² Prince. ¹³ more respect.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ Seeing it is so, my Lord, that your displeasure is such
 againste me as you haue expressed, Let your Barons and my
 selfe obtaine but this fauour at your handes, that I may be
 confined to my owne natiue Countrey for euer, there to lead a
 poore & priuate life, neuer to be admitted to your presence
 againe, & for this grace we shall all right humbly thanke you.

¹⁵ Fol. xii. back. col. 1.

¶ How kynge Charlemayne sent Huon to
do a message in babylon to the admyrall
gaudyse. Capitulo .xviii.

Charles is
obdurate.



¶ Hen the emperour hade herd Huon 4
speke, he sayde incontynent, 'auoyd
out of my syght / for when I remembre
my sone Charlot whome thou haste
slyne, I haue no member¹ on me but 8
that² trymbeleth for the dysplesour that I haue to the /
& I charge all my barons here present that they neuer
speke to me more for the / when duke Naymes herde
y^e kynge say so, he sayde to all the barons / 'syr,³ ye 12
that be here present & haue well herde the grete
vuresonablenes that the kynge do⁴ too one of oure
peres / the whyche, as ye knowe well, it is agaynst
ryght and reason / and a thyng not to be sufferyd. 16
But that by cause we knowe sertynly the kynge is
our souerayn lord, we muste suffer his plesour. But
fro hense forthe / sens he wyl vse hym selfe and to do
thynges agaynst reason and honour, I wyl neuer abyde 20
an oure lenger with hym / but I⁵ wyl departe and
neuer retourne agayne in to y^e place wher as suche
extorsyon⁶ and vuresonableness is vsed / I wyl go
in to my countre of Bauier / and lette the kynge do fro 24
hense forth as he lyst.' Than all the barons departyd
with the duke fro the kynge without spekyng any⁷
worde, & so lefte the kynge alone in hys palayes /
when the kynge sawe the⁸ duke depart and hys other 28
lordys / he was ryght sorowful and in greate dis-
pleasure / and sayd to the yonge knyghtes that were
left about hym / how that he ought⁹ greatly to be
anoyed for⁹ y^e deth of hys sone, who was slyne so 32

Duke Naymes
protests against
his unjust
sentence.

He and the barons
leave his presence
in anger.

¹ parte. ² it. ³ My Lords. ⁴ offers. ⁵ I omitted.

⁶ extemitie. ⁷ (one). ⁸ Fol. xii, back, col. 2.

⁹ ⁹ in nature to take heuylie.

peteously,¹ / and also² to se how hys barons had
 abandonyd hym and left hym alone / ³than he sayde
 openly / ‘I se well I am³ forsyd sum what to folow
 4 theyr wylls’ / and ther with he wept peteously / and
 incontynent marchyd⁴ forth and folowed them, &
 sayd, ‘duke Naymes and all ye my barons, I requyre
 you⁵ retourne agayne, for of force I most graunt your
 8 desyres⁶ / though it be agaynst that promys that I
 made before’ / then the duke and all other⁷ retournyd
 to the palayes with the kyng / who sat downe on a
 benche of gold, & hys barons abowt hym. Than he
 12 sent for Huon, who knelyd downe before the kyng,
 requyryng hym humbly of mercy and petye; than⁸ the
 kyng sayde / ‘Huon, sen thou woldest be agreed⁹
 with me, ¹⁰Then it must behoue the to do that I
 16 commaunde and orden.’¹⁰ ¹¹‘Syr,’ quod Huon, ‘to obey
 you there is no thyng in this mortall worlde than any
 humayn body may do, But that I shall vndertake to
 do it / not lettynge for fere of any deth, though it be
 20 to go to the dry tre / ye, or to hell gattes to fyght witt
 the fendes there, as sum tyme dyd Hercules,¹¹ yf I may
 therby be agreed with¹² your grace.’ ‘Huon,’ quod
 the kyng, ‘I thynke to sende the in to a worse place,
 24 for of .xv. messengers that I haue sent, ther was neuer
 none retournyd agayne / I shal shew *thee* whether thou
 shalt go / sen¹³ thou wylt *that* I shall haue mercy of

Charles declares
 himself forced
 to relent,

and recalls the
 barons.

He bids Huon
 approach him,

and orders him
 to depart on a
 perilous mission
 to Babylon.

¹ disloyally. ² and could not likewise but greene.

³⁻³ therefore there is no remedy, but I must be.

⁴ went. ⁵ (to). ⁶ requests.

⁷ the rest. ⁸ to whom. ⁹ at peace.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ it is requisite that thou performe whatsoever I
 enioyne thee.

¹¹⁻¹¹ Else, my Lord (said Huon), god forbid, there is no
 man in the world owes you more obedience than I doe. or shall
 more gladly vndertake whatsoever your highnesse shall please
 to command me, dreadlesse of death or any danger, be it goe
 to Hell gates, to fight with the fiendes there, as sometime did
 Hercules.

¹² reconciled to. ¹³ seeing.

He is to
enter the palace
of Admirall
Gaudys,

kill the chief
lord present,

and thrice kiss
the Admirall's
daughter
Esclarmonde.

Huon is to
bring home
for Charles
hawks, bears,
youths,
and maidens,
together with
a handfull of
hair from the
Admirall's beard,
and four of his
teeth.

thee. thou must go to the cyte of Babylone / to the
admyrall Gaudys / and shew hym¹ / as I shal declare²
to *thee* / and³ be ware on payne of thy lyfe *that* thou
fayle not to do it / whan thou cummyst there, mount 4
vp in to hys palays / and there tary tyll he be at hys
dynyr,⁴ and whan thou seest hym sytte at the table,
than thou to be armyde with thy sworde nakyd in thy
hande / and loke the⁵ grettest lord that thou seest 8
sytte at his table, whether he be kynge or admyrall /
thou most stryke of hys hede / and after that⁶ do
so myche as to fyaunce and to kys thre tymes the
fayre Esclarmonde, dowghter to the Admirall Gaudysse,⁶ 12
openly in his presence / and before all other there
present / for I⁷ wyll thou knowyst⁷ she is the fayrest
mayde *that* is now lynynge / ⁸and after that⁸ thou
shalte say to the admirall Gaudyse that I commaunde 16
hym to sende me a .M. hawks, a .M. berers, and a .M.
wayters all cheynede, and a .M. yonge varlettes / and a
.M. of the fayrest maydens in his realme. And also
thou to brynge me thy handfull of the here of hys 20
herde / and .iiii. of hys grettest teth.' 'A, Syr,'⁹
quod the barons, 'We se well ye desyre gretely hys
deth whan ye charge hym wythe suche a message.'
'That is trewe,' quod the kynge, 'for without I haue his 24
berde & hys grete teth¹⁰ without trompercy or counyn,¹⁰
Lette hym neuer retourne in to Fraunce, nor come in to
my presence / for and¹¹ he do he shal be hangyd and
drawyn.' 'Syr,'¹² quod Huon, 'haue ye shewyd me all 28
your pleasure?' 'Ye,' quod the kynge, 'my wyll is
as I haue sayde, yf thou wylt haue peace with me.'

¹ there doe. ² appoint. ³ but.

⁴ Fol. xiii. col. l. ⁵ the verie.

⁶⁻⁶ enquire for faire Escleremond, daughter to the Admirall,
and kisse her there.

⁷⁻⁷ gine the to vnderstand. ⁸⁻⁸ this being done.

⁹ Alas, my Lord. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ brought me hether unfaynedly.

¹¹ if. ¹² My Lord.

‘Syr,’¹ quod Huon, ‘by y^e grace of god I shall
 4 furnyshe your message / the fere of dethe shall not
 lette me to do it.’ ‘Huon,’ quod the kyng, ‘yf god
 8 of his grace wyll suffer the to retourne agayne in to
 Fraunce, I charge the be not so hardy to come to
 Bourdeux nor to no² parte of thy countre tyll thou
 hast spoken with me / yf I fynde the doynge contrare /
 I shall cause the to dye an yll dethe. And vpon this I
 wyll thou layest vnto me good hostages.’ ‘Syr,’³ quod
 Huon, ‘here be x. knyghtes whom I shall leue with
 you for suerte, to the entent that ye shalbe con⁴tent with
 12 me / howbeit, syr,⁵ I requyre your grace to suffer the
 knyghtes that came *with* me fro Burdeux to go with
 me to the holy sepulere.’ ‘I am content,’ quod y^e
 kyng, ‘that they go with y^e to the red sec.’⁶ ‘Syr,’⁷
 16 quod Huon, ‘I thanke your grace.’ Than Huon made
 hym redy to furnyshe his vyage.

Huon accepts the mission, and prepares to set out.

Charles permits a few knights from Bourdeaux to go with him.

¶ Howe Huon of Burdeux toke leue of the
 kyng & of the barons, and rode withe the
 20 good abbote to Cluny. Capitulo .xix.

After that ⁸Charlemayne hade gyuen
 Huon y^e charge of hys message, the
 24 kyng called be fore hym Gerardyne,
 brother to Huon, & delyuered to hym
 the gouernance of all his brothers
 londes in his absence tyll his retourne.

Gerard is intrusted with the care of Huon's lands in his absence.

And thus whan Huon was redy he came to y^e kyng
 28 and to the barons / to take his leue, and the Abbot of
 Cluny⁹ sayde he wolde go *with* hym parte of his way /
 &¹⁰ .xiii. of the grettest pryn¹¹ce and ladyes conuayed,

The Abbot of Cluny, with other lades and gentlemen, insist on accompanying Huon a little way on his road.

¹ My Soueraigne Lord. ² any. ³ My Lord.
⁴ Fol. xiii. col. 2. ⁵ my Lord. ⁶ thether or else where.
⁷ My Lord. ⁸ king. ⁹ who.
¹⁰ so likewise did. ¹¹ Fol. xiii. back, col. 1.

At Troyes
all but the Abbot
bid him farewell,
and return.

a¹ .ii. ²dayes iournay; and whan they came to the
towne of Troye in Champayne / duke Naymes toke
leue of his cosyn Huon, and gaue hym a *sommer*
charged with gold, and kyssed hym at theyr *departynge* / **4**
then gerard his brother toke his leue, & also kyssed
hym / but knowe for trought the kysse that he gaue
hym was lyke to the kysse *that* Judas gaue to ³our
lorde god³ / the whiche was derely bought, as ye shall **8**
here after / thus duke Naymes and gerard departyd
and toke theyr way to Parys / &⁴ the abbot and Huon
restyd not tyll thy came to the abbey of cluney, wher
as they were receuyd with grete ioye and well feestyd / **12**

At Cluny the
Abbot leaves him.

than the nexte mornynge / Huon departyd, and toke
leue of his vncle sore wepynge, desyrynge hym ⁵that
he might be *recommendyd*⁵ to his mother the duches,
and to gerard his brother. the abbot promysyd so to **16**
do, and gaue Huon his nephew a malet charged with
money coraunt in fraunce / thus he departyd and toke
the way to rome. Now leue we to speke of Huon, and
shewe of duke Naymes and Gerard, who retornyd **20**
to Parys. than⁶ gerard requyryd the kyng that it
wolde playse hym to restyue his homage for the lordes
of bourdeux, to the entent *that* he myght be auaneyd,
and to be in y^e state of one of y^e peeres of fraunce / **24**

Gerard seeks
to obtain from
Charles the rank
of peer of
France.

the whiche thyng duke Naymes wolde not consent
vnto nor agre to it / but sayd to the kyng, ‘syr,⁷ ye
ought not to suffer that Huon shuld be dyssherytyd’ /
wher of gerarde was not content / but duke Naymes **28**
set lytell therby / for he belenyd Huon inteerly /
so this homage was delayed / than gerarde retornyd
to bourdeux / where as he was well receuyd. ⁸whan
the Duches sawe hym and not Huon to retourne, she **32**
was sorowfull in her harte / than she demaundyd of

Duke Naymes
begs the Emperor
to refuse the
request.

Gerard goes to
Bordeaux,
and tells his
mother what has
passed.

¹ accompany him for. ² Fol. xiii. back, col. 2.
³ his Maister. ⁴ but. ⁵ to recommend. ⁶ where.
⁷ My Lord. ⁸ but.

Gerard why that Huon his brother was ¹not retournyd
with hym / than Gerarde shewyd her all the hole
mater and aduventure / and of the departyng of Huon,
4 and of the maner of hys vyage / wherof the Duches
had suche sorow / that she fell syke, and so lay .xxix.

The duchess falls
sick on learning
Huon's fate,
and thirty days
later dies.


8 Gerard nobly buryed her in the Church of saynt
Seueryne by the duke her husbonde / Anon² after
maryed hym to the doughter of duke Gylberde of
Cecyll / who was the grettest traytour and moost

Gerard weds the
daughter of the
traitorous Duke
Gylberde of
Cecyll.

12 crewell that myght be harde of / Anon² & Gerard his
sone in lawe lernyd his wayes and folowyd his
condycyon / for he delte so yll with the towne of
bourdeux & with the countre about, that pyte it was to
16 here the poore people / and wepte³ for the losse of
duke Seuyne and of the Duches / and prayed to god
for y^e good retourne of there lord Huon / Now we
shall leue to speke of them, and speke of⁴ Huon.

20 ¶ How Huon of bourdeux came to Rome, &
was confessyd of the pope, who was his
vncl; & of his departyng, & how he
came to brandys, wher he fownde his vncl;
24 Garyn of saint Omers, who fore loue of
Huon passyd the see with hym.

Capitulo .xx.

28  Ere before ye⁵ herde how Huon
departyd fro his vncl; the abbot
of Cluney / so longe he rode with
his knyghtes that he came to the
Cyte of Rome / and there he was
32 logyd in a good hostrey / than Huon

Huon reaches
Rome.

¹ Fol. xliiii. col. 1.

² Anon *in orig.*

³ To weep.

⁴ returne vnto.

⁵ howe.

rose in the mornynge, accompanyd with Guyehard, whom he well louyd, and with the other knyghtes that ¹came thether with hym, and went to the churche of saynt Peter and herde masse,² & whan y^e mas³ was done the ⁴pope cam out of his oretorey / than Huon cam to hym and humbly salutyd hym / the pope behelde him, and demaundyd what he was / ‘syr,’ *quod* he, ‘my father was Duke Seunyn of bourdeux, who is decessyd.’ than ⁸the pope stept to hym & embrasyd hym, and sayd, ‘fayr nephew, ye are welcome / I praye you shewe me how dothe my syster the Duches, your mother, and what aduerture hath brought you hether’ / ‘syr,’ ¹²*quod* he, ‘I requyre your holynes *that* ye wyll here my confessyon a parte / for I haue grete nede therof.’ ‘fayr nephew,’ *quod* the pope, ‘it pleasyth me ryght well to here you.’ than the pope toke hym by the ¹⁶hande and went with hym in to his oretory, and ther Huon shewyd hym all the aduerture that he had syns he cam fro bourdeux, and of the vyage *that* Charlemayne had set hym to do and to saye to the admirall Gaudyse / ²⁰⁴whan he had all shewyd⁴ / he requiryd *parton* and penaunce for his synnes / the pope sayd he wolde gyue⁵ hym none other⁶ penaunce but⁷ *that* kyng⁸ Charles had gyuyn hym⁹ / the which was so grete ²⁴*that* none humayn body coude suffer it, nor durst thynke¹⁰ to do it / than the pope gane hym absolueyon of all his synnes / ¹¹than the pope¹¹ lede hym in to his palayes, where he was honorable receyued with grete ²⁸ioy / after they had dynyed and deuysyd too gether a grete space, the pope sayde to Huon / ‘fayr nephew, the way that ye muste go is to go to the porte of brandys, there shall ye fynde my brother Garyn of ³²

Huon salutes the Pope, who was his mother's brother.

He confesses to him,

and receives absolution.

The Pope entertains Huon,

¹ Fol. xliiii. col. 2. ² service. ³ service.

⁴⁻⁴ all which being declared and done. ⁵ assigne.

⁶ no. ⁷ for. ⁸ the Emperour. ⁹ done that alreadie.

¹⁰ undertake. ¹¹⁻¹¹ and louingly.

saynt Omers, who is your vncle / to whome I shall
 wryte a letter to the entent that he shall haue knowlege
 of you, for I knowe well he shall haue grete ioy of
 4 you / he hath the keypyng of the Oryentall see / he
 shall adresse you, and delyuer you shype or galee suche
 as shall be nesses¹sary for you' / ²'holy father,' quod
 Huon,³ 'of this I thanke you' / 'well,' quod the pope,
 8 'this nyght ye shall abyde here with me.' 'syr,' quod
 he, 'I requyre you let me departe / for gretely I desyre
 to se myn vncle Garyn' / whan the pope sawe that he
 wolde nedys departe, he delyueryd hym his letter, and
 12 sayd, 'fayr nephew, salute fro me my brother Garyn
 your vncle' / 'syr,' quod he, 'I shall do your com-
 maundement' / than the pope gaue to Huon grete and
 ryche presentes, and to all them that were with hym /
 16 than he kyssyd his nephew at his departyng / Huon
 toke leue of hym all wepyng / and so departyd, and
 enteryd in to the Ryuer of Tybre in a ryche shype, the
 whiche the pope had well garnysshyd for hym.
 20 ¶ Thus he had good wynde / so that anon they
 aryuyd at brandys / but whyles he was on the water he
 wepte sore, and pyteously compleynyed in that he was
 so departyd out of his countre / than his men comfortyd
 24 hym, and shewed hym many fayre ensamples to comfort
 hym / 'syr,' quod Guychard, 'leue your sorow / for
 making of sorow⁴ can not auayle you / ye must put
 all to the mercy of our lorde god, who neuer forgettyh
 28 them that louyth hym / shew your selfe a man and no
 chylde / to the entent that we that be with you may be
 reioysyd / for the sorowe that we se you in dothe sore
 trouble vs' / 'syr,' quod Huon / 'syn it is so I shall
 32 folowe your wyll' / thus they aryuyd at the porte of
 Brandys. Than they issuyd out of ther shyppe /
 and toke out ther horses, & theyre thy sawe Garyn

and gives him
 letters of
 introduction to
 his brother
 Garyn of Saint
 Omer.

Huon passes
 down the Tiber.

His knights
 comfort him in
 his dejection.

They arrive at
 the port of
 Brandys.

¹ Fol. xiiii, back, col. 1.

² Most.

³ Huon *in orig.*

⁴ greefe and sadness.

They meet
Garyn.

Huon's face
recalls to Garyn
memories of
Duke Sevin his
father.

Garyn is greatly
pleased at Huon's
arrival,

and asks the
reason of his
journey,

which Huon tells
him.

syttynge before the porte in a loge, well and rychely
hangyd in a ryche¹ chayre / whan Huon sawe hym
syttynge he salutyd hym / thynkyng that he was
lorde of that countre / than Garyn behelde Huon and 4
began to wepe, and sayd / 'syr, it *pertye*²nyth not to
me *that* ye sholde do me so greate honour as ye do /
for by that I se in you I am *constreynyd* to wepe /
bycause ye resemble so myche to a prynce of the realme 8
of Fraunce called duke Seyn, who was lord of the
cyte of Burdeux / the grete loue that ³I haue hade to³
hym causyd me to wepe / I requyre you tell me where
ye were borne, and who be your parentes and frendes / 12
for duke Senyn hade⁴ weddyd my syster, y^e duches
Aclis.' 'Syr,' quod Huon / 'sen ye wyll knowe what
I am, I may well sheu it to you, for the duke was my
father / and y^e duches Aclis was⁵ my mother / we be⁶ 16
two bretherne. I am the eldest, and the younger ys
styll at Burdeux to kepe the⁷ londe' / whan Guaryn
vnderstode that Huon was sone to duke Senyn of
Burdeux / the ioy that he had ⁸can not be estemyd⁸ / 20
than he embrassyd Huon all wepyng, & sayde, 'ryght
dere neuwe, your *commyge* is to me the greatest ioy
in thys worlde.' he knelyd downe and wolde haue
kyssyd Huons fete, But Huon releuyd hym incon- 24
tynent. The ioy *that* was betwene them two was so
greate that all that sawe it hade meruayll therof.
Than Guaryn demaundyd of Huon and sayde, 'fayre
neuwe, what aduenture hath brought you in to these 28
partes?' Than Huon / shewyd hym fro poynt to poynt
all his besynes / & the cause why he was enteryd in
to that enterpryse. whan Guaryn had harde all he
begane to wepe / and yet, to *comfort* hys neuwe, he 32
sayd / 'fayre neuwe, where as lyeth grete parelles /

¹ goodly. ² Fol. xiiii. back. col. 2. ³⁻³ euer I bare vnto.

⁴ hade *omitted*. ⁵ is. ⁶ are. ⁷ our.

⁸⁻⁸ could not be expressed.

there lieth grete honour. god ayde you to eschew & to
 fornyshe thys greate besynes / all is possyble to god
 and to man by meanes of hys grace. A man ought
 4 neuer to be abasshyd / for worldely maters.' Than
 Huon delyueryd his letters to hys vncle Guaryn / who
 gladelly reseuyd them / and red the contynew therof
 at length. Than he sayde, 'fayre newew / there ¹nede
 8 none other *recommendasion* but y^e syght of your
 presence / for it aperyth wel by your chere² that ye be
 the same person that oure holy father maketh *mensyon*
 of / suerly your *commynge* semyth to me fayre and
 12 good / & ye be aryuyd at a good port / for I promyse
 you faythfully I loue well my wyfe and my chylrene.
 But the grete loue that I haue to you for the loue of
 your father duke Seuyne and the duches your mother,
 16 who was myne owne dere syster / I abandon all that I
 haue to serue you and kepe you company, both with
 my body and all that I haue. know for trouht I
 haue thre good galees & thre grete shyppes well
 20 furnyshyd of euey thyng for the warre, y^e whiche I
 shall lede with you / for as longe as lyfe abydeth in my
 body I shall not abandon you, But I shall ayde you
 in all your enterpryses.' 'Fayre vncle,' quod Huon,
 24 'of the grete courtesye that ye offer me I ³ thanke
 you' / than Guaryn toke Huon by the hand and lede
 hym in to his castell / where as he was ryche
 reseuyd / Gauryns wyfe and .iiii. of hyr sonnes /
 28 came to Huon, and he full courteously kyssyd the lady
 and hyr .iiii. chylrene, hys cosyns. greate ioy was
 made there in the hall, and the tabyles sette to suppar.
 than Gauryn called the lady his wyfe and sayde /
 32 'dame,⁴ thys yonge man⁵ *that* ye se here is my newew,
 and cosyn to your chylren, who is come hether for
 refuge to haue counsell and ayde of me in a vyage &

Huon presents the
 Pope's letters.

Garyn promises
 he will give all
 aid to Huon.

He leads Huon
 home to his
 castle,

and introduces
 him to his wile.

¹ Fol. xv. col. 1. ² countenance. ³ can but.

⁴ Madame. ⁵ knight.

Garyn resolves
to accompany
Huon,

enterpryse that he hathe to do / and by the grace
of god I shall go with hym to ayde and to condute
hym, wherfore I pray and commaund that ye take in
rule all my affayres and kepe your chyldren.' 'Syr,' 4
quod she, 'sen it is your pleasure thus to do, & *that*
ye wyll go with hym / your ¹pleasure shalbe now,¹
howbeit I had rather ye abode then went.' this she
spake sore wepyng / the next day in the mornynge 8
Guaryn, who hade grete wyll to serue and to please hys
nunenew / he ordened a grete shyppe to be made redy,
wel furnyshyd with bysket / wynes and flesshe, and all
other maner of vytaylles / and *with* monsyons of 12
warre as it apertaynyd, and put therin theyr horses
and armure / golde and syluer / and other ryches
necessary for them / then they toke leue of the lady,
and so left hyr sore wepyng / thus Garyn & Huon 16
enteryd in to theyr shype, and all theyr company /
they were .xiii. knyghtes and .ii. varlettes / to serue
them / they wolde haue no greter nombre.

and has a ship
made ready.

They embark,

² ¶ How Huon of Burdeux departyd fro 20
Brandys, and garyn hys vncler with hym,
and how he cam to Jerusalem, and fro
thase in to the desertes, where as he found
Gerames, and of theyr deuyses.³ 24

Capitulo .xxi.

and set sail.



They land at
Jaffa.

Han Huon & Garyn were enteryd in
to theyr shyppe, they lyft vp theyr
sailes & sayled nyght and day, so that 28
they aryuyd sauely at the port of
Jaffa: *than* they tooke lond⁴ and drew
out theyr horses, and rode forth; so the same day
they came to Rames / & the nexte day to y^e Cyte

¹⁻⁴ will let be fulfilled. ² Fol. xv. col. 2.
³ conference. ⁴ landing.

of Ierusalem / that nyght they restyd / and the
 nexte day they dyd theyr pylgrymage to the holy
 sepuleure / and there deuotly hard masse¹ and offeryd
 4 accordynge to theyr deuosyon / whan Huon came
 before the holy sepuleure he knelyde downe on hys
 bare knees, & all wepyng made hys prayers to our
 lorde god, requyryng hym to ayde and comfort hym in
 8 hys vyage / so that he might retourne agayne in to
 fraunce, and to haue peace with kynge Charlemayne.
 And when they al had made there prayers and offeryd /
 Huon and Garyn went into a lytyll chapell vpon the
 12 mount of Caluery, where as now lyeth Godfrey of
 Boillon / and Baudwyn hys brother. Than Huon
 called to hym al those that came with hym out of
 Fraunce, and sayd, 'syr, ye that for the loue of me
 16 haue left fathers & mothers, wyues / and chyl dren /
 and londes / & synnoryes, of² thys courtosy that ye
 haue shewyd me I thanke you. Now ye may retourne
 in to Fraunce,³ and⁴ recommaunde me to y^e kynges
 20 good grace, and to all the other barons / and when
 ye come to Burdeux, recommaunde me to the duches
 my mother, & to Gerarde my brother, and to the
 lordes of my countre.' Than Guicharde and all the
 24 other knyghtes answeyrd Huon & sayde, 'Sir, as yet
 we wyll nor leue you, nother for deth nor lyfe, tyll we
 haue brought you to the red see.' 'Syr,⁵ quod
 Huon, 'of⁶ the greate seruys & courtosy that ye offer
 28 me I thanke you' / than Garyn called two of his
 seruantes, and commaundyd them to retourne to⁷ his
 wyfe, and to desyre her to be of good chere, and that
 shortely he wolde retourne / the whiche thyng they
 32 dyd, and retournyd and dyd there message / whan
 Huon vnderstode that his vncle garyn was dyssposyd
 to abyde with him, he sayd / 'fayre vncle, ye shal not

They travel to
Jerusalem,

and worship at
the Holy
Sepulchre.

Huon thanks his
companions for
their devotion to
him,

and bids them
return.

They protest they
will not leave him
till they reach the
Red Sea.

¹ seruice. ² for. ³ againe. ⁴ humbly.

⁵ why then. ⁶ for. ⁷ Fol. xv. back, col. 1.

Nor will Garyn
depart from him.

They pass
through deserts,
and suffer much.

Huon weeps and
complains of the
Emperor's
injustice.

His companions
bid him have
faith in God's
power.

They ride on to a
small cottage,
where an old man
is found to dwell.

The old man
weeps on seeing
Huon.

nede to trauayll so myche / I wo'd counsell you to
retourne to your wyfe and chylderne.' 'Syr,' quod
garyn, 'and god wyll, I shall not leue you no day
tyll ye retourne your selfe' / 'uncle,' quod Huon, 4
'I thanke you of your courtesy.' Thus they went to
theyr lodgyng and dyned / & after dyner tooke there
horses / and so rode by hylles and dales / so that yf I
sholde recounte all the aduentures that they founde in 8
theyr way, it sholde be to longe a processe to show it./
but as the trew story¹ wytnessyth / they sufferyd
myche payne and trauayl / for they passyd suche
desertes / where as they founde but small sustenaunce / 12
whereof Huon was ryght sorowfull for the loue of them
that were with hym / and began to wepe & to
remembre his owne countre, sayynge, 'Alas, noble
kyng of Fraunce, grete wronge and grete syne ye haue 16
done, thus to dryue me out of my countre & to sende
me in to² strange countres,³ to thientent to short my
dayes. I pray to god pardon you therof'⁴ / *than* garyn
and the other knyghtes comfortyd hym & sayd, 'A, 20
syr, dysmay you not for vs / god is puyssant ynough
to ayde vs / he neuer fayllyth them *that* lounth hym' /
thus they rode forth in the deserte so longe tyll at last
they sawe a lytyll cotage, before the whiche sat an olde 24
aunsyent man with a longe whyte berde, and hys heyre
hangynge ouer hys shulders / whan Huon parseyuyd
hym he drew thedyr & salutyd y^e olde man in y^e
name of god & of y^e blyssyd wyrgyn saynt⁵ mary / 28
than the aunsyent man lyft vp his eyes & behelde
Huon, & had grete meruayll, for of a greate⁶ season
before he had sene no man / *that* spake⁷ of god / *than*
he behelde Huon in the vysage / & began sore to wepe ; 32
⁸*than* he stept⁸ to Huon & tooke hym by the legge &

¹ history. ² a. ³ Land. ⁴ therefore.
⁵ saynt *omitted*. ⁶ long. ⁷ Fol. xv. back, col. 2.
⁸⁻⁸ and stepping vnto Huon.

kyssyd it mo then .xx. tymys / 'frend,' quod Huon,
 'I requyre you shew me why ye make this sorow.'
 'Syr,' quod he, 'a¹ .xxx. yere passyd I cam hether / &
 4 sen *that* tyme I neuer saw man beleuyng on the
 crysten fayth / & by² the regardyng of your vysage
 causyth me to remembre a noble prynee *that* I haue
 sene in Fraunce, who was called duke Seuyne of
 8 Burdeux / therefore I requyre you shew me yf euer ye
 saw hym, I pray you hyde it not fro me' / 'frende,'
 quod Huon / 'I pray you shew me where ye were
 borne, & of what lynage & countre ye be of.' 'Nay,
 12 *sir*,' quod he, '*that* wyll I not do fyrst; ye shall shew
 me what ye be, and where ye were borne, & why
 ye come heder' / 'frende,' quod Huon / 'sene it please
 you to knowe, I shall shewe you' / then Huon & all
 16 his company alyghtyde & tyed theyr horses to trees.

WHan Huon was alyghtyde, he sat downe by the
 olde man & sayd, 'frend, sen ye wyll know
 my bysenes, I shall shew you. know for trouthe'
 20 I was borne in the cyte of Burdeux, and am *some*
 to duke Seuyne' / then Huon shewyd hym all his hole
 case & enterpryse, & of y^e deth of Charlot, & how he
 dysecomfytyd erle Amaury, & how *that* Charlemayn
 24 had chasyd hym out of Fraunce / & of the message
that he was chargyd to say to the admyrall Gaudyse /
 3 'this *that* I haue shewyd you is of trouthe.'³ whan y^e
 old man had well harde Huon, he began sore to wepe.
 28 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'sen it please you to know of
 my sorow / duke Seuyne my father is deed .vii. yere
 past / my mother I trust be a lyue, & a brother of
 myn whom I haue left *with* her. And now, *sir*, sen⁴
 32 ye haue harde of myn affayres, I requyre you gyue
 me your counsell & aduyse / & also, yf it please you, to
 shew me what ye be, & of what countre / & how ye⁵ came

He tells Huon he
 has seen no
 Christian man for
 thirty years,
 and his face
 reminds him of
 Duke Sevin.

At the old man's
 request Huon
 tells his history.

¹ about. ² now. ³⁻³ affirming all to be for certainty.

⁴ seeing. ⁵ Fol. xvi. col. 1.

The old man tells
in return how he
was born at
Geronville,
and was brother
to the provost
Guyer;

and how he was
sent for slaying a
noble knight
on a pilgrimage
to the Holy
Sepulchre;

and how when
setting out again
for France

he was seized by
the Saracens,
who imprisoned
him at Babylon;

and how he
escaped thence to
this forest,
where he has
since lived for
thirty years.

in to these partyes.' 'Syr,' quod the old man / 'know
for trouthe I was borne in Geronnill / & brother to y^e
good prouost Guyer / whan I departyd thense I was a
yonge knyght / & haundyd the iustes & tornoyes; so that 4
on a day it fortunyd at a tornay that was made at
Poieters, I slew a knyght of a noble blode, wherfore I
was banyshyd out of the realme of Fraunce. But my
brother y^e prouost made suche a request to duke Seun 8
your father / that by his meanes my peace was made
with the kyng / & my londe sauyd / on the¹
condycyon that I shulde goo ²a pylgrymage² to the
holy sepulchre to ³pray for y^e soull³ of y^e knyght that 12
I slew, & to forgyue my synnes⁴ / thus I departyd out
of my countre / and when I had done my vyage I
thought to haue retournyd / but as I departyd out of
y^e eyte of Jerusalem / to take the way to Acre / 16
passynge by a wood betwene Jerusalem and Naplese /
ther cam upon me a .x. sarasyns, who tooke me and
brought me to the eyte of Babylon, where as I was in
pryson .ii. yere complete, where as I sufferyd myche 20
pouerte & mysere / but our lorde god, who neuer
faylyth them that seruyth hym & haue in hym
full affyaunce, he sende me the grace that by the
meanes of a ryght noble ladi I was brought out of 24
pryson in an nyghte, and so I flede in to this forest,
where as I haue bene this .xxx. yere, and in all this
space I neuer saw nor harde man beleuyng on Jhesu
Cryst / thus I haue shewyd you all myn affayre' / 28
when Huon had harde the knyghtys tale he had grete
ioy / and embrassyd hym & sayde how often tymys
he had sene Guyer, his brother the prouost, wepe for
you⁵ / 'and whan I departyd fro Burdeux ⁶I delyueryd 32
to⁷ hym all my londes to gouerne / wherfore I requyre

¹ upon. ²⁻² omitted.

³⁻³ to punish my body. ⁴ faults. ⁵ him.

⁶ quoth he added. ⁷ vnto.

you shew me your name.' 'Syr,' quod he, 'I am called Gerames / and now I pray you shew me your name.' His name is Gerames,

'Syr,' quod he, 'I am namyd Huon, & my yonger
4 brother is called Gerarde. But, syr, I pray you shew me how ye haue so longe lyuyed here, and what sustenaunce ye haue.'² 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'I haue eten none other thyng but rootes & frutes that I haue
8 founde in the wood' / then Huon demaundyd of hym yf he coude speke the langage sarasyn. 'Ye, syr,' quod and he can speak the language of the country.

he, 'as well or better then any sarasyn in the countrie, nor there is no way but that I know it.'

12 **W**Han Huon had harde Gerames / than he demaundyd forther of hym yf he coude go to Babylon / 'ye, syr,' quod Gerames, 'I can go There are, he says, two roads to Babylon.

16 a .xl. iurneys,³ & the other is but .xv. iurneys.³ But I counsell you to take the long way / for yf ye take the shorter way ye most passe throwout a wood a .xvi. leges of lenth; but the way is so full of y^e fayrey & But the shorter is beset by Oberon and his fairies.

20 straunge thynges, that suche as passe that way are lost, for in that wood abydyth a kynge of y^e fayrey namyd Oberon / he is of heyght but of .iii. fote, and crokyd Oberon is a dwarf,

shulderyd, but yet he hathe an aungelyke vysage, so
24 that there is no mortall man that seethe hym but that taketh grete pleasure to beholde his fase / and ye shall no soner be enteryd in to that wood, yf ye go that way / ⁴he wyll fynde the maner⁵ to speke with you /

28 and yf ye speke to⁶ hym ye are lost for euer / and ye shall euer fynde hym before you / so that it shalbe in and any one who speaks with him is lost for ever.

maner impossyble that ye can skape fro hym without spekyng to hym / for his wordes be so pleasant to
32 here that there is no mortall man that can well skape without spekyng to⁶ hym / and yf he se that ye wyll not speke a worde to⁶ hym, Than he wyll be sore dys-

¹ Fol. xvi. col. 2. ² had. ³ dayes iourney.⁴ but. ⁵ meanes. ⁶ vnto.

Yet if a man
is silent when
addressed by him
he will cause
storms to arise,
and mock him
with magic,

but he can work
him no serious
evil.

Gerames begs
Huon to avoid
Oberon,

but Huon longs to
see him,

and determines to
take the shorter
path.

Gerames reluc-
tantly assents to
Huon's plan, and
offers his
guidance.

He has often seen
Gaudyse and his
fair daughter.

pleasyd with you, and or¹ ye can gete out of the wood
he wyll cause / reyne and wynde / hayle / and snowe /
and wyll make ²meruelous tempestes / with thonder and
lyghtenynges / so that it shall seme to you that all the 4
worlde sholde pereshe, & he shall³ make to seme before
you a grete rynnynge riuer, blacke and depe. But ye
may passe it at your ease, and it shall not wete the fete
of your horse / for all is but fantesey and enchaunt- 8
mentes / that the dwarfe shall make / to thentent to
haue you with hym / and yf ye can kepe your selfe
without spekyng to hym / ye maye than well skape.
But, syr, to eschew all perelles, I counsell you take the 12
lenger way, for I thynke ye can not skape fro hym /
and than be ye lost for euer.⁷ Whan Huon had well
harde Gerames he had grete mernayll, and he had grete
desyre in hym selfe to se that dwarfe kyng of the 16
fayrey, and the straunge aduentures *that* were in that
wood. than he sayde to Gerames, that for fere of any
deth he wolde not leue to passe that way, sen⁴ he
myght come to Babylon in .xv. dayes / for in takynge 20
the lenger way he myght paradventure⁵ fynde mo ad-
uentures / and sens he was adertesyd / that with keypyng
his tonge fro spekyng he myght abrege hys iorney,
and⁶ he sayde that surely he wolde that way what so 24
euer chaunce fell.⁷ 'Syr,' quod Gerames / 'ye shall do
your⁸ pleasure / for whiche so euer way⁹ ye take, it shall
not be without me / I shall bryng you to Babylone to
the admirall Gaudyse ; I knowe hym ryght well / and 28
when ye be come thether ye shall se there a damesell,
as I haue harde say, the most fayrest creature in all
Inde, and the grete¹⁰ and most swetest and most courte-
sest that euer was borne / & it is she that ye seke, 32
for she is doughter to the admirall Gaudyse.'

¹ before. ² Fol. xvi. back, col. 1. ³ will. ⁴ seeing.
⁵ perchance. ⁶ and *omitted*. ⁷ befell. ⁸ own.
⁹ way soeuer. ¹⁰ onely.

¶ Howe Gerames went with Huon and his company, and so came in to the wood, wher as they found ¹kyng Oberon, who couniuryde them to speke to ²hym.

Capitulo .xxii.



8 Han Huon had well hard Gerames howe he was myndyd to go³ with hym, he was ther of ryght ioyfull, and thankyd hym of hys courtesy and seruys / and gaue hym a goodely horse whereon he mountyd / and so rode forth to gether / so longe that they
12 came in to the wood where as kyng Oberon hauntyd most. Than Huon⁴ was wery of trauyll, and what for famyn and for hete, the whiche he and his company had enduryd two dayes without biele or mete, so that he
16 was so febyll that he coude ryde no farther / & then he began petuosly to wepe, and complaynyd of the grete wronge that kyng Charlemayn hade done to² hym / and than Guaryn and Gerames comfortyd hym and had
20 greate pety of hym, and they knewe we'l by the reason of his yought hunger opressyd hym ⁵more then it dyde to them of gretter age / than they alyghtyd vnder a grete oke, to y^e entent to serche for sum frute to ete /
24 they⁶ lette theyr horses go to pasture. whan they were thus alyghtyd / the dwarfe of the fayre / kyng Oberon, came rydyng by, and had on a gowne so ryche that it were meruayll to recount the ryches and fayssyon ther-
28 of / and it was so garnyshyd with precyous stones that the elerenes of them shone lyke the sone. Also he had a goodly bow in hys hande so ryche that it coude not be estemyde, and hys arrons after the same sort / and
32 they⁷ had suche proparte⁷ / that any beest in the

Huon and Gerames set out together,

and reach the wood that Oberon haunts.

Huon is sore distressed by hunger and fatigue,

and while he and his company are alighting to seek for food

Oberon rides by.

His dress shines with precious stones,

and in his hand is a bow of great value.

1 Fol. xvi. back, col. 2. 2 vnto. 3 along.

4 who. 5 Fol. xvii. col. 1. 6 glad thereof.

7-7 were of such a nature or qualite.

A horn, the gift
of four fayries,
hangs about his
neck.

One fairy had
enlowed it with
the power of
curing by its
blast all manner
of sickness;

another with that
of satisfying
hunger and
thirst;

a third with that
of lightening
every heavy
heart;

and a fourth with
that of forcing
whosoever heard
it to come at the
pleasure of him
that blew it.

At the sound of
the horn Huon
and his com-
paignons are filled
with joy.

Huon is no
longer thirsty or
hungry.

worlde that he wolde wyshe for / the arow sholde¹
 areste hym / Also he hade about hys necke a ryche
 horne hangyng by two lases of golde / the horne was
 so ryche and fayre / that there was neuer sene none² 4
 suche; it was made by .iiii. ladyes of the fayre in the
 yle of Chafalone / on of them gaue to the horne suche
 a proparte / that who so euer hard the sownde therof,
 yf he were in the gretest syknes in the worlde / he 8
 sholde incontynent be hole and sownde; the lady that
 gaue thys gyft to this horne was namyd G'oriande / the
 secounde lady was namyd Translyne; he³ gaue to this
 horne a nother properte, and that was, who so euer 12
 harde this horne, yf he were in the gretest famyn of
 the worlde, he sholde be satysfied as well as though he
 had eten al that he wolde wysshe for, and in lyk wyse
 for drynk as well as though he had dronken his fylle 16
 of the best wyne in all the worlde. the thyrd lady,
 namyd Margade, gaue to this horne yet a greter gyft /
 and that was, who so euer harde this horne / though he
 were neuer so poore or febyll by syknes, he sholde haue 20
 suche ioy in his herte that he sholde synge and dance /
 the forth lady, namyd Lempatrix, gaue to this horne
 suche a gyft, that who so euer harde it, yf he were a⁴.C.
 iorney⁵ of, he sholde come at the pleasure of hym that 24
 blew it, furre or nere. Than kynge Oberon, who knew
 well and hale sen the .xiiii. compaynyons, he set hys
 horne to hys mouth and blewe so melodyous a blast /
 that the .xiiii. compaynyons, beyng vnder the tre, had 28
 so parfayte a ioy at there hertes that they al rose vp
 and begane to synge and danse. 'A, good lord,' quod
 Huon, 'what fortune is come to vs? / me thynke we be
 in paradyse / ryght now I coude not susteyn my selfe 32
 for lake of mete & drynke, and now I fele my selfe
 nother hungry nor thrusty. fro whense may this come?'

¹ would. ² any. ³ she. ⁴ Fol. xvii. col. 2.

⁵ dayes iorneyes.


'Syr,' quod Gerames / 'know for trougth thys is done
 by the dwarfe of the fayry / whom ye shall sone se
 passe by you. But, syr, I require you in¹ iupardy in²
 4 lesynge of your lyfe that ye speke to hym no worde,
 without ye purpose to byde euer with hym.' 'Syr,'
 quod Huon, 'haue no dought of me, sen I knowe the
 iupardy.' Therwith y^e dwarfe begun to crye alowde,
 8 and sayde, 'Ye .xiiii. men *that* passyth by my wood,
 god kepe you all / and I desyre you speke with me,
 and I coniure you ther to by god almyghty, and by
 y^e crystendome that ye haue receyuyd, and by all that
 12 god hath made, answer me.'

Gerames warns
Huon to speak no
word to Oberon.

Oberon calls to
the knights to
speak to him.

¶ Howe kynge Oberon was ryght sorowfull
 and sore dyspleasyd in that Huon wold
 not speke / and of the grete fere that
 16 he put Huon and hys company in.

Capitulo .xxiii.

20 
 Han that Huon and hys company harde
 the dwarfe speke, they montyd on
 there horses & rode away as faste as
 they mygh *without* spekyng of any
 worde / and the dwarfe, seynge howe
 that ³they rode away & wolde not speke, he was
 24 sorowfull and angry / than he sette one of his fyngers
 on his horn / out of y^e whiche issuyd out⁴ suche
 wynde a⁵ and tempest so horryble to here that it bare
 downe trees, and therwith came suche a rayne & hayle
 28 that⁶ semyd that heuen and the erthe hade fought
 together, and that y^e worlde shulde haue ended / the
 beestys in the wodes brayed and cryed / and *thou*
 foules of the eyre fell doune deed for⁷ feer that they
 32 were in / ther was no creature but he wolde haue bene

Huon and his
company ride
away.

Oberon in anger
raises a tempest
about them,

¹ on. ² of. ³ Fol. xvii. back, col. 1.
⁴ out *omitted*. ⁵ a winde. ⁶ it. ⁷ the.

and causes a
perilous river to
appear in the
path before them.

Huon is stricken
with fear.

A fair castle rises
upon the opposite
side of the river,

but soon vanishes.

Gerames shows
that all this is the
work of the
dwarf king of
I-cry-land, who is
wathful because
Huon has spoken
no word with
him.

afrayed of that tempeest / than sodenly aperyd before
them a grete ryuer / that ran swyfter than the byrdes
dyde flye / and the water was so blaekc and so perre-
lous, & made suche a noyse that it myght be herle .x. 4
leges of / 'Alas,' quod Huon, 'I se well now we all¹ be
all loste; we shall here be oppressyd without god haue
pyte of vs / I repent me that euer I enteryd in to
this wode; I had ben better a² traueyld a hole here³ 8
than to haue come hether' / 'Syr,' quod Gerames,
'dysmay you not / for all this is done by the dwerfe of
the Fayrey' / 'well,' quod Huon, 'I thynke it beste
to alyght fro our horse, for I thynke we shall neuer 12
skape fro hense, but that we shall be all oppressyd'
than Garyn and the other companyons had grete
meruayll, and wher in grete feer / 'a, Gerames,' quod
Huon, 'ye shewyd me well that it was grete perell 16
to passe this wode / I repent me⁴ that I hadde not
beleuyd you' / than they sawe on y^e other syde of the
ryuer a fayre castell enuyronyd with .xiiii. grete
toures, and on enery toure a clocher of fyne golde be 20
semynge / the whiche they long regardyd / & by *that*
tyme they had gone a lytyll by y^e ryuer syde they
loste y^e syght of y^e castell, it was elene vanysshyd
a way / wher of Huon & his company were sore 24
abasshyd / 'Huon,' quod Gerames, 'of all this *that*
ye se dysmay you not / for all this is done⁵ by the
crokyd dwafe of y^e Fayrey, & all too begyle you / but
he can not grene you so ye speke no worde / how be it, 28
or⁶ we departe fro hym he wyll make vs all abasshyd,
for anone he wyll come after vs lyke a madd man by
cause ye will not speke to⁷ hym; but, syr, I requyre
you as in goddys name / be nothyngc afreyde, but 32
ryde forth surely, & euer be ware *that* ye speke to⁷
hym no worde' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'haue no dought

¹ all omitted. ² to haue. ³ yeere. ⁴ now.


⁵ Fol. xvii. back, col. 2. ⁶ ere. ⁷ vnto.

therof / for I had rather he were bresten¹ than I
 shulde speke one worde to hym' / than they rode to
 pass y^e ryuer, and than they founde there no thyng to
 4 let them, & so rode a² .v. legges / 'syr,' quod Huon,
 'we may well thanke god *that* we be thus skapyd thes
 dwarfe, who thought to haue dysceynyd vs / I was
 neuer in such feer duryng my lyfe, god confounde
 8 hym' / thus they rode deuysyng of y^e lytyll dwarfe
 who had done them so myche trouble.

Huon vainly
 imagines he has
 now escaped
 Oberon's toils.

¶ How kynge Oberon, dwarfe of the Fayrey,
 pursuyd soo moche Huon that he con-
 12 straynyd hym to speke to hym at laste.

Capitulo .xxiiii.

16  Han Gerames vnderstode y^e companye
 how they thought they were³ skapyd
 fro the dwarfe, he began too smyle, &
 sayd / 'syrs, make none a vance⁴ that
 ye be out of his⁵ daunger / for I
 belyue ye shall soone se hym agayne' / & as soone
 20 as Gerame had spoke the same wordys / they sawe
 before them a bryge, y^e which they must passe, &
 they sawe y^e dwarfe on y^e other parte. Huon sawe
 him fyrst, & sayd, 'I se y^e deuyll who hath done vs
 24 so myche trouble' / Oberon herde hym, and sayde,
 'frende, thou doest me iniurey⁶ without cause, for I
 was neuer deuyll nor yll creature / I am ⁷a man⁷ as
 other be / but I coniuere the by the deuyne puisance to
 28 speke to⁸ me.' than Gerames sayd, 'syr, for goddes sake
 let hym alone / nor speke no word to hym / for by hys
 fayr langage he may dyssayue vs all / as he hath done
 many other; it is pyte that he hath leuyd so longe.'

Gerames warns
 him not to be too
 certain that his
 dangers are yet
 overcome,

and straightway
 Oberon is seen on
 a bridge betwene
 them,

conjuring Huon
 to speak with
 him.

Gerames
 dissuades him
 once more.

¹ destroyed. ² about. ³ whree in orig.

⁴ bragging. ⁵ this. ⁶ Fol. xviii. col. 1.

⁷⁻⁷ omitted. ⁸ vnto.

Oberon blows his horn, and Huon and his company can ride no further, but stop and sing.

Another blast of the fairy's horn summons four hundred armed men.

Oberon bids the warriors slay the knights.

Gloriande begs the dwarf to give them some respite.

Huon and his company ride on apace.

than they rode forth a good pase, and left the dwerfe
 alone sore dyspleysyd / in that they wolde not speke to
 hym / than he toke his horne, and sette it to his
 mouthe and blewe it / whan Huon and his companye 4
 herde it they hadde no power to ryde any ferther / but
 they began all to synge / than Oberon the dwarfe
 sayde, 'yonder company are fooles, and proude / that
 for any salutyeon that I can gyue them they dysdayne 8
 to answeere me / but by the god that made me, or¹
 they escape me the refuse² of my wordes shall be dere
 bought.' than he tooke agayne his horne, and strake it
 .iii. tymes on his bowe / and cryed out aloude and 12
 sayde, 'ye my men, come and apere before me' / than
 there came to hym a³ foure hondred men of armes,
 and demaundyd of Oberon what was his pleasure, and
 who had dyspleasyd hym / 'Syr,' quod Oberon, 16
 'I shall shewe you / how be it I am greuyd to shewe
 it / here in this wode there passyd .xiiii. knyghtes /
 who dyslaynyth to speke to⁴ me / but to the entent
 that they shall not moeke me / they shal derely by the 20
 refusynge of theyr answeere / wherefore I wyll ye
 go after them and slee them all, let none escape' /
 than one of his knyghtes sayd, 'syr, for goddes sake
 haue pyte of them' / 'sertenly,' quod Oberon, myne 24
 honour suyd, I can not spare them syn they dysdayne
 to speke to⁴ me' / 'syr,' quod Gloriand, 'for goddes
 sake do not as ye say / but, syr, worke by my counsell,
 and after do as it please you / syr, I counsell you yet 28
 ones agayne goo after them / for⁵ yf they do not⁶ speke
 we shall slee them all; for surely, syr, yf they see you
 retourne agayne to them, so shortly they shall⁷ be in
 grete feer' / 'frend,' quod Oberon, 'I shall do as ye 32
 haue counsellid me' / thus Huon & his companye rode
 forth a grete pace / and Huon sayd, 'syr, we are now

¹ before. ² refusal. ³ about. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ Fol. xviii. col. 2. ⁶ then. ⁷ will.

fro the dwerfe a¹.v. leges; I neuer sawe in my lyfe
 soo fayre a creature in y^e visage / I haue grete meruayle
 how he can speke of god almyghty² / for I thinke he
 4 be a deuyll of hell / & sennys he spekyth of god, me
 thynke we ought to speke to hym / for I thynke suche
 a creature can haue no power to do vs any yll³ / I
 thinke he be not past of y^e age of .v. yeres / 'syr,' quod
 8 Gerames, 'as lytel as he semyth, & that ye take him
 for a chylde / he was borne .xl. yere afore y^e Natyuyte
 of our lord Jhesu Cryst' / 'surely,' quod Huon, 'I care
 not what age he be of / but yf he com agayne, yll hape
 12 come to me yf I kepe my wordes & spech fro him / I
 pray you be not dyspleasid.' & thus as they rode
 dyuysynge .xv. dayes / sodenly Oberon aperyd to⁴ them
 & sayd, 'syr, are ye not yet aduysyd to speke to⁴ me? /
 16 yet agayne I am com to salute you in y^e name of y^e
 god that made & formyd vs, & I couiure you by
 y^e puyssaunce that he hath genin me / that ye speke to
 me, for I repute you for fooles to thinke thus to passe
 20 thorow my wod & dysdayne to speke to me / a, Huon,
 I knowe thee well ynough, & wether thou woldest go /
 I know all thy dedes, &⁵ thou slewest Charlot, and
 after dyscomfyted Amaury / and I knowe y^e message
 24 that Charlemayn hath chargyd the to say to the
 admyrall Gaudys, y^e which thyng is impossyble to be
 done without myne ayed / for without me thou shalt
 neuer acomplyshe this entrepryce / speke to me / & I
 28 shall do the that courtesy that I shall cause y^e to
 achene thyne entrepryce, y^e which is⁶ impossyble
 without me / & whan thou hast acheyd thy message I
 shal bringe thee agayne in to france in sauegard / &⁷
 32 I know y^e cause that thou⁸ wylt not speke to me /
 hath ben⁹ by reason of olde Gerames who is there with
 the. Therefore, Huon, beware of thy selfe; go no

He marvels at
 Oberon's beauty,
 and desires to
 speak with him.

After fifteen days
 Oberon re-
 appears to them,

and salutes Huon
 in the name of
 God.

He recites Huon's
 history,

and shows him
 that without
 fairy aid he will
 never fulfil his
 mission.

¹ about. ² almighty God. ³ euill. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ how.
⁶ else. ⁷ and omitted. ⁸ Fol. xviii. back, col. 1. ⁹ it is.

Oberon once more
begs Huon to
speak with him,

forther / for I knowe well it is thre dayes passyd sene
thou dydyst ete any mete to profyt the / yf thou wylt
beleue me / thou shalt haue ynough / of suche
sustenance as thou wylt wysse fore. And as soone as 4
thou hast dynyd I wylly gine the leue to departe / yf it
be thy pleasure / of this haue no dought.' 'Syr,' quod
Huon, 'ye be welcom.' 'A,' quod Oberon, 'thy
salutasyon shalbe well rewardyd. know for trouthe 8
thou neuer dyddest salutasyon so profytable for thy
selfe / thou mayst thanke god / that he hathe sent the
that grace.'

and Huon bids
him welcome.
The dwarf
promises him rich
rewel for this
salutation.

¶ Of the grete meruaylles that Oberon 12
shewyd to¹ Huon / & of the aduentures
that fell. Capitulo .xxv.



Han Huon had well herd Oberon he
had grete merueyll, and demaundyd yf 16
it were trew that he hade sayd. 'ye
trewly,' quod Oberon, 'of *that* make
no dought.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I
haue greate merueyll for what cause ye haue alwayes 20
pursuyd vs' / 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'know well / I
loue *thee* well by cause of the trouthe that is in the /
and therefore naturally I loue the / and yf thou wylt
knowe who I am, I shall shew the / trew it is Julius 24
cesar engenderyd me on the lady of the pryuey² Isle /
who was sumtyme welbelouyde of the fayre Florimont
of albaney. But by cause that Florimont who as than
was yonge / & he had a mother who dyd so myche / 28
that she sawe my mother and Florimont to gether in
a soletary place on y^e see syde / whan my mo³ther
parseyud / that she was spyed by Florimontes mother /
she departyd and left Florimont hyr louer in grete 32

Huon asks
wherefore Oberon
has pursued him.

Oberon tells how
he loves Huon,

and who he is.

His father was
Julius Caesar, and
his mother the
lady of the Secret
Isle, once loved by
the fair
Florimont.

¹ vnto.

² secret.

³ Fol. xviii. back, col. 2.

- wepynges and lamentasyous / and neuer saw hym after /
 & than she retournyd in to hyr¹ countre of y^e princy²
 Isle / the which now is namyd Chyfalomye, wher as
 4 she maryed after, & hade a sonne who in his tyme after
 was kynge of Egypt / namyd Neptanabus / it was he
 as it is sayde *that* engenderyd Alexander y^e grete, who
 aft causyd hym to dye / than after a .xvii. yere Sezar
 8 passyd by the see as he went in³ to thesal^e⁴ wher as
 he fought *with* pompee / in his way he passyd by
 Chyfalomye / wher my mother fetchyd hym / and he
 fell in loue with her because she shewyd hym that he
 12 sholde dyscomfyt Pompee / as he dyde / thus I haue
 shewyd you who was my father / at my byrthe there
 was many a prynee⁵ and barons of the fayrre / and
 many a noble lady that came to se my mother whyles
 16 she traunayld of me. & among them theyr was one was
 not content / by cause she was not sent for as wel as
 y^e other, & whan I was borne / she gaue me a gyft, y^e
 whiche was, that whan I sholde passe .iii. yere of age I
 20 sholde growe no more / but thus as ye se my now /
 and whan she had thus done / and sawe that she had
 thus seruyd my by heyr wordis / she repentyd heyr
 selfe / and wolde recomp-n-e me a nother waye. Than
 24 she gaue my⁶ another gyfte / and that was, that I
 sholde be the fayreste creature that euer nature formyd /
 as thou mayst se my now / and another lady of the
 Fayrrey namyd Transline / gaue me a nother gyft, &
 28 that was, all that euer any man can knowe or thynke,
 good or yll, I do⁷ know it / the thyrd lady, to do
 more for me / and to please my mother y^e better / she
 gaue my / that there is not so fayre⁸ a contray / but
 32 that yf I wyll wysse me selfe theyr, I shall be there
 incontynent with⁹ what nombre of men as I lyste / and

His mother's
island is
now known as
Chyfalomye.
By one marriage
she was mother of
Neptanabus, the
father of
Alexander the
Great.

Cæsar fell in love
with her on his
way to Thessaly
to fight with
Pompey.

At Oberon's birth
all the fairies
were invited to be
pre-ent except
one,

who in anger
caused him to
cease growing
when three years
old.

But she later
repented of her
wrath, and made
him the fairest of
mortals.

A second fairy
gave him the
power of seeing
into all men's
minds;

a third that of
going whither he
would by merely
wishing.

¹ owne. ² secret. ³ vnto. ⁴ place. ⁵ many Princes.

⁶ me. ⁷ should. ⁸ farre.

⁹ Fol. xix. col. 1.

Everything indeed that he requires he can procure by merely wishing for it.

He is king of Momur.

Oberon offers Huon sustenance.

No bird nor beast is there that keeps its wildness in presence of Oberon.

He will never seem older, and when he leaves the world he will find a place ready for him in paradise.

Huon accepts the fairy's offer of food and drink.

He and his company sit down at Oberon's bidding.

more ouer, yf I wyll haue a castell or a palays at myne owne deuyse, incontenent it shall be made / and as sone gone agayne and¹ I lyste; and what mete or wyne that I wyll² wysshe for it,³ I shall⁴ haue it **4** incontenent; & also I am kynge of Momur, the whiche is a⁵ .iiii. C. leges fro hense / and yf I lyste incontenent I can be there / know for trouthe that thou art aryuyd at a good porte / I know well thou haste grete nede of **8** mete / for this .iiii. dayes thou hast had but small sustenaunce / but I shall cause the to haue ynough / I demaunde of the wether thou wylt haue mete and drynke here in this medow, or in a palayes, or in a **12** hall; *command* where as thou wylt, & *thou* shalt haue it for the and thy company' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I wyll folowe your pleasour, and neuer do nor thynke the contrary' / 'Huon,' quod he, 'as yet I haue not **16** shewyd all the gyftes that were gyuen me at my byrthe / the .iiii. lady gaue me / that there is no byrde nor beest, be they neuer so cruell / but yf I wyll haue them I may take them with my hand, and also I shall **20** neuer seme⁶ elder than thou seest me now / and whan I shall departe out of this worlde, my place is aperrelyd⁷ in paradyce / for I knowe that all thynges creatyd in this mortall world must nedys haue an ende' / 'syr,' **24** *quod* Huon, 'such a gyft ought to be well kept' / 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'well ye were counselyd when ye spake to me / ye had neuer before so fayre aduenture / shewe me by thy faythe / yf thou wylt **28** ete / & what mete thou wylt haue and what wyne thou wylt drynke' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'so that I had mete and drinke I care not what it were, so that I and my company were fyllyd and ryd fro our famyn' / **32** than Oberon laughyd at hym and sayde / 'syrs, all ye syte downe here in this medow / and haue no dought

¹ when. ² would. ³ it *omitted*. ⁴ should.

⁵ about. ⁶ besecme. ⁷ appointed.

but all that I wyll do is done by the phys¹sau^{nce} of our
 lorde god' / than Oberon began to wysshe / and sayd
 to² Huon and his company, and sayd, 'syr, aryse vp
 4 quykly,' the whiche they dyd / than they regardyd³ and when they
 before them and sawe a fayre and a ryche palayes rise up they see a
 garnysshyd with chambers and halles / hangyd and richly-buillt
 beddyd with ryche clothes of sylke beten with golde, palace before
 8 and tablys redy set full of mete / whan Huon and his them.
 company sawe the ryche palayes before them they had
 grete meruayll / than⁴ Oberon toke Huon by the hande / Oberon leads
 & with hym mountyd vp in to the palayes / whan where servants
 12 they came there they founde seruauntes there redy / bring them
 bryngynge to² them basyns of golde garnysshyd *with* golden basins.
 precyous stones / they gaue water to Huon. than⁵
 he sat downe at the tabull, the whiche was furnysshyd A table is set
 16 with all maner of mete and drynke that man conde with all maner of
 wysse / Oberon satte at the tables ende on a banke⁶ food and drink.
 of luorey rychely garnysshyd with golde and precyous At one end, on an
 stones, the which sete had suche vertu geuyⁿ to it by iveroy throne,
 20 the fayrey / that who so euer by any suttyll meanes Oberon takes his
 wolde poyson hym that shulde syte there on, as soone seat.
 as he shulde aproche nere to y^e sete he shuld fal down
 starke deed / king Oberon sat theron rychely appareyd /
 24 and Huon, who sat nere to² hym, began to ete a grete Near him is Huon
 pace / but Gerames had small apetyte to ete / for he [with his
 belcuyd that they shulde neuer departe thense / whan company].
 Oberon sawe hym he sayd / 'Gerames, ete thy mete Gerames, in fear
 28 and drynke / for as soone as thou haste eeten thou that they shall
 shalt haue leue to go when thou lyste' / whan Gerames not depart again,
 herde that he was ioyfull / than he began to ete & leaves all
 drynke / for he knewe well that Oberon would not do untasted, till
 32 agaynst his assurance / all the company dyd well ete Oberon assures
 and drynke / they were seruyd with all thynges that him that they
 they coud wysh fore / whan Huon sawe how they were may go thence
 when the meal is
 over.

¹ Fol. xix. col. 2. ² vnto. ³ looked. ⁴ and.

⁵ and. ⁶ bench.

When all are satisfied, Huon asks Oberon's leave to depart.

Oberon sends for a cup, and shows it to Huon.

The dwarf makes the sign of the cross over it and it fills with wine.

All guiltless men, says Oberon, will find the cup full when raising it to their lips.

Oberon bids Huon drink of it, but he fears that he has sinned, and is unworthy of it.

all satysfied and replete, and had well dynyd,¹ he sayd to kynge Oberon / 'syr, whan it shall be your pleasour I wolde ye shulde gyue vs leue to departe' / 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'I am ryght well content so to do / but **4** fyrste I wyll shewe you my iuelles' / than he callyd Clariand, a knyght of the fayrey, and sayd, 'frende, go and fetchte to me my cuppe.' he dyd his *commaunde*-ment. and whan Oberon had the cuppe in his hande / **8** he sayd to² Huon / 'syr, behold wel ye se well³ this cuppe is⁴ voyde and empty' / 'that is trewe, syr,' quod Huon / than Oberon sete the cuppe on the table, and sayde to² Huon / 'syr, beholde the grete **12** power that god hath gyuen me, and how that in the fayrey I may do my pleasour.' than he made ouer the cuppe the signe of a crosse .iiii. tymes / than⁵ incontenent the cuppe was full of wyne / and than he sayde, 'lo,⁶ **16** syrs, ye may well se that this is done by the grace of god / yet I shall shewe you the grete vertu that is in this cuppe, for yf all the men in the worlde were here assemblid to gether, and that the cuppe were in the **20** handes of any man beyng out of deedly synne, he myght drinke therof his fyll / but who so euer offer his hande to take it beyng in deedly synne, the cuppe shulde lese his vertu / and yf thou mayst drynke therof, I **24** offer to giue the the cuppe' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you, but I am in dought *that* I am not worthy nor of valoure to drynke ther of nor to touch the cuppe / I neuer herd of suche a dyngnyte as this **28** cuppe is of / but, syr, knowe for trouthe I haue ben confessyd of all my synnes, and I am repentant and sorowfull for *that* I haue done / and I do perdon and forgyue all the men in the worlde what so euer iniury **32** hath bene done to² me / and I knowe not that I haue done wronge to any creature, nor I hate no man.' and


¹ Fol. xix. back, col. 1. ² vnto. ³ that. ⁴ now.

⁵ and. ⁶ Behold.

so he toke the cuppe in bothe his handes and set it to his mouth, and dranke of the good wyne that was therein at his pleasour.

Huon however seizes the cup, and it fills in his hands.

4 ¶ Of the grete giftes that Oberon gaue to²
Huon, as his horne of Iuorey & his cuppe,
the whiche were of grete vertues / and
Huon after thought to proue the vertu of
8 them, whereby he was in grete perell of
dethe. Capitulo .xxvi.

12  Han Oberon sawe that, he was ryght
glad, and came and enbrasyd Huon,
seynge how³ he was a noble man /
4 'I gyue the⁵ this cuppe as it is in the
maner as I shall shewe thee in any
wyse for any thyng; for y^e dyngnyte of the cuppe be
16 thou euer trewe and faythfull / for yf thou wylt worke
by my counsell I shall ayed thee and gyue the socour
in all thyne affayres / but as soone as thou makyst any
lye the vertu of the cuppe wyl be lost and lese his
20 bounte, and besyde that thou shalt lese my loue and
ayed' / 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I shall ryght well be
ware ther of / and now, syr, I requyre you suffer vs to
departe.' 'abyde yet,' quod Oberon⁶; 'yet I haue
24 another inell the which I wyll gyue thee / by cause I
thynke there be trouthe and nobles in the. I wyll
gyue the a ryche horne of iuorey, the whiche is full of
grete vertu / the⁷ whiche thou shalt bere with the / it is
28 of so grete vertu / that yf thou be neuer so farre fro me,
as soone as thou blowest the horne / I shal here the /
& shall be incontenent with the with a .C. thousaunde
men of⁸ armes for to socoure and ayed the / but one
32 thyng I commaunde thee, on the payne of lesinge of

Oberon is gladdened by this proof of Huon's innocence, and entrusts the cup to his keeping.

Huon desires to set forth,

but Oberon delays him to give him his ivory horn,

one blast of which will bring the dwarf to his side with a hundred thousand men.

¹ Fol. xix. back. col. 2.

² vnto.

³ saying that.

⁴ and. ⁵ (quoth he).

⁶ Huon *misread in orig.*

⁷ and.

⁸ at.

But it is only to
be blown when
Huon is in great
peril.

Huon takes leave
of King Oberon.

Oberon weeps on
parting with his
cup and horn.

The knights
reach a deep,
fordless river,

but a servant of
the fairy king
appears,

and by striking
the water makes
a path through it.

Huon and his
company pass
along it, and the
river closes in
behind them.

my loue and on iuberdy of thy lyfe / *that* thou be not
so hardy ¹to sowne thy² home / without thou haste
grete nede ther of ; for yf thou do other wyse I auow to
god *that* creatyd me, I shall leue *thee* in as grete ⁴
pouerte & mysere as euer man was / so that who so
euer shulde se the in that case shulde haue pyte of
the' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I shall ryght well be ware
therof / now I desyre you let me departe' / 'I am ⁸
content,' quod Oberon, 'and god be thy gyde.' Than
Huon toke leue of kynge Oberon / and trussyd vp all
his baggage / and dyde put his cuppe in³ his bosome /
& the horne about his necke / thus they all tooke there ¹²
leue of [the] kynge. Oberon⁴ all wepyng enbrasyd
Huon / who had merueyll why he wept, and sayd,
'syr, why do you wepe?' / 'frend,' quod Oberon, 'ye
may well knowe / ye haue with you .ii. thynges that I ¹⁶
loue derely. god ayde you ; more I can not speke
to you' / thus the .xiiii. knyghtes departyd, and so
they rode forthe a⁵ .xv. leges or more / *than* they sawe
before them a grete depe ryuer / and they coude fynde ²⁰
no gyde nor passage to pass ouer, and so they wyste
not what to do / *than* sodenly they sawe passe by
them a seruaunt of kynge Oberon beryng a rodde of
gold in his hande, and so without spekyng of any ²⁴
worde he enteryd in to y^e ryuer, and toke his rodde
and strake y^e water therwith .iii. tymes / *than* incon-
tynent the water withdrew a bothe sydes in suche wyse
that thir was a pathe that .iii. men myght ryde a ²⁸
frount / and that done he departyd agayne without
spekyng of any worde. *than* Huon and his company
entryd in to the water, and so passyd thorow without
any *danger* / ⁶whan they were past they behelde⁷ ³²
behude them, and sawe the ryuer close agayne and ran
after his olde course / 'by my faythe,' quod Huon /

¹ Fol. xx. col. 1. ² they *in orig.* ³ into.

⁴ and. ⁵ about. ⁶ and. ⁷ looked.

'I thynke we be inchantyd. I beleue surely kynge
 Oberon hath done this / but sene¹ we be thus skapyd
 out of perel, I truste fro² hense forth we shall haue no
 4 dought' / thus they rode forth to gether synggynge,
 and often tymes spake of the grete meruayles that they
 had sene kynge Oberon doone³ / and as they rode
 Huon beheld on his ryght hande & sawe a fayre
 8 medow well garnysshyd with herbes and floures, and
 in the myddes therof a fayre clere fountayne. than
 Huon rode thether / and alyghtyd and let there horses
 4 to pasture / than they sprede a clothe on the grene
 12 grase / and set there vp⁵ suche mete as kynge Oberon
 had gyuen them at there departynge / and there they
 dyde ete and drynke suche drynke as they founde in
 the cuppe / 'by my faythe,' quod Huon, 'it was a
 16 fayre aduventure for vs whan we met Oberon, and that
 I spake to hym / he hath shewyd me grete tokens of
 loue whan he gaue me suche a cuppe / yf I may
 retourne in to fraunce in saue garde, I shall gyue it to
 20 Charlemayne / who shall make grete feest⁶ therwith /
 & yf he can not drynke therof the barons of fraunce
 wyll haue grete ioy⁷ therof' / than agayne he re-
 pentyd hym of his owne wordes, and sayde, 'I am a
 24 fole to thynke or say thus / for as yet I can not
 tell what ende I shall come to / the cuppe that I haue
 is better worth than .ii. cytyes / but as yet I can not
 beleue the vertu to be in the horne as Oberon hath
 28 shewyd / nor that he may here it so farre of / but what
 so euer fortune fall, I wyll assay it yf it hath suche
 vertu or not' / 'A,⁸ syr,' quod Gerames, 'be ware
 what ye do / ye knowe well whan we departyd what
 32 charge he gaue you / sertenly you and we bothe are
 loste yf ye trespas his commaundement' / 'surely,'
 quod Huon, 'what so euer fortune fall, I shall⁹ assay it' /

They ride to a fair meadow, in the midst of which was a clear fountain.

There they alight,

and eat and drink of the store Oberon had given them.

Huon declares that if ever he return to France he will give the cup to the Emperor.

But he mistrusts its magic power, or that of the horn.

Gerames warns Huon not to make heedless trial of them,

¹ seeing. ² Fol. xx. back, col. 2. ³ doe. ⁴ goe.
⁵ on. ⁶ ioy. ⁷ sport. ⁸ alas. ⁹ will.

but Huon blows
the horn.

& so toke y^e horne & set it to his mouthe / and blew it
so loude that the woode rang / than Gerames and all
the other began to synge and to make grete ioy / than
Garyn sayd, 'fayre newew, blow styl' ¹ / and so Huon 4
blewe styl with suche force *that* Oberon, who was in

Oberon hears the
blast, and fears
his knight is
in peril.

his woode a² .xv. leges of, herde hym clerely, and sayde,
³ 'a, very god,³ I here my frende blowe whom I loue
best of all the world / alas, what man is so hardy to do 8
hym any yll? / I wysshe my selfe *with* him with a

With a hundred
tho isand men he
approaches Huon.

.C.M. men of⁴ armes' / incontynent he was nere to
Huon with a .C.M. men of⁴ armes / whan Huon & his
company herde y^e hoste comynge, and sawe Oberon 12
com rydyng on before,⁵ then they were afreyd ; ⁶ it was
no merueyll / seyng the commaundement that Oberon

Huon fears he
has done
foolishly.

had genen *them* before / than Huon sayd, 'a,⁷ syrs, I
haue done yll ; now I se well we can not escape, but 16
that we be⁸ lykely⁹ to dye' / 'sertenly,' *quod*
Gerames, 'ye haue well deseruyd it' / 'holde your
peace,' *quod* Huon, 'dysmay you not / let me speke to
hym' / ther with Oberon cam to them and sayd / 20

Oberon curses
Huon when
he perceives
his folly.

'Huon, ¹⁰ of god be thou curssyd,¹⁰ where are they *that*
wyl do the any yll? why haste *thou* broken my
commaundement?' / 'a,¹¹ syr,' *quod* Huon, 'I shall
shewe you y^e trouthe / we were syttyng ryght now in 24
y^e ¹² medow, & dyd etc of that ye gaue vs / I belyue

Huon pleads that
the virtue of the
draught from the
cup has led him
into error, and
asks for pardon.

I tooke to mych drynke out of the cuppe that ye gaue
me / the vertu of the whiche we well assayed / than
I thought to assay¹³ also the vertu of y^e ryche horne / to 28
the entent that yf I shulde haue any nede / *that* I
myght be sure therof / now I know for trouthe that all
is trew *that* ye haue shewyd me / wherfore, syr, in y^e
honour of god I requyre you to pardon my trespas / 32
¹⁴ syr, here is my sword, stryke of my hede at your

¹ Fol. xxi. col 1. ² about. ³⁻³ Alas, my friends.

⁴ at. ⁵ them. ⁶ and. ⁷ alas. ⁸ are. ⁹ all.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ Alas. ¹² this. ¹³ trye. ¹⁴ else.

pleasour / for I knowe well without your ayde I shall
 neuer come to acheue myne enterpryse' / 'Huon,' *quod*
 Oberon, 'the bounte and grete trouthe that is in the
 4 constreynyth me to gyue the pardon / but beware fro
 hense forth be not so hardy¹ to breke my *commaunde-*
ment.' 'syr,' *quod* Huon, 'I thanke you' / 'well,'
quod Oberon, 'I knowe surely that thou hast as yet
 8 moche to suffer / for ²*thou* must passe by a cyte namyd
 Tormont, wherin there is a tyrant callyd Macayr, &
 yet he is thyne owne vncle / brother to thy father,
 Duke Seuin / whan he was in fraunce he had thought
 12 to haue murloryd kynge Charlemayn, but his treason
 was knowyn / & he had ben slayne, and³ thy father
 Duke Seuyne had not ben / so he was sent to y^e holy
 sepulcure to do his penaunce for the yll *that* he had
 16 done / & so after warde there he reuynsyd⁴ the feythe
 of our lord god / and tooke on⁵ hym the paynymys law /
 y^e whiche he hath kept euer syns so sore⁶ / *that* yf he
 here any man speke of our lord god, he wyl persuaunt
 20 him to the dethe / &⁷ what promys *that* he makyth, he
 keypth none / therfore I aduise *thee* trust not on
 hym / for surely he wyll put *thee* to dethe yf he may /
 & thou canst not skape yf *thou* go by that cyte /
 24 therfore I counsell the take not *that* way yf thou
 be wyse' / 'syr,' *quod* Huon / 'of your courtesy, loue,
 & good consell I thanke you / but what so euer fortune
 fal to me, I wyl go to mine vncle / & if he be suche one
 28 as ye say / I shall make hym to dye an yll dethe ;
 yf nede be I shall sowne my horne, & I am sure at my
 nede ye wyll ayde me' / 'of *that* ye may be sure,'
quod Oberon / 'but of one thyng I defende⁸ the, be
 32 not so hardy to sowne the horne without thou be
 hurte, for yf thou do the contrary I shall so marter
thee that thy body shall not endure it' / 'syr,' *quod*

Oberon forgives
him.

Huon has much
to suffer yet.
He has to pass
by Tormont,
where lives the
tyrant Macaire.
He was brother
to Duke Seuin,

but has now
become a pagan.

If Huon go
near his city
he will surely
meet his death.

Huon asser's that
he will confront
his uncle.

Oberon bids
Huon obey his
commands in the
future.

¹ as. ² Fol. xxi. col. 2. ³ if. ⁴ renounced.

⁵ vppon. ⁶ strongly. ⁷ looke. ⁸ forbid.

Oberon bids fare-
well, and weeps
for love of Huon,

Huon, 'he assuryd your *commaundement* I wyl not
breke' / than Huon toke leue of kynge Oberon, who
was sory whan Huon departyd / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I
haue meruayll why ye wepe; I pray you shewe me y^e 4
cause why ye do it' / 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'the grete
lone *that* I haue in¹ *thee* causyth me to do it, for as yet
herafter *thou* shalt suffer so myche yll & traueyll /
that no humayn tounge can tell it' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 8
'ye shewe me many thynges not gretely to my profyte' /
'sure,' quod Oberon, 'and yet thou shalt suffer more
than I haue ²spoken of, and all by thyne owne foly.'

who will suffer
much misfortune

through his own
folly.

¶ How Huon aryued at Tormont, and found 12
a man at the gate who brought him to
lodge to the *prouostes* house in the townne.

Ca. .xxvii.

Huon and his
knights arrive at
Tormont.



¶ After *that* Oberon had shewed huon 16
parte of *that* shuld fall to him, & was
departed, Huon & his company then
mounted on ther horses, & so rode
fourth so longe tyll they cam to y^e 20
cytye of tormout. gerames, who had
ben theyr before, when he saw y^e cytye he sayd to huon,
'a,³ *syr*, we be yll aryued here⁴, behold here we be in
y^e way to suffice muche trouble.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'be 24
not dysmayd, for by y^e grace of god we shall ryght
well skape for who *that* god wyll ayde no man can
hent.' then they *entred* into y^e citey, &⁵ as they cam to
y^e gate they met a man with a bow in his hand, who 28
had bene a sportinge with out y^e cytye / huon ryd
forrest & salutid him in y^e name of god.⁶ 'frende,
what cal ye this cytye?' / y^e man stode styll & had
meuel what men they were *that* spake of god. he 32

Huon notes a
man at the gate in
the name of God.

¹ to.

² Fol. xxi. back, col. 1.

³ and.

⁴ Alas.

⁵ here *omitted*.

⁶ saying.

- behelde them & sayd, 'syr, y^e god in whose name ¹ye
 haue salutyd me kepe & defend *thou* frome in-
 combraunce / how be it I desyre you, in as myche as ye
 4 loue your lyues, speke softly *that* ye be not herd
 for yf y^e lord of this citie know *that* ye be crysten men
 he wyll sle you all / syres, ye may truste me / for I am
 crystened, but I dare not be knowen therof / I haue
 8 such fere of y^e duke.' 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I pray
thou shew me who is lorde of this cytye, & what ys his
 name' / 'syr,' quod he, 'he ys a false tyrant. when
 he was crystened he was named Macaire, but he hath
 12 renounsed god, & he ys so ferse & prowde *that* as now
 he hath² nothyng so mōche as they³ *that* beleue in
 Ihesu cryst; but, *syr*, I pray you shewe me whether
 ye wyll go.' 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I wolde gladly go
 16 to y^e red see, & from thens to Babylone / I wold tary
 this daye in this cytye, for I & my company are sore
 wery.' 'syr,' quod he, '&⁴ ye wyll beleue me ye
 shall not entre in to this cytye to lodge / for yf y^e
 20 duke know⁵ it none could saue your lyues / therefore yf
 it be your pleasure I shall lede you a nother waye
 besyde y^e towne.' 'syr,' quod gerames, 'for goddes
 sake beleue hym *that* counseleth you so truly' / 'know
 24 for trouthe,' quod huon, 'I wyll not do thus. I see
 well it is almost nyght, the *some* goth low / therefore I
 wyll lodge this nyght here in this towne, what so euer
 fall;⁶ for a good towne wolde⁷ neuer be forsaken.'
 28 'syr,' quod y^e straunge man, 'sen⁸ it is so, for the loue
 of god I shall brynge you to a lodgyng where as ye
 shall be well & honestly lodgyd in a good mannes
 house that bileueth in god, named Gonder; he is
 32 prowost of the cytye, & well beloued with the duke.'
 'frende,' quod huon, 'god rewarde *thou*.' sco this man
 wente on before⁹ through the towne tyl he cam at y^e

The man—himself
a Christian—
warns Huon
against mention-
ing the name of
God in that land.

Macaire, who has
renounced the
Christian faith, is
lord of the city.

Huon is advised
by the stranger to
depart straight-
way,

but he refuses.

The stranger
promises to bring
him to a safe
lodging.

The knights
advance,

¹ Fol. xxi. back, col. 2. ² so in text. ³ them. ⁴ if.
⁵ knewe. ⁶ befall. ⁷ should. ⁸ seeing. ⁹ before omitted.

and see the provost at his gate. Huon salutes him in the name of God.

The provost repeats the first stranger's warning,

but offers Huon and his company shelter in his house.

They alight,

and tables are set before them.

After they have feasted Huon bids Gerames have proclamation made that all who will may sup freely at the provost's house that night.

prouostis house, whome they founde syttyng at his gate. Huon, that was a fayre speker, saluted hym in the name of god and ¹of the vyrgyn mary.¹ the prouost rose vp and beheld Huon & his company, &² ⁴ had³ *meruill* What they Were, sen⁴ they saluted hym in y^e name of god; then ⁵he sayd, 'syr, ye be Welcome, but a goddes name I desyre you speke softly that ye be not herde / for yf y^e duke of this cytye knew *thou*,⁶ ⁸ ye shuld vtterly be lost; but yf it please *thou*⁷ to tary this nyght here in my house / for y^e loue of god / all *that* I haue in my house shall be yours to do ther with at your pleasure. I abandon all to you / and, *syr*,¹² I thanke god I haue⁸ in my house that, &⁹ yf ye byde here this too yere, ye shall not nede to bye eny thyng without' / '*syr*,' quod Huon, 'of this frayre proffer I thanke you;' and soo he & his *company* alyghted, and ¹⁶ there were seruauntes ynow to take ther horses and to set *them* vp. then the host toke Huon & Gerames and y^e other and brought *them* to chambres to dresse. then¹⁰ / *they*¹¹ they came in to the hall, where as they ²⁰ founde the tables set and couered, and soo sate downe & were rychely seruyd with dyuers metys. when they had done & were ryzen, Huon callyd Gerames & sayd, '*syr*. go in hast in to the towne & get a cryer / & ²⁴ make¹² to be cryed in euery merket place & strete, that who so euer wolde¹³ eum & suppe at the prouostes house, as well noble as vn noble men, women & chyl dren, ryche & poure, and all maner of people, ²⁸ of what estate or degre¹⁴ they be of,¹⁵ shulde¹⁶ come merely & frely, and nothyng pay, nother for mete nor drynke, wherof they shuld haue as they wysshyd' / and also he commaunded gerames *that* all the mete that he ³² could get in the towne, he shuld by it & pay redy

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² he. ³ great. ⁴ seeing.

⁵ Fol. xxii. col. 1. ⁶ this. ⁷ you. ⁸ that.

⁹ & omitted. ¹⁰ them. ¹¹ then. ¹² cause. ¹³ will.

¹⁴ so ever. ¹⁵ of omitted. ¹⁶ shall.


money for y^e same. ‘*syr*,’ quod Gerames, ‘your pleasure
shalbe done.’ ‘*syr*,’ quod the host, ‘ye know well all
that ys in my house I haue abandoned to you /
4 therefore, *syr*, ye shall not nede to seke for eny thing
ferther; take of my goodes at your pleasure.’ ‘*syr*,’
quod Huon, ‘I thanke you. I haue money ynough to
furnysshe¹ that we² nede of² / & also, *syr*, I haue a
8 cuppe of greate vertu; for yf all y^e people that be
within this cytye were here present, they shulde haue
drynke ynough by reason of my cuppe, y^e which was
made³ in⁴ the Fayry⁴’ / when the host herde Huon he
12 began to smyle, & beleuyd that those wordes had bene
spoken⁵ in iapery⁵ / then Huon, not well aduysel,
toke the horne of Tuorey from his necke & toke it to
his host to kepe, sayenge,⁶ ‘host, I take you this to
16 kepe / for it is a precyous thyng, therefore kepe it surely /
that I may haue it agayne when I de-maund it.’ ‘*syr*,’
quod he, ‘I shall surely kepe it, & when it please you
it shall be redy,’ & so toke y^e horne & layed it vp in a
20 coffer / but after fell suche an owre that Huon wolde
haue had it rather then all the good in the worlde, as
ye shall here more here after.

His host will not
allow Huon to
buy food for the
supper, and offers
his own stores;

but Huon says
his cup will
supply all that
is needful.

Huon gives the
provost his horn
to keep for him.

¶ How Huon gaue a supper to all the pore
24 men of the cytye, and how the duke was
vucle to Huon, and how the duke had
Huon in to his Castell. Capitulo .xxviii.

7
28
32
 Hus when Gerames had this com-
maundement of Huon, he went in to
the cyte / and made to be cryed in
dyuers places as he was commaundid
to do. when this crye was made there
was no begger, vacabonde, nor rybault

Gerames does
Huon's bidding.

¹ all. ² we and of omitted. ³ Fol. xxii. col. 2.

⁴⁻⁴ Fayry Laud. ⁵⁻⁵ but in iest. ⁶ mine.

⁷ Fol. xxii. back, col. 1.

iogeler, mynstrell, olde nor yonge / but by grete floekys
 they came all to the prouostes house / in numbre moo
 then .CCCC. & Gerames bought vp bred, mete,
 flesshe, & other vytelles, all that he could fynde in the 4
 cytye, & payed for it / thus the supper was dressyd, &
 euery man set at the tables. Huon serued them with
 his cuppe in his hande, & made euery man to drynke
 of that he put out of his cuppe into other pottes, & yet 8
 euer the cuppe was full / When y^e people had well
 eten & drounken the good wynes and were well chafed
 in ther braynes, sum began to synge & some to slepe at
 the table, & sum bet¹ ther fystes on the bourdes *that* 12
 it was meruell to se y^e lyfe that they led, ²wher of
 Huon had grete joye / the same tyme the dukes
 stewarde cam in to y^e towne to by hys maysters
 supper, but he coulde nother fynde bred nor flesshe, 16
 nor no other vytelles, wherof he was sore dyspleasyd /
 & then he demaundyd the cause why he found no
 vytelles as he was accustomed to do / ‘*syrr,*’ *quod* the
 bochers & bakers, ‘in y^e house of Gonder the prouost 20
 is lodged a yonge man who hath made to be cryed in
 all the cytye, that all beggers & rybaundes shulde com
 to suppe at his lodgyng / & he hath bought vp all y^e
 vytelles *that* he coulde gete in the towne.’ than the 24
 paynem in greate dyspyte went to the palayes to the
 duke, and sayd, ‘*syrr,*’ I can gete nothyng in y^e towne
 for your supper; ther is a yonge man lodged in the
 prouostes house that hath bought vp all the vytelles to 28
 gyue a supper to all the beggers, vacabondes, & rybaundes
 that can be found in y^e towne.’ When the duke
 vnderstode that he was sore dyspleasyd, & sware by
 mahunde that he wolde goo see that supper / then he 32
 commanded all his men to be redy in harnes to goo
 with hym & as he was goyng out of his palayes
 a traytour who had stolen *pryncely* out of the prouostes

Four thousand
 poor men come to
 the provost's
 house.
 Gerames buys
 such food as is
 required.

Huon's cup
 provides sufficient
 wine.

Macaire's steward
 comes into the
 town to buy food
 for his master's
 supper,

but all has been
 sold to Gerames.

The Duke is told
 of Huon's supper.

In anger Macaire
 swears he will
 visit the provost's
 house.

¹ d. l bent.

² Fol. xxii. back, col. 2.

house, where as he had ben at supper *with* other / he¹
 sayd to the duke, 'syr, know for trouthe ther is in
 your *pronestes* house a knyght who hath gyuen a
 4 supper to all people that wolde cum thether, & soo ther
 is no begger, no rybaulte, nor other *that* woll² supe,
 but are come thether; and, *syr*, this knyght hath a
 cuppe better worth then all this cytye, for yf all the
 8 people betwene est and west shulde dye for lacke of
 drynke / they shuld haue al ynough, for as often as ye
 will empty the cuppe it wylbe full agayne *incontyuent*.
 when the duke herd that he had greate meruell, & sayd /
 12 suche a cuppe were good for hym, & sware by mahound
 that he wolde haue that cuppe / 'let vs goo thether, for
 my wyll is to haue that cuppe. ³all those knyghtes
 shall lose ther horses & baggage; ⁴I wyll lene them
 16 *nothinge*.' so⁵ he went fourthe *with* .xxx. knyghtes, &
 restyd not tyll he came to the *pronestes* house &
 founde the gates open. when y^e *pronest* *perseyued*
 him he cam to Huon, ⁶sayd, 'a,⁷ *syr*, ye haue done yll;
 20 here is come the duke in grete dyspleasure. yf god haue
 not pytye of *thou*⁸ I can not se how ye can escape
without dethe.' 'syr,' *quod* Huon, 'dysmaye ye not,
 for I shall speke so fayre *that* he shall be content.'
 24 then Huon *with* a mery chere cam to y^e duke & sayd,
 'syr, ye be welcom.' 'beware,' *quod* the duke, 'cum
 not nere me / for no crysten man may com in to
 my cytye *without* my lycence, wherfore I wyll thou
 28 knowest that ye shall all lose your hedes, and all *that*
 ye brought hether' / 'syr,' *quod* Huon, 'now⁹ ye haue
 slayne vs ye shal wyn therby but lytell; ¹⁰it were grete
 wrong for you so to do.' 'I shall tell the,' *quod* y^e
 32 duke, 'why I wyll so do; *that* is bycause ye be crysten
 men, therfor *thou* shalte be the fyrst / shew by¹¹ thy

A traitor comes
to tell him of the
marvels of Huon's
cup.

Macaire resolves
to obtain it from
him.

The provost sees
the Duke
approach.

Huon welcomes
him.

Macaire answers
that he will slay
him and his
knights,

because they are
Christians.

¹ he omitted. ² would. ³ and. ⁴ Fol. xxiii. col. 1.

⁵ so omitted. ⁶ and. ⁷ alas. ⁸ you. ⁹ when.

¹⁰ and. ¹¹ me on.

Huon tells
Macaire that he
has brought the
poor men together
that they may
pray for him
hereafter

and invites the
Duke and his
escort to eat and
drink.

He apparently
conciliates him,
and Macaire
consents to sup.

Huon serves him
with fitting
honour.

He offers the
Duke his cup
filled with wine,
but it grows
empty when he
touches it.

Huon angers
Macaire by telling
him that this is
proof that he has
sinned.

faythe why haste thou assembled all this company here
to supper' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I haue done it by
cause I am goynge to y^e red see / & bycause these
pore men wyll pray to god for me *that* I may sauely 4
returne / *syr*, this is the cause that I haue made them
to suppe with me' / 'a,'¹ quod the duke, 'grete foly
hast *thou* spoken / for *thou* shalte neuer see fayre daye,
ye shall all lose your hedes' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'leue 8
all this; I pray you & your company syt downe & ete
& drynke at your pleasure, & I shall serue you as well
as I can; & then, *syr*, yf I haue done eny wronge,
I wyll make you a mendys in suche wyse *that* ye shall 12
be contente, for yf ye do me eny hurt it shall be to you
but a smale conquest. *syr*, me thynke yf ye wyll do
noblye ye shulde sumwhat forbere vs, for as I haue
harde say ye were ones crystenyd.' then the duke 16
sayd to Huon, 'thou hast sayd well; I am content to
suppe, for as yet I haue not supped.' then the duke
commaundyd enery man to be dysarmyd & to syt
downe at the tabyll / the whiche they dyd / than 20
Huon and Gerames seruyd them, and they were well
seruyd at that supper /² then Huon tooke his cuppe and
came to y^e Duke, & sayd, 'syr, se you not here this
cuppe, the whiche is voyde and empty?' 'I se well.' 24
quod the duke, 'there is no thyng therin.' than Huon
made the sygne of the crosse ouer the cuppe, and
incontynent it was full of wyne / he toke y^e cuppe to
the duke, who had grete meruayll therof, and as sone 28
as the cuppe was in his handes it was voyde agayne.
'what!' quod the duke, '*thou* hast enchanted me.'
'syr,' quod Huon, 'I am none enchanter / but it is
for the synne that ye be in / set it downe, for ye are 32
not worthy to holde it; ye were borne in an yll³ hour' /
'how art thou so hardy,' quod the duke, 'to speke thus
to me? / I repute the for a proude fole / thou knowyst

¹ Well. ² Fol. xxiii. col. 2. ³ euill.

well it lyeth in my power to dystroy the / there is no
 man dare say the contrary ; yet I pray the tell me thyn
 name, & where thou were borne, and wether thou goest,
 4 & of what kynne thou art of.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'for
 any thynge that shall¹ fall to me I wyll not hyde my
 name nor kinrede / ²syr, knowe for trouthe I was borne
 at Burdeux vpon Geron, and am sonne to duke seun
 8 who ys deed .vii. yere passyd.' when y^e duke herd how
 huon was his nepheu, he sayd. 'a.³ the son of my
 brother / nepheu, why haste thou taken in this cyte eny
 other lodginge but myne? / shew me whether thou
 12 wylte goo' / 'syr,' quod huon, 'I am goyng to Babylon
 to y^e admirall Gaudys, to do to hym a message fro
 kyng Charlemayne of fraunce / by cause I slew
 his sonne there.' ⁴he shewed his vncle all his ad-
 16 uenture / & how the kyng had taken awaye his londe,
 nor shulde not⁵ haue it agayne tyll he had done his
 message to the admyrall. 'fayre nepheu,' quod y^e
 duke, 'in lyke wyse I was banysshed the realme of
 20 Fraunce, & syns I haue renyed⁶ y^e faythe of Jhesu cryst,
 & syns I maryed here in this countrye a grete lady / by
 whome I haue grete landes to gouerne, wherof I am
 lord. ⁷nepheu, I wyll⁸ ye shall go & lodge with me in
 24 my castell, and to morow ye shall haue of my barons to
 condute you tyll ye come too babylone' / 'syr,' quod
 Huon, 'I thanke you ; syn it is your pleasure I wyll goo
 with you to your palayes.' then Gerames preuely sayd
 28 to hym / 'syr, yf ye goo thether ye may hap⁹ repent
 your self.' 'it may wel be,' quod Gonder the prouost.
 then huon commaunded to trusse all ther gere & to
 make redy ther horses / & toke with hym his cuppe /
 32 but he lefte styll his horne with the prouost. thus
 huon went with his vncle to his castell, & lay there all
 nyght / the nexte mornyng Huon cam to his vncle to

Huon tells his
 name and
 parentage.

The Duke
 recognizes his
 nephew.

Huon declares his
 mission.

Macaire invites
 him to his castle.

Gerames advises
 Huon to stay with
 the provost,

but Huon goes
 with his uncle
 that night,

¹ may. ² therefore. ³ a omitted. ⁴ so. ⁵ he.
⁶ denyed. ⁷ Fol. xxiii. back, col. 1. ⁸ that. ⁹ perhaps.

and he is induced
next day
to delay his
departure.

take his leue / 'fayre nepheu,' *quod* the duke, 'I requyre
you tary tyll my barons come *that* shall condute you in
your iourney.' 'syr,' *quod* huon, 'syn¹ it please you I
am content to abyde' / then² they sat³ downe to dyner. 4

¶ How the duke thought to haue murdryd
Huon, his owne nepheu, whyles he sat at
the table. Capitulo .xxix.⁴



¶ Then this traytor duke saw his nepheu 8
sit at y^e table, he called to him a
knight borne in fraunce callyd Geoffrey,
who came out of fraunce with y^e duke,
& had in lyke wyse renyed⁵ y^e law of 12

Macaire plots the
death of his
nepheu,

cryst, & he was secret with y^e duke / then y^e duke
*pr*iuely sayde to him, 'frend, goo & arme .c. or .vi.
score paynems, & cause them to cum hether / let them
sle my nepheu & all *that* are cum with him, for if one 16
skape ye shal lese my fauer' / 'syr,' *quod* Gellrey,
'your wyll shalbe done' / then Geoffrey went into a
chambre / where as ther was .cc. harnes⁶ hangynge ;
when he cam there⁷ he sayd to⁸ him self, 'alas, good 20
lord, this velayne traytour wolde slee y^e soune of his
brother / who when I was in Fraunce dyd me ones a
greate curtesye, for I had bene deed & slayne if duke
seuyn his father⁹ had not socouryd me¹⁰ it is reason for 24
that he dyd¹¹ to me to rendre agayne sum rewarde to
y^e¹² soune / god confounde me yf he haue any yll for
me / but I shall rather cause the false duke to bye
derely y^e treason *that* he wolde do to his neuew¹³ / y^e 28

and he bids his
officer Geoffrey,
a knight from
France,
arm many pagans
to kill Huon.
But Geoffrey
recalls Duke
Sevin's kindness
to himself,

and resolves to
protect Huon.

In the castle
prison are seven
score Frenchmen
taken upon the
sea.

same season there was in y^e castell a¹² .vii. score prisoners
of¹³ Frenchmen who were taken vpon y^e see, & the
duke kept them in prison to y^e entent to put them to

¹ seeing. ² then omitted. ³ them.

⁴ Chap. xxviii. *misprinted in orig* ⁵ denyed.

⁶ armours. ⁷ thether. ⁸ within. ⁹ Fol. xxiii. back, col. 2.

¹⁰ then. ¹¹ his. ¹² about. ¹³ all.

dethe; he was so cruell agaynst all crysten men / but
 god, who neuer forgettyth his frendes,¹ socouryd them /
 this Geffrey went to the presoners² / & sayd to the
 4 prysoners, 'syr,³ yf ye wyll saue your lyues, com out &
 folow me' / than y^e prisoners incontinēt issuyd out
 of y^e pryson & folowyd Geffrey / & he brought them in
 to the chambre wher as all the harnes hangyd; he
 8 causyd them all to be armyd / & sayde, 'syr, yf ye
 haue corage & wyll to issue hense, it is tyme now ye
 shewe your vertu' / 'syr,' quod they, 'to dye in the
 quarell we shall do your commaundement / to com out
 12 of boundage in to fredom' / whan Geffrey hard them
 he was ryght ioyouse, & sayd, 'syr, knowe surely *that*
 there is here in this palayes at dyner / y^e son of duke
 Seuin of Bourdeux, & he is neuwe to y^e duke lord of
 16 this hous / who was ones crystenyd, & hath renyed⁴ y^e
 feythe of oure lord god ⁵Jhesu Cryst,⁵ & he hathe
 commaundyd me to cause .vii. score paynems to be
 armyd to com & to sle his neuwe & all his company.'
 20 thus whan they were all armyd & swordes by there
 sydes, they folowyd Geffrey to the palayes / & whan
 they enteryd / Huon sayd to y^e duke his vnele / 'syr,
 these men in hernes *that* enteryd in to this hall, be
 24 they suche as ye haue commaundyd to com hether to
 condute me in my iourney?' 'a,⁶ Huon,' quod y^e duke /
 'it is other wyse than *thou* thynekst / thinke surely to
 dye, there is no remedy / thou shalt neuer se fayre day
 28 more' / than he sayde, 'syr, steppe forthe, loke that no
 crysten man skape you, but let them all be slayne.'

Geoffrey arms the
prisoners,

and tells them of
Huon's visit to
the traitorous
Macaire.

They approach
Macaire and
Huon,

and the Duke,
mistaking them
for his pagan
soldiers, bids his
nephew prepare
to die.

7 ¶ How by the ayde of Geffrey & of the
 prisoners Huon was socouryd, and slewe
 32 all the paynems, and the duke fiede / and
 after besegyed the castell. Ca. .xxx.

¹ seruants. ² Prison. ³ sirs. ⁴ denied.
⁵⁻⁵ omitted. ⁶ No. ⁷ Fol. xxiii. col. 1.

Huon makes ready for resistance.



At Geoffroy's bidding the Frenchmen kill all the pagans in the palace.

Huon turns upon his uncle, who flees,

and leaping from a window, runs from the castle.

The Frenchmen close the gates and raise the drawbridges.

The Duke collects more than ten thousand men to attack the castle.

Han Huon sawe y^e malyse of his vncle
 & his false treason he was sore
 abasshyd / & rose vp sodenly & set
 his helme on his heed, & toke his 4
 sword in his haude / than Geffrey cam
 in and cryed, 'saynt Denys, ye noble frenchemen, take
 hede *that* no paynym skape alyue, but slee them all
 with sorowe' / than¹ the frenchemen drewe out there 8
 swordys & fought with the paynyms on all partes, so
that within a short tyme they were all slayne / & whan
 the duke sawe how they were no paynyms *that* slew his
 men / he was in grete fere of his lyfe / & so fledde away 12
 in to a secrete chambre / whan Huon perceuyd that
 they were frenchemen *that* ²socouryd hym, he per-
 ceuyd³ the Duke with his sworde in his haude all
 bloody with the blode of the paynyms that he had 16
 slayne / whan the traytour⁴ Duke sawe that his newew
 so folowyd hym, he fledde fro chambre to ⁵chambre tyll
 he came to a window openyng vpon the garden syde /
 & so lept out there at and ran away, wherof Huon and 20
 Geffray and the other frenchemen were ryght sorowfull.
 than they cloyd the gates and lyft vp the brygges, to
 the entent that they shulde not be taken within /
 than they came in to y^e halle where as one toke 24
 queyntance of an other, where of they had gret ioy /
 but yf god had not socouryd them ther ioy had ben
 tornyd to sorowe / for y^e Duke who was skapyd / whan
 he cam in to the towne / he made a crye that as many 28
 as were able to bere harnes⁶ shulde come to hym / so
 that he and all that he coude make came with hym
 before the palayes, ⁷more than .x. M. persons / and
 they all sware the deth of the crysten men within the 32
 palayes / whan the Duke sawe ⁸he had suche⁹ nombre

¹ than omitted.

² had thus.

³ pursued.

⁴ trayterous.

⁵ Fol. xxiii. col. 2.

⁶ armour.

⁷ being.

⁸ that.

⁹ a.

he was ioyfull / ¹than he commaundyd his engyns to
 be reysyd vp & ladders on euery parte / & ther with
 pykes & mattokes they brake downe a corner toure /
 4 and the crysten men within defendyd them² valyauntly /
 But there defence shulde³ lytyll auaylyd them, and⁴
 our lorde god had not ⁵socoured them / whan Huon
 knew the daunger that they were in he was sore
 8 dyspleysyd, and sayde, 'a, good lord, I ought to be sore
 anoyed⁶ whan I se that we be thus kept in by myne
 vncle / I fere me we shall newer se more dayes' / than
 Gerames sayd, 'syr, for the loue of god blowe now your
 12 horne' / 'syr,'⁷ quod Huon, 'it is not in my power to
 do it / for y^e prouoste Gonder hath it in keynge' / 'ha,
 Huon,' quod Gerames, 'in an yll oure we were aqueyntyd
 with you / for now by your foly and pryde we are in
 16 the way of destructyon' / thus as they were deuysyng /
 Gonder the prouost cam to the Duke, and sayde, 'syr,
 I haue grete merueyll that ye wyll thus dysstroy your
 owne palayes, grete foly ye do therin / syr,⁸ I wolde
 20 counsell you ⁹leue this a-sault, ¹⁰& lete there be a pease
 made betwene you and your neuwe on the condycion to
 let hym and his company go sauely away' / 'prouost,'
 quod the Duke, 'I praye the go & do the beste *that*
 24 *thou* kanst. I wyll do as *thou* doest counsell me' /
 than y^e prouost cam to y^e palayes & sayde to Huon /
 'syr, for goddes sake speke with¹¹ me' / 'what art *thou*?'
 quod Huon / 'I am your host y^e prouoste / and I
 28 requyre you, in as moche as ye loue your lyues, kepe
 well this palayes' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of¹² your good
 counsell I thanke you / & I desyre you, for y^e loue *that*
 ye bere me, & in *that* we wolde helpe to saue my lyfe /
 32 and¹³ to delyuer me agayne y^e horne of Iuorey *that*
 I toke you to kepe / for *without that* I can not scape

The Frenchmen
make a gallant
resistance,
but the chances
are against them.

Huon remembers
how he gave his
horn to the
provost,
and therefore
cannot call on
Oberon for aid.

The prouost urges
Macaire to make
pease with Huon,

and the Duke,
accepting his
counsel, sends
him to negotiate
with his nephew.

On his arrival
before the castle
Huon begs him to
restore the horn,

¹ and. ² themselues. ³ had. ⁴ if. ⁵ mightily.

⁶ agreed. ⁷ Alas. ⁸ rather. ⁹ to.

¹⁰ Fol. xxiii. back, col. 1. ¹¹ to. ¹² for. ¹³ as.

which he does
straightway.

dethe' / 'syr,' quod y^e prouoste, 'it is not fare fro me' /
and so toke it out of his bosome & delyueryd it to
Huon in at a wyndow on the garden syde.

¶ How kynge Oberon cam and socouryd 4
Huon, & slew al the paynymes except
suche as wolde be crystenyd / and how
Huon slewe the duke his vncl. Ca. xxxi.

Huon begins to
sound the horn.



1 When Huon sawe that he was sessyd² of 8
his horne of Tuorey he was ioyfull, the
whiche was no meruayll / for it was
y^e ³suerte of his lyfe / than he set it
to his mouthe & began to blowe it / 12

Gerames reproves
Huon for having
parted with it to
the prouost,

than Gerames sayde / 'A, syr, ye shulde neuer be so
lyght to dyscouer your secretes / for yf this prouoste
had ben vntrew, he myght haue dyscoueryd all your
secretes to the Duke, wherby ye had ben loste and 16
deed / therefore neuer dyscouer your secretes⁴ / & also,
syr, I requyre you as yet blowe not your horne / for ye
be not as yet hurte / kynge Oberon commaundyd you
so at his departyng' / 'why,' quod Huon, 'wylle ye 20

and warns him
against blowing
it now,

but Huon will not
listen to him.

than that I tarry tyll I be slayne? surely I wylle blowe
it without any lenger tarryyng' / and so he blewe it so
sore that the blode came out of his mouth / so *that* all
that were in the palayes began to synge and to daunse, 24
and the Duke and all suche as were at the sege about
the palayes coude not reste but to synge and to daunse /
than⁵ kyng Oberon, who as than was in his cyte of
Mommure / sayd, 'a⁶ hygh a I here my frend Huons 28
horne blow, wherby I knowe well he hath some besynes
in hande, wherfore I wysse myselfe there as the
horne was blowyn with a .C. thousaunde men well
armyd' / he had made no soner his wysse but he was 32
in y^e cyte of Tourmout / where as he and his men

Oberon hear* the
horn,

and comes to
Tormout with his
armed men.

¹ Fol. xxiii. back. col. 2. ² possessed. ³ only. ⁴ more.
⁵ than omitted. ⁶ on.



Oberon takes
leave of Huon,

and foretells
misfortune which
his own folly will
bring upon him.

The fairy bids
him avoid the
tower of
Dunother.

For its entrance
is kept by two
men of brass,
always
brandishing iron
flails;

within dwells the
giant Angolater,
whom none can
resist.

E haue well² herd how kyng Oberon
cam and socouryd Huon, & whan all
was done than he sayde to³ Huon, 'my
dere frende, I wyll take my leue of 4
the / for I shall neuer se the agayne
tyll⁴ thou hast sufferyd as moche payne & yll and
pouerte and dyseese that it well be herde to declare it,
and all through thyne owne foly' / whan Huon herde 8
that all⁵ a frayde &⁶ sayde / 'syr, me thynke ye say
grete wronge, for in all thynges to my power I wyll
obserue your *commaundement*' / 'frende,' quod Oberon,
'sene⁷ thou wylt do so, remembre than thy promes / and 12
I charge the, on⁸ payne of thy lyfe and lesyunge for euer
my loue / that thou be not so hardy⁹ to take the way to
the toure of Dunother / the whiche is a meruelous grete
toure standyng on the see syde / Iulius Cesar causyd 16
it to be made / and there in I was longe¹⁰ norysyd;
thou neuer sawest so fayr a toure nor better garnysshyd
with chambers and glase windouse / and with in
hangyd with ryche¹¹ tapestrey / at the entre of the gate 20
there are .ii. men of brasse, eche of them holdyng in
there handys a flayll of Iren, wher with without sesse
daye and nyght they bete by such a mesure / that
whan the one stryketh with his flayll the other is lyft 24
vp redy to stryke / and they bete¹² so quyckely¹³ / that
a swallow flyyng can not passe by vnslayn / and with in
this toure there is a Gyaunt namyd Angolater; he toke
fro me y^e toure and a¹⁴ wyght harnes¹⁴ / of suche vertu 28
that who so ener hath it on his body / can not be hurt
nor wery / nor he can not be drownyd in no water nor
burnyd with fyre / therefore, Huon, my frende, I charge
the go not *that* way as myche as thou feeryst my 32
dyspleysour / for agaynst that Gyaunt *thou* canst make

¹ Fol. xxiii. back, col. 1. ² all. ³ vnto. ⁴ vntill.

⁵ being. ⁶ he. ⁷ seeing. ⁸ vpon. ⁹ as.

¹⁰ time. ¹¹ Fol. xxiii. back, col. 2. ¹² smite.

¹³ suddainly. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ stronge armour.

no resyvence' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'knowe for trought
the day that I departyd out of fraunce I toke on¹ me /
that any aduventure that ²I myght here² of, though it
4 were neuer so perelous / that I shulde³ neuer eschew it
for any fere of deth / and,⁴ syr, I had rather dye than
to for sake to fyght with that Gyaunt / there is no man
shall let me / & syr, I promyse you or⁵ I retourne
8 agayne to conquere your sayd ⁶wyght hernes⁶ / it shall
do me good seruyce here after; it is a thyng not to
be forsaken; and yf I nede of your ayed I shall blowe
my horne, and ye wyll come and socoure me' / 'Huon,'
12 quod Oberon / 'by the lorde that sayd me, yf thou
brekest the horne in the blowyng thou shalt haue noo
socoure nor ayed of me' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'ye may
do your pleasure & I shall do myne' / than Oberon
16 departyd without more spekyng / and Huon abode in
y^e Cyte, y^e whiche he gaue to Geffrey and to the
prouoste his hoste, and all the lond that his vncle
helde / than he made hym redy, and toke gold and
20 syluer plente, and tooke his leue of Geffrey & of his
hoste, and of all other / & so he and his company
⁷departyd / and so rode ouer hylles & dales nyght and
day a certen spase without fyndyng of any aduventure
24 worthy to be had in memory / at last he came nere to
the see syde where as the toure of y^e Gyaunt was;
whan Huon saw it he sayde to⁸ his company, 'Syr,
yonder I se a toure / the whiche was defendyd⁹ me by
28 Oberon / but as god helpe me / or it be nyght I wyll se
what ys within it / what so euer come therof' / than
Gerames behelde the toure and began to wepe,¹⁰ & sayd,
'a, Huon, he is a fole *that* agreeth to y^e counsell of a
32 chyld. *syr*, for godes sake beware that ye breke not
the commaundement of kyng Oberon, for &¹¹ ye do

Huon entreats
permission to
approach the
tower and fight
with the giant;

but Oberon
refuses it,
and angers Huon.

Huon leaves
Tormont,

and after a long
journey sees the
tower of the giant
by the seashore.

Huon declares he
will enter it.

His companions
deplore his folly.

¹ vpon. ²⁻² might be heard. ³ would. ⁴ therefore added.
⁵ ere. ⁶⁻⁶ stronge armour. ⁷ Fol. xxv. col. l. ⁸ vnto.
⁹ forbidden. ¹⁰ sorow. ¹¹ if.

But the knight
replies that he has
come to seek
adventures.

grete yll is lyke to come to¹ you' / 'syr,' quod Huon,
'yf al the men now luyunge shulde deffend² me to go
thether, I wolde not obey them / for ye knowe well I
departyd out of Fraunce for none other thyng³ but to 4
serche the straunge³ aduentures. ⁴I demaunde no thyng⁴
elles but to fynd aduentures / therfore speke no more to
the contrary / for or⁵ I slepe I wyll fyght with the
Gyaunt / for though he be more harder then Iren, 8
⁶I shall sle hym or he me, and you Gerames, and all the
other / abyde you here in this medow tyll⁷ I retourne
agayne.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, all⁸ wepyng⁸ / 'it sore
dyspleasyth me that it wyl be no better, therfore I 12

Huon takes leave
of his company,

recommaunde you to¹ the sauegard of god' / thus Huon
departyd and left his company / petuosly⁹ complaynyng/
Huon armyd hym¹⁰ and so tooke his way / and kyst all
hys men one after another / & toke with hym his horne 16
and cuppe / so al alone an fote he went forth, and
restyd not tyll⁷ he came to the gate of the castell of
Dunoster. than¹¹ he saw .ii. men of brasse that without
seasyng¹¹ bet with there flaylles / he behelde theym well, 20

and alone on foot,
carrying his cup
and horn,

he reaches the
castle of
Dunoster.

and thought it was in a maner impossyble to enter
without deth / ¹²than he had greate meruayll, and sayde
to hym selfe¹² / howe kyng¹² Oberon had shewyd hym
¹³the trouthe, and thought without y^e ayde of the grace 24
of god it were impossyble to enter / than¹⁴ he behelie
all about yf there were any other entre¹⁵ / at last he saw
nere to a pyller of marbell a basyn of gold fast tyed
with a cheyne / than he aprochyd nere ther to and 28

He seeks to avoid
the two men of
brasse with their
flails of iron,

and sees a golden
basyn tied to a
marble pillar.

drew out his sworde, wher with he strake thre grete
strokes on the basyn / so that the sounde ther of myght
well be harde in to the castell / within the toure there
was a damesell called Sebylle / whan she harde the 32

Thrice he strikes
it with his sword,
and the sound of
the blows reaches
Sebylle, a damsel
imprisoned in the
fortress.

¹ vnto. ² forbid. ³ strangest. ⁴ and. ⁵ ere.
⁶ yet. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ in. ⁹ heauily. ¹⁰ himself. ¹¹ there.

¹²⁻¹² Then he began to consider hereon with himselfe.

¹³ Fol. xxv. col. 2. ¹⁴ whereuppon.

¹⁵ place to enter.

basyn sowne / she had grete mertayll¹ / than she went to
 a wyndowe / and lokyd out and saw Huon that wolde
 enter. than² she went bake agayne & sayde, 'a, good
 4 lorde, what knyght is yonder without that wold enter? /
 for yf the Gyaunt awake amone he wylbe slayne / for yf
 there were a .M. knyghtes to gether they shulde³ some
 be dystroyed suerly. I haue grete desyre for⁴ to knowe
 8 what he is and where he was borne / for as me semyth
 he shulde be of Fraunce to / know the trouthe I wyl
 go to y^e wyndow⁵ to se yf I may haue of hym any
 knowlege' / than she went out of her chambre, and
 12 went to a wyndow nere to the gate / and lokyd out
 and sawe Huon all armyd abydyng at the gate / than
 she behelde the blasure of his shyld, wherein was
 purtruyed .iii. crosses gowlls⁶ / wherby she knew wel
 16 he was of Fraunce. 'Alas,' quod she, 'I am but lost
 yf the Gyaunt kuawe that I haue ben here' / than she
 retournyd agayne in hast, & went to the chambre dore
 where as the Gyaunt lay and slept, and she parseyuyd
 20 he was⁷ a slepe, for he rowtyd that it was menayl to
 here / than she retournyd agayne quykely to the gate :
 than⁸ she⁹ openyd a wyket, out of the whiche there
 issuyd suche a wynde that it can-eth y^e two men with
 24 there flaylles to stonde styll in rest / whan she had
 openyd the wyket hastely she retournyd in to her
 chambre / ⁸whan Huon sawe the lytyll ¹⁰wyket open he
 auaunsyd hymselfe & enteryd, for the two men with
 28 theyr flaylles were in rest / than he went forthe,¹¹
 thynkyng to fynd them that had openyd the wyket,
 but he was sore abasshed when he coude fynde no
 creature / there were so many chambres that he wyst
 32 not wheder to goo to fynde *that* he sought for / thus he
 serehed all about / ⁸at last he sawe aboute a pylier

Shylle sees Huon
 from a window,
 and fears that the
 giant will slay
 him.

She goes to a
 window near
 the gate,
 and perceives
 from his shield
 that the stranger
 is from France.

She finds that
 the giant is
 asleep,

and therefore
 ventures to open a
 wicket which
 causes the men of
 brass to stand at
 rest, and
 repairs again to
 her chamber.

Huon enters
 through the
 wicket,

but marvels to see
 no living creature
 within.

¹ thereat. ² whereuppon. ³ all. ⁴ for omitted.

⁵ agayne. ⁶ of gould. ⁷ yet. ⁸ and.

⁹ she omitted. ¹⁰ Fol. xv. back, col. 1. ¹¹ further.

But he notices the
dead bodies of
fourteen men.
Huon desires
to return,

but finds the
wicket closed and
the men of brass
again in motion.

Sadly he walks
through the
castle,
when he hears the
voice of a damsel
weeping,
and goes to her.

He meets her,
and she tells him
of his danger.

She is, she says,
a niece to Duke
Sevin.

She had
accompanied her
father to the Holy
Sepulchre,

and on their
return they were
shipwrecked on
the coast near the
castle.

The giant had
seen them,
and had slain all
her companions,
but had spared
herself.

.xiii. men lye deed / wher of he had grete meruayll /
and sayd that he wolde retourne baeke agayne. than
he went out of the hall and came to the gate, wenyng
to haue founde it open. But it was clesyd by it selfe, 4
and the men agayne¹ bet with there flaylles. 'Alas,'
quod Huon, 'now I se well I can not skappe fro
hense' / than he retournyd in to the castell & harkenyd,²
and as he went serchynge aboute³ he harde the voyce of 8
a damesell peteously wepyng / he came there as she
was, & humbly salutyd her, and sayd / 'fayre damesell,
I can not tell yf ye can vnderstonde my langage or not /
know of you I wolde why⁴ ye make this grete sorow.' 12
'Syr,' quod she, 'I wepe by cause I haue of you grete
petye / for yf the Gyautt here within, who is⁵ a slepe,
hap⁶ go to wake,⁶ ye are but deed and lost.' 'Fayre
lady,' quod Huon, 'I pray you shew me what ye be, 16
and where ye were borne.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'I am
doughter to Guynemer, who in his tyme was erle of
saynt Omers, & am nese to duke Seyn of Burdeux' /
whan Huon harde that ryght humbly he kyssyd her, 20
and sayde / 'dame,⁷ know for trouthe⁸ ye are my nere
kynse woman / for I am sonne to duke Seyn; I pray
you shew me what aduenture hath brought you in to
this castell.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'my father had deuocyon 24
to se the holy sepulchre / & he louyd me so well that
he wolde not leue me behynd hym / & as we were on
the see nere to the Cyte of Escalonee in Surrey, there
rose a grete tempest in⁹ the see / so that y^e wynde 28
brought vs¹⁰ nere to¹¹ this castell / and the Gyautt beyng
in his toure, sawe vs in greate daunger of drownynge,
and that we were dryuyn in to this porte / he came
downe out of his palayes and slew my father and all 32
them that were with hym except my selfe, & so

¹ did. ² aboute. ³ carefully. ⁴ wherefore.
⁵ yet. ⁶ to awake. ⁷ Madame. ⁸ that.
⁹ vpon. ¹⁰ Fol. xxv. back, col. 2. ¹¹ vnto.

brought me in to this toure, where as I haue bene this .vii. yere ¹and neuer harde one masse¹; & now, cosyn, I pray you what aduenture hath brought you hether in
 4 to this straunge countre?' 'Cosyn,' quod he, 'sen² ye wyll knowe of myne aduenture / I shall shew you the trouthe / kyng Charlemayn hath sent me in message to the admyral Gaudyse in Babylon / I bere hym a
 8 message by mouthe & by letters / and as my way lay I am come by this toure / and I demaundyd of a paynym who was within this toure, and he answeyrd me and sayd how here shulde be a grete and an orryble Gyaunt
 12 who hath done myche yll³ to *them* that hath passyd this way, and I thought to passe this way to fyght with hym and to⁴ dystroy hym, and to delyuere the countre of hym / & I haue lefte my company hereby in
 16 a vaye to tary for me' / 'dere cosyn,' quod she, 'I haue grete meruayll that ye wolde take on you suche a foly / for yf ye were .v.C. men to gether well armyd, ye durst not all abyde hym yf he were armyd with his
 20 armure / for noue can endure agaynst hym / therefore, cosyn, I counsell you to retourne backe agayne or he do wake, and I shall open you the wyket so *that* ye shall passe out without⁵ daunger.'

He had kept her captive for seven years.

Huon tells Sebylle how he is on his way to Babylon,

but will now fight and slay the giant.

His cousin warns him that five hundred men could not conquer her cruel master,

and bids him return whence he came.

24 ¶ How the damesell, cosyn to Huon, shewed hym the *chambre* where as the Gyaunt slept / and how he went and wakyd hym / and of the good armure that the Gyaunt delyueryd to Huon. Capitulo .xxxiii.

6 **U** Han Huon had well vnderstonde y^e damesell, he sayd, 'cosyn, know for trouthe, or⁷ I departe hense I wyll se
 32 what man he is / it shall neuer be sayd to my reproche in y^e courte of

Huon begs permission to see the giant.

¹-¹ in great distresse and miserie. ² seeing. ³ euill.
⁴ to omitted. ⁵ any. ⁶ Fol. xxvi. col. 1. ⁷ ere.

any prynee / that for fere of a¹ myscreaunt I shulde be
of so faynt a courage that I durst not abyd hym /
certainly I had rather dye than such a faulte shuld
come to me.' 'A, cousyn,' quod she, 'then I se⁴
wel both you and I are dystroyed / but sen² it ys
thus, I shall shew you the chambre where as he
slepeth / and whan ye haue sene hym yet³ ye may
retourne / fyrst go in to this chambre *that* y^e se here⁸
before you, wherin ye shall fynde bred and wyne
and other vytayll / & in the nexte ye shall fynde
clothes of sylke and many ryche iuelles / than in the
thyrd chambre ye shall fynde the .iiii. goddes of y^e 12
paynymys, they be all of fyne massye gold ; and in the
fourth ye shall fynde the Gyaunt lyeunge a slepe on a
ryche bed ; than, syr, yf ye⁴ beleue me,⁴ I wolde counsel
you to stryke of his hede slepyunge / for yf he awake ye 16
can not skape without deth.' 'Dame,'⁵ quod Huon,
'and god wyll it shall neuer be⁶ layde to my reproche⁶ /
that I shulde stryke any man *with* out defyaunce.'⁷
Than Huon departyd fro the lady, his sword⁸ in his 20
hande and⁹ helme on his hede, and his shyld aboute
his neke, and so enteryd in to the fyrst chambre, & so³
in to the secounde & thyrd, where as he saw the .iiii.
goddes. When he had wel regardyd them he gaue 24
eche of *them* a stroke with his sworde / & than he
enteryd in to y^e chambre where as the Gyaunt lay
slepyunge Huon¹⁰ regardyd hym myche¹⁰ / and the bed
that he lay on, the whiche was so ryche / that y^e valew 28
therof coude not be prysyd / y^e curteyns, couerynge / &
pelous were of suche ryches that it was grete beaute to
beholde *them*. Also the chambre was hangyd *with*
ryche clothes¹¹ and the flowre coueryd with carpettes / 32
whan Huon had well regardyd all this, & well aduysyd¹²

Sebylle directes
him to the giant's
chamber,

and advyses him
to kill the
monster while
asleep.

Huon declares
he will not be
guilty of such
treachery.

Huon finds
the giant lying
on a richly
furnished bed.

¹ any. ² seeing. ³ then. ⁴⁻⁴ were of my mind.

⁵ Ladie. ⁶⁻⁶ said to my disgrace. ⁷ his knowledge.

⁸ being. ⁹ his. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ noted him aduisedly.

¹¹ Fol. xxvi, col. 2^r ¹² considered of.

the Gyaunt, who was .xvii. fote of lengthe, & his body
 furnishyd thereafter, & al his other membres; but a
 more fouler and hydeous creature was neuer sene / with
 4 a grete hede, & ¹ grete eeres, & a comesyd nose / and
 eyen brynyng² lyke a candell. ‘A, good lorde,’ quod
 Huon / ‘I wolde kynge Charlemayn were here to se vs
 two fyght / for I am sure than or³ he departyd my
 8 peace shulde be made with hym. ⁴A, swete vyrgyn
 mary,⁴ I humbly requyre the to be ⁵medyatrix to thy
 swete sonne / to be⁵ my socoure agaynst this ennemye /
 for yf it be not his⁶ pleasure agaynst hym I can not⁷
 12 endure.’ Than Huon ferslye auansyd forth & made y^e
 sygne of the crosse / castyng in his mynde what he
 myght do / for he thought that⁸ yf he slew hym slepyng
 it shulde be a grete reproche to hym, & shulde⁹ be sayd
 16 that he had slayne a man deed / and than¹⁰ he sayd to
 hym selfe, ‘shame haue I yf I touche hym or I haue
 defyed hym’ / than Huon cryed out alowde & sayd,
 ‘aryse, thou hethen hounde, or¹¹ I shall stryke of thy
 20 hede’ / whan the Gyaunt hard Huon speke / he awoke
 fersly, & behelde Huon, & so¹² rose vp so quykely *that*
 in the rysyng he brast¹³ the bedstede that he lay on¹⁴ /
 than he sayd to Huon / ‘frende, they that sent the
 24 hether louyd the but lytyll nor doughtyd not me.’ And
 whan Huon harde the Gyaunt speke frenche he had
 grete meruayll / and sayd, ‘I am come hether to se
 thee / & it may be so that I haue done foly’¹⁵ / than
 28 the Gyaunt sayd / ‘thou sayest trouthe / for yf I were
 arnyd as thou art .v C. men suche as thou art coude
 not endure¹⁶ / but that ye¹⁷ shulde all dye. But thou
 seest I am nakyd, without sworde or wepyn, yet for all
 32 that I dought the not’ / Than Huon thought in hym

He was seventeen
 feet long and of
 hideous aspect.

Huon appeals
 to the Virgin for
 aid,

and then shouts
 to the giant to
 arise,

who awakes in
 wrath, and
 addresses Huon
 in French.

Naked as he is,
 he will slay the
 knight.

¹ and omitted. ² burning. ³ ere. ⁴⁻⁴ Lord god.
⁵⁻⁵ omitted. ⁶ thy good. ⁷ no while. ⁸ that omitted.
⁹ it would. ¹⁰ whereupon. ¹¹ else. ¹² so omitted.
¹³ brake. ¹⁴ vpon. ¹⁵ it unadvisedly.
¹⁶ me. ¹⁷ they.

selfe *that* it shulde¹ be² grete shame to hym to assayle
 a man without armure or wepyn / ³th⁴m⁴ he sayd, ' go
 and arme the, or incontynent I shall slee the' / 'frende,'
 quod the Gyaunt, ' this that thou sayest procedeth of a 4
 good courage and of courtesye.' Than he armyd hym
 and tooke in his hande a greate fauchon, & Huon was
 withdrawen in to the palayes abydyngge for the Gyaunt /
 who taryed not long, but came to Huon / and sayde, 8
 ' what art thou ? / beholde me here redy to dystroye the
 without thou make good defence / yet I desyre the tell
 me what thou art, to thentent that I may, when I haue
 slayne *thee*, tell how I haue slayne suche⁵ one that by 12
 his foly cam to assayll me *in* myne owne palays / greate
 pryde it was in *thee* that thou woldest not stryke me or⁶
 I was armyd, ⁷ who so euer thou art thou semyst son to a
 noble man. I pray the shew me whether thou woldest 16
 go, and what mouyd the to come hether, to thentent
 that I myght knowe the trouthe of thyn enterpryse,
 that whan I haue slayne the I may make myne auant
 to my men that I haue slayne suche a man / that 20
 thought scorne and dysdayne to stryke me or⁶ I was
 armyd.' ' Paynym,' quod Huon / ' thou art in a grete
 foly whan thou⁸ reputyst me but⁹ deed. But sen¹⁰
 thou wylt¹¹ knowe y^e trouthe / I ¹²shewe to the I ¹²am 24
 a poore knyght / fro whom kynge Charlemayne hath
 taken his¹³ lombes and banyshyd me out of the realme
 of Fraunce / and hath sent me¹¹ to do a message to the
 Admyrall Gaudys at Babylon / & my name is Huon, 28
 some to duke Seuyng of Burdeux / now I haue shewed
 all y^e trouthe of myne enterpryse / & nowe I pray the
 tell me where thou wert borne, and who engenderyd
 the, to thentent that whan I haue slayne the I may 32
 make myn auant in kynge Charles courte and before all

Huon courteously
asks the giant to
arm for fight

The monster rises
and comes to
Huon armed.

He asks him who
he is,

and is somewhat
mored by Huon's
gentle behaviour.

Huon tells his
story,

and inquires
the name of his
adversary.

¹ would. ² a. ³ Fol. xxvi. back, col. 1. ⁴ wherefore.
⁵ a. ⁶ ere. ⁷ but. ⁸ so ra-hly. ⁹ for.
¹⁰ seeing. ¹¹ wouldst. ¹²⁻¹² omitted.
¹³ my. ¹⁴ for.

- my frenles that I haue slayne such a greate meruelous¹
 Gyaunt as thou art.' Than the Gyaunt sayd, ' if thou
 slee me thou mayest well make thyn anaunt that ²thou
 4 hast slayne Galaffer³ the Gyaunt, who hath .xvii. The giant says he
 bretherne, of whome I am the yongest. Also thou is called Galater,
 mayest say that vnto y^e drye tree and to the red see / and all the land
 there is no man but is trybutayr to me / I haue about is tributary
 8 chasyd the admiral Gaudis, ⁴whether as thou woldest to him.
 go,⁴ and haue taken fro hym by puyssaunce dyuers of He has robbed
 his Cytyes / and he doth me yerely seruage by the the Admiral
 seruyce⁵ of a rynge of gold to by his hede with all. Gau-lysse of many
 12 Also I toke fro Oberon⁶ this puyssaunt toure, that for the tower in which he
 all his enchauntinge and fayrye coude not resyst me / now liues,
 and also I tooke fro hym a ryehe harnes⁷; thou neuer and of a suit of
 hardest of suche an nother, for it hath suche vertue that rich armour,
 16 who so euer can put it on hym⁸ / can neuer be wery nor which renders its
 dyscomfytyd. But there is therin⁹ another¹⁰ vertue / his parents have
 for he that must were that harnes must be without spot never sinned,
 of deedly synne, and also his mother must be without invulnerable.
 20 earnall copulasyon with any man except with her¹¹ husbonde / I beleue there can not be found any man
 that may were this harnes.⁷ Also it is of suche vertue that who so euer hath it on his body can not be greuyd
 24 nother with fyer nor water. By mahound I haue prouyd it / and bycause I haue founde such courtesye
 in the that thou gauest me leue to arme me / I¹² gyue He permits Huon,
 the leue to assaye yf thou canst put on that harnes.⁷ because of his
 28 ¹³Than y^e Gyaunt went to a coffer and tooke out the harnes,⁷ and came to Huon and sayd / ' lo,¹⁴ here attempt to put
 is the good harnes,⁷ I gyue the leue to assaye to put it on.
 it on thy body.' Than Huon tooke the harnes⁷ and

¹ maruaylous greate. ² Fol. xxvi. back, col. 2.

³ Angolofer. ⁴⁻⁴ to whome thou saiest thou goest.

⁵ tender. ⁶ the Fayrie King. ⁷ armour. ⁸ omitted.

⁹ in it. ¹⁰ especiall. ¹¹ owne. ¹² will.

¹³ in regard I know that neither thou nor any knight else can be able to doe it. ¹⁴ see.

Huon finds he is able to wear the armour.

went backe a lytell / and dyd¹ of his owne armure / and tooke ²the sayd harnes² and incontinent dyd it on his body / than hastely he dyd¹ on his helme, and tooke hys shelde and his³ sworde in his ⁴hande / and deuotely thanked our lorde god of his⁴ grace. Than the Gyaunt sayd / ‘by mahounde / I had lytell thought thou hadest ben suche a man / that harnes⁵ becomyth the⁶ well ; now ⁷I haue quyt the thy⁸ ⁸courtesye that thou shewydst me / therefore I pray the put of y^e harnes,⁵ and delyuer it me agayne’ / ⁹‘holde thy tounge,’ quod Huon ; ‘god confounde the, it is nede for me to haue suche armure⁹ / knowe for trouthe I ¹²wyll not render yt agayne for .xiiii. of the best cytyes betwene thys and Parys’ / ‘frende,’ quod the Gyaunt, ‘sen¹⁰ thou wyll not render me agayne the armure, I am content to let *thee* departe quyte¹¹ without¹² hurte or ¹⁶damage / and also I wyll gyue the my rynge of golde, the whiche the admyrall Gaudys gaue me / for I knowe well it shal¹³ stonde the in good stede yf thou thynkest to furnyshe thy message / for whan thou comyst to the ²⁰gate of his palays, and say how thou art a messenger sent fro kinge Charles / thou shalt fynde .iiii. gates, and at euery gate .iiii. porters / so *that* at the fyrst gate, yf it be knowen thou be a frenche man, one of thy handes ²⁴shalbe cut of / and at the seconde gate thy other hande / and at the thyrde gate one of thy fete / and at y^e fourth the other fote / and than shalt *thou* be brought before the admyrall, and there thy hede stryken ²⁸of / and therefore, to scape these pavelles and to furnysshe thy message, and to thentent that thou mayest surely retourne / gyue me agayne my harnes,⁵

The giant begs him to return it again,

but Huon refuses.

Galafre is discomfited, and bids Huon depart. He promises him also a golden ring,

which can alone give him a safe entry to the Admiral's palace at Babylon ;

¹ put. ² that belonging to the Gyant.

³ his *omitted*. ⁴ this great. ⁵ armour. ⁶ exceeding.

⁷ Fol. xxvii. col. l. ⁸ thy *omitted*.


⁹⁻⁹ ‘Not so, sir, by your leaue,’ answered Huon ; ‘this armure is meeter for me than such a Helhound as thou art. therefore.’

¹⁰ seeing. ¹¹ hence. ¹² any. ¹³ will.

and I shal gyue the my ryng of golde / the whiche
 whan thou shewyst it thou shalt be reseuyd with
 grete honour at euery gate, and than thou mayest goo
 4 and retourne surely in¹ the palays at thy pleasure, and
 no man to let the / for yf thou haddest slayne .v. C.
 men there shalbe none so hardy² to touche the nor to
 do the any yll yf thou hast this ryng vpon³ the / for
 8 whan I haue nede of men or mony I can not lacke yf
 I sende this ryng for a token / therfore I pray the let
 me haue agayne my harnes.⁴

but before he give
 it him he once
 more begs Huon
 to take off the
 armour.

¶ How Huon slew the grete Gyaunt / and
 12 how he called Gerames & his company to
 hym, & of y^e ioy *that* they made for the
 deth of ⁵the Gyaunt. Ca. xxxiii.

16 
 Han Huon vnderstode y^e paynym he
 sayd, 'A, thou fel & false deseyuer,
 know for trouthe yf all y^e prechers
 betwene y^e Est & the west *preched*
 to me a hole yere, & *that* thou woldest
 20 gyue me al that thou hast, & thy ryng ther with, I wolde
 not render agayne the good harnes⁴ *that* is now on my
 body / fyrst I shall⁶ sle the, & than as for thy ryng *that*
 thou praysest so ⁷sore, than⁷ I wyl⁸ haue it, whether thou
 24 wylt or not' / whan y^e Gyaunt had well harle Huon,
 & sawe *that* he⁹ in no wyse coude gette agayne his
 harnes,⁴ he was than sorowfull / and also¹⁰ he sawe how
 Huon reproynd hym / therwith he was so sore dys-
 28 pleasyd *that* his eyen semyd like .ii. candelles byrn-
 ynge¹¹ / than he yet demaundyd of Huon yf he wold
 do none other wyse. 'no, trewly,' *quod* Huon, 'though
 thou be greate & stronge / I haue no fere of y^e, sen¹²
 32 I haue on this good harnes,⁴ therefore in the name of

Huon reproaches
 the giant with
 treachery,
 and challenges
 him.

The giant grows
 angry,

¹ to. ² as. ³ about. ⁴ armour. ⁵ Fol. xxvii. col. 2.
⁶ omitted. ⁷⁻⁷ much. ⁸ likewise. ⁹ he after wyse.
¹⁰ because. ¹¹ burning candelles. ¹² seeing.

god & of his deuyne puissaunce I defye *the* / & I
 the,' *quod*¹ Gyaunt / 'for al² thy harnes² *thou* canst not
 endure astaynst me' / *thau* y^e Gyaunt aprochyd to
 Huon & lyft vp his fauchon, thynkinge to haue stryken⁴
 Huon³ / but he fayled; ⁴y^e stroke glent, & the fauchon
 lyght vpon a pyller & enteryd in to it more than .ii.
 fote / *thau* Huon, who was quycke & lyght, behelde⁵ y^e
 meruelous stroke, quyckly he⁶ stept forth with his⁸
 good sword in his handes, regardyng low the Gyaunt
 had his fauchon styeking fast in the pyller / he strake
 y^e Gyaunt on both y^e armes nere to his handes in such
 wyse *that* he strake of both his handes, so *that* they¹²
 with y^e fauchon fell downe to the erth / *whan* y^e
 Gyaunt felt hys selfe so sore hurte, for⁷ payne therof
 he gaue a meruelous crye, so horryble as though all y^e
 toure had fallen to y^e erth, wrof y^e damesell Sebyll,¹⁶
 beyng in her chambre, was sore abasshyd / she went
 out of her chambre & founde a staffe by the way. She
 toke it vp in her handes, & came to the palays where
 as she harde y^e crye, & met y^e Gyaunt fleyng away²⁰
 to saue hyselfe / but y^e damesell well adusyde *whan*
 she sawe *that* he fled / she caste y^e staffe betwene his
 leges, so *that* therby he fell to y^e erth / & Huon, who
 came after hym with his sworde in his hande / he hastyd²⁴
 hym, & gaue y^e Gyaunt many a grete stroke / & the
 Gyaunt cryed out so hie *that* it was⁹ grete meruayle⁹ to
 here hym / *thau* Huon lyft vp his sworde & gaue hym
 suche a stroke in the necke *that* his hede flew to the²⁸
 erth; *thau* Huon wpyyd his sworde and put it vp in¹⁰
 the sheth; *thau*¹¹ he cam to y^e hede, thynkyng to haue
 taken it vp¹¹ to haue set it on the heyght of y^e
 toure / but the hede was so grete & heuy *that* he³²
 coude not remoue it nor tourne his¹² body; *thau*

and the fight
begins.

Galafre's first
stroke misses its
aim, and his
weapon is fixed
fast in a pillar.

While he tries
to release it,
Huon strikes off
his hands.

The giant cries
aloud and flees
before the knight.

Sebylle, roused
from her chamber
by the shouting,

meets Galafre
running, and
flings a staff
between his legs,
so that he falls.

Huon comes up
with him

and strikes off
his head,

which is so
heavy that he
cannot lift it up.

¹ the. ² the armour. ³ him. ⁴ for.
⁵ beholding. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ with. ⁸ Fol. xxvii. back, col. 1.
⁹ very terrible. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ and. ¹² the.

he smyled & sayd, 'A, good lorde, I thanke y^e of thy grace ¹to haue¹ gyuen me y^e puyssaunce to sle such a creature; wold to god *that* this body & hede were
 4 now in the palays of Parys before Charlemayne, kinge of fraunce, so *that* he knewe *that* I haue slayn hym' / than Huon went to a wyndow & lokyd out & saw where his company were / than he sayd to them, a²
 8 hye, 'syr, come vp heder; ye may do it surely, for this palays is wonne / and y^e Gyaunt slayne' / whan Gerames & ³Garyn & the other harde *that* they were ioyfull & thanked our lorde god / than they cam to y^e gate / &
 12 sebyll, y^e damesell, went thyder & openyd y^e wycket, wherby the enchauntement faylled / than they enteryd & foolowyd y^e damesell, who brought them in to y^e palais to Huon. ⁴whan they saw hym they all wept for
 16 ioy / & enbrasyd & kyssyd hym, & demaundyd yf he had any hurt / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke god I fele no hurt;' & than he brought them there⁵ as y^e gyaunt lay deed / whan they saw hym they had
 20 mernayle how he coude be slayne by Huon; they were afrayed to se hym lye deed / than Gerames demaundyd of Huon what was the damesell *that* was there / than⁴ Huon shewyd how she was his cosyn, & shewyd them
 24 all y^e maner how she cam theder, wherof they had greate ioy & enbrasyd her / than they all vnamyd them⁶ & went to supper, & ete & dranke at there
 7 pleasure / but there ioy enduryd not longe, as ye shall
 28 here⁸ after.

From a window
Huon calls to his
company.

Sebylle opens
the wicket for
them to enter.

Huon tells his
friends how he is
unhurt

and they sup
together merrily.

¶ How Huon departyd fro the castell of the Gyaunt, & toke leue of his company & went alone a fote to y^e see syde, where as he
 32 founde Malabron of *that*⁹ fayre, on whom he mountyd to passe the see. Ca. xxxv.

¹⁻¹ that thou hast. ² ou. ³ & omitted. ⁴ and. ⁵ where.
⁶ selues. ⁷ Fol. xxvii. back, col. 2. ⁸ heare. ⁹ the.



E haue hard here before how Huon
conqueryd y^e Gyaunt, the which was
grete ioy to al his company / than the
next day Huon called ¹al his company¹ 4
& said, 'syr, ye know well y^e enter-
pryse *that* I haue taken on me to do touchinge y^e
admyrall Gaudys / therefore it is conuenient *that* as
shortly as I can to do my message *that* I am chargyd 8
by kinge Charles to do to y^e admyrall Gaudys, wherefore
I desyre you al to kepe good and trew company *with*
this noble damesell / & also I requyre you to tary
me here .xv. dayes, & than yf I retourne not go 12
you al *in* to fraunce, & take this noble damesel with
you, & salute fro me kinge Charlemayn & all the peres
of fraunce, & shew them the hard aduentures *that* I
haue had, & how I am gone to performe hys message' / 16
whan his company vnderstode *that* he wolde departe
they were sorowfull, & sayd / 'syr, ye desyre vs to
tary you here a .xv. dayes / knowe for trouthe we shal
tary here fore you an hole yere.' 'syr,' quod he, 'I 20
thanke you' / than he made hym redy to departe, &
armyd hym, & tooke his cuppe & horne, & also y^e
Gyautes ringe, the whiche he dyd² put aboute his
arme / & than he kyst his cosyn & al y^e other / and 24
they all made gret lamentasyon for his departing /
than they went vp *in* to y^e palais & lokyd out at y^e
wyndowes after Huon as long as they myght se hym /
Huon went forth tyll he cam to the se syde, y^e whiche 28
was not farre fro y^e castel, & there was a lytell hauen
where as al wayes³ lay sum maner of shyppe or
wessell to passe ouer y^e see / & whan Huon cam
thether ⁴he had grete meruayle, & sayd,⁴ 'A, good 32

Huon bids his
company remain
with the damsel
in the castle
while he proceeds
to Babylon.
If he comes not
back in fifteen
days they are all
to return to
France.

They declare they
will tarry for him
a whole year.

Huon takes leave
of them,
and goes to the
seashore.

¹⁻¹ them all together. ² did.

³ was wont to.

⁴⁻⁴ though nowe at this instant there was none at all.
Finding no means for passage, he said.

lorde, what shal I do *that* I can fynd here no bote
 nor¹ vessell to passe in? / alas, in an yll owre I slewe
 2 Charlot, wherby I am³ in daunger; howbeit I dyd it in
 4 ⁴my⁴ defence: grete wronge⁵ kyng Charles hathe done
 to banyshe me out of myne owne countre / grete⁶ com-
 pleyntes made Huon there, beyng alone, & began sore
 to wepe / &⁷ sodenly on his ryght hande he saw a grete
 8 beest come swymmyng towardes hym / lyke a beer /
 Huon behelde hym & made on his hed⁸ a sygne of y^e
 crosse / & drew out his sword to defende hym selfe,⁹
 thynkyng y^e beest wolde haue assayled hym / but he
 12 dyd not / but went a lytell of fro Huon, & shoke hym
 selfe in such wyse *that* his skyn fell of, and *than* he
 was as fayre a man & as well fourmyd as coude be
 seen / than Huon had grete fere & *meruayle* / *whan* he
 16 saw *that* this beest was become a man,¹⁰ he aprochyd
 nere to hym, and demaundyd what he was, & whether he
 were an humaine creature or elles an yll speryt *that* was
 come theder to tempt hym / & sayd, 'ryght nowe *thou*
 20 dydest swym in y^e see, & trauesyd y^e grete waues in
 gyse of a meruelous beest; I charge *thee* in y^e name of
 god¹¹ do me no hurt / and⁷ shew me what *thou* art / ¹²I
 beleue *thou* art of kyng Oberons company' / 'Huon,'
 24 *quod* he, 'dysmay *thou* not, I knowe the ryght well;
thou art sonne to ¹³y^e noble¹³ duke seuyn of Burdeux /
 noble¹⁴ kyng Oberon hathe sent me to *thee* / ones
 15 I¹⁵ brake his commaundement, wherfore he hath con-
 28 dempnyd me to be this .xxx. yere lyke a best in y^e
 see.' 'frend,' *quod* huon, 'by y^e lorde *that* fourmyd me
 I wyll trust *thee* tyll I be passyd y^e red see' / 'Huon,'
quod Mallabron, 'knowe for trouthe / I am sent hether
 32 for none¹⁶ other thyng¹⁷ / but to bere the wheder as¹³
thou wylt / therefore make y^e redye / & recommaunde

He sees no vessel
to take him across
the sea,

and laments his
hard fate,

when he sees an
animal like a bear
swimming
towards him,

whose skin falls
off and reveals a
handsome man.

Huon is stricken
with wonder, and
asks him who
he is.

The man replies
that Oberon has
sent him, and
that because of
his sin he has
been condemned
to be for thirty
years a beast of
the sea.

He is to bear
Huon whither
he will.

¹ or. ² Fol. xxviii. col. 1. ³ thus still. ⁴⁻⁴ mine owne.
⁶ therefore. ⁶ These and the like. ⁷ but. ⁸ himselfe.
⁹ as. ¹⁰ yet. ¹¹ thou. ¹² for. ¹³⁻¹³ omitted.
¹⁴ Royall. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ it happened me to. ¹⁶ no. ¹⁷ cause.

thy selfe to y^e saue garde of oure lorde Ihesu Cryst, & than let me alone / than Mallabron enteryd agayne in to y^e beestys skyn / & said to huon / 'sir, mount on¹ my backe.'

4

¶ How Huon passyd y^e see vpon Mallabron, who bare hym to Babylon / & how Huon cam to y^e fyrst gate, & so to y^e .ii.

Ca. .xxxvi. 8

He enters the sea and assumes again an animal's form.



Huon leaps on his back and travels swiftly up the Nile.

¶ *W*hen Huon saw y^e beest enter agayne in to his skyn, & *that* he taryed for² / he made y^e signe of the ³crosse. And prayed god to saue & condute hym, & 12 so lept vp on hym ; & y^e beest enteryd in to y^e see, & swamme as fast as though a byrd had flowyn, so *that* with in a shorte spase he trauessyd y^e grete ryuer of Nile, the whiche *commyth* fro paradyce, 16 the⁴ whiche is a daungerous ryuer for the grete⁵ multy- tude of serpentes & cocodrylles *that* be ther in / how be it there were none *that* dyd hym any trouble / than whan they cam to lond, Huon was joyfull / than⁴ 20 Mallabron sayd / 'ryght derely shall I abyge the tyme *that* thou wert borne, or *that* euer I knewe the ; for thentent to do the pleasure I shal endure yet .x. yere lyke a beest in the see, & .xxx. yere I haue⁶ so all 24 redy, so *that*⁷ is in al .xl.⁸ I haue grete pyte of *thee* / for there is no man borne of a woman *that* knoweth y^e yll & pouerte *that* shall fall here after to *thee* / & I shall suffer myche for the loue *that* I haue to *thee* ; howbe it 28 I shal take it in pasyence / yonder thou mayst se y^e eyte whether *thou* woldest go, morouer, *thou* knowyst what hath ben commaundyd *thee* / & what *thou* hast to do, & yet what so euer fall, breke not y^e *commaunde*- 32

At length he reaches land.

Mallabron says that to serve him he will have to remain a sea-monster for ten years longer.

¹ vpon. ² him. ³ Fol. xxviii. col. 2. ⁴ and.

⁵ omitted. ⁶ been. ⁷ my time. ⁸ yeeres.

ment of kinge Oberon / & alwayes be trew & say y^e
 trouthe, for as sone as *thou* makest any ly *thou* shalt
 lese¹ the loue of kinge Oberon / thus god be *with* the, for
 4 I may no lenger tary² / thus² he went agayne *in* to the
 see, & Huon taryed there alone, recommaundyng hym-
 selfe to our lord god, & so toke the way to the cytye /
 & so³ enteryd *in without* let of any man : as² sone as
 8 he was enteryd, he met a .M. paynems goynge a hawk-
 ynge / & a nother .M. cominge homwarde / & a .M.
 horses let to be new shode / & a .M. comynge fro
 shoyng / than he sawe a .M. men plaing at the chesse,
 12 & a nother .M. *that* had played & been matyd /
 & a nother .M. talkinge & deuysinge *with* the⁴ dame-
 selles / & a nother .M. cominge fro drinking of the
 admyralles wyne, & a nother .M. going thether / whan
 16 huon al armyd had gone a grete spase *in* the cyte he
 had grete meruayle of *that* he had seen &⁵ met⁶ so
 myche⁶ people / ⁷he studyed theron so mych *that*⁴ he
 forgot the gyautes rynge on his arme / & the men *that*
 20 he mett had grete meruayle⁸ of hym to se hym go al
 armyd a fote / ⁹he went styll forth.¹⁰ Alas, y^e¹¹ vnhappy
 Huon, *that* coulde not remembre the Gyautes rynge
 aboute hys arme, for lake of remembraunce therof /
 24 he sufferyd after so myche trouble *that* ther is no
 humayne tounge can tell it, as ye shall here¹² after. At
 last he cam *in* to a grete plase before y^e fyrst gate of
 the palays, where as there stode a grete vyne tree set
 28 vpon brycke pyllers of dyuers coulours, vnder y^e
 whiche y^e admyrall Gaulys one day *in* the weke wolde
 come thether, & wold gyue audyence to al sewters.
 whan Huon had regardyd al this / he cam to y^e fyrst
 32 gate of y^e palays ; than¹³ he cryed to y^e porter & sayd /

He warns Huon
to obey Oberon's
command, and
never tell a lie.

Huon goes toward
the city of
Babylon,

and meets many
men of the
country on their
several errands.

The knight
studies the
strangers' aspect,
and forgets the
giant's ring.

The first gate of
the palace is
reached,

and Huon calls to
the porter to
open it.

¹ loose. ² So. ³ there. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ that he had.

⁶⁻⁶ such multitude of. ⁷ And. ⁸ Fol. xxviii. back, col. 1.

⁹ and yet. ¹⁰ forward. ¹¹ poore. ¹² here.

¹³ and there.

'frende, I pray the open the gate.' than¹ the porter sayd with a good wyll / 'yf thou be a sarazyn thou shalt enter.' Than Huon as vnaadysyd,² without² thi³kynges on kynges Oberons commaundement, or of y^e gyauntes 4 rynge about his arme, the whiche yf he had shewyd forth he shold not hane nedid to haue made any ly.

In answer to the man, Huon says he is a Saracen, and thus gains admission.



Han huon³ harde the paynym demande whether he were a sarasyn,⁴ he sayd, 8 'ye' / than the porter sayd, 'than may ye surely enter' / so Huon passyd the fyrst brydge & gate /

When he comes to the second gate, the knight bethinks him of the lie he has told, and how he has broken Oberon's command.

and whan he came to the seconde he remembered hym 12 selfe how he had broken kynges Oberons commaundement / wher with he was so sorowfull at his herte that he wyst not what to do, and sware than that he wolde neuer lye more / than he toke the rynge in his hande 16 and came to the secounde gate, and sayd / to the porter, 'thou vylayne, he that on the crosse dyed⁵ confounde the / open this gate / for I must enter' / whan y^e porter harde hym speke so fersly, he sayd / 20 'how is it that the fyrst porter was so hardy to suffer the⁶ to enter in at the fyrst gate?' 'I shall shew the,'

To the second porter he shows the giant's ring,

quod Huon / 'seest not thou this rynge, the whiche is a token that I may passe and go where as me lyst?' / 24 whan the porter harde hym and saw the rynge, he knewe it well, & sayd, 'syr, ye be welcome / how fayreth y^e lord⁷ that ye come fro?' Huon, who wolde not lye, passid the brydge and gane no answer, & so 28 cam to y^e thyrde gate / ⁸the porter came to hym, and Huon shewyd hym the rynge / than y^e porter lette downe the brydge and openyd the gate, and with greate reuerence salutyd Huon and sufferyd hym to passe / 32 whan Huon was thus passyd the thre br[y]dges, than he

and is at once admitted,

and to the keeper of the third gate he does the same, and passes on.

¹ And. ² 2 and forgetting himselfe, and not once, hee had. ³ or no. ⁴ died after that. ⁵ omitted.
⁶ Fol. xxviii. back, col. 2. ⁷ where.

remembered how he had made a lye at the fyrst bridge /
 and sayd to hymselfe, 'Alas! what shall become of
 me, sen¹ I haue so lyghtely broken my promys to hym
 4 that hathe done so myche for me? / alas! I forgat y^e
 ring that was aboute myne arme. how be it, I trust
 that Oberon wyll not be dyspleasyd for it, sen¹ I dyd it
 not wylfully, but that I forgat it / I trust he wyll take
 8 no more regarde to this dede then he dyd whan I blew
 the horne without any cause' / thus Huon passyd the
 thre gates of the palys.

Huon fears
Oberon's wrath.

¶ How Huon passyd y^e fourth gate, & how
 12 he cam *in* to the garden, where as was y^e
 founteyne, & of *that*² he dyd there.

Ca. .xxxvii.

16 **W**han Huon saw³ he was⁴ passyd the .iii.
 gates, he passyd⁵ y^e fourth gate *with*
 y^e ryng in his hande / for he mette
 with no man but *that*⁶ dyd hym
 honour whan they saw y^e ryng / than
 20 he sayd to y^e fourth porter, 'thou vylayne porter, ⁷god
 curse *thee*,⁷ open the gate' / whan y^e porter harde hym
 he had grete *meruayll* / & sayd, 'what art thou *that*
 art armyd & spekest so fersly to me? Lay away thyne
 24 armure, & than shew me what thou art, & whether
thou wylt go / for, armyd as *thou* art, it is not possyble
 for *thee*⁸ to enter / shew me by thy fayth how hast
thou passyd y^e .iii. other brydges' / than Huon sayd,
 28 'holde thy peace, paynym. I am a messenger sent fro
 noble kyng Charlemayne / & whether thou wylt or
 not, I wyl passe this way & go to y^e palays to y^e
 admyrall Gaudys / there is nother *thou* nor none
 32 other can⁹ let me. beholde this token *that* I shew
thee.' the paynym knew it anone, and lete down

Huon reaches the
fourth gate.

He tells how he
has come from
Charlemagne,

¹ seeing. ² which. ³ that. ⁴ had. ⁵ went on to.
⁶ still. ⁷⁻⁷ I charge thee forthwith. ⁸ omitted. ⁹ shall.

and at the sight
of the ring the
porter opens
the gate.

The man says
that the Admiral
will receive Huon
right royally
when he sees
that token.

Huon goes
onwards,

reproaching
himself with the
lie he told at the
first gate.

He enters the
Admiral's garden.

In its midst was
a fountain which

cured the sick

and made the old
young again.

¹the brygge, and openyd the gate, and kneled doune
& kyssyd & enbrassyd Huons² legge / desyrynge
hym of³ pardon in that he had causyd hym to tary so
long / 'paynym,' quod Huon, 'good day mayst thou ⁴
haue.' 'Syr,' quod the porter, 'ye may go to the
admyrall, who wyll make you good chere & grete
honour, nor⁴ there is no thyng *that* ye can desyre but
it shalbe grauntyd to⁵ you / ye, &⁶ it be his all onely ⁸
doughter, for loue of y^e lorde fro whom ye brynge this
rynge to⁴ a token; and, syr, I requyre you how doth
the lord Angalaffer? comyth he hether or not?'
'porter,' quod Huon, 'yf he come hether, all y^e deuyles ¹²
of hell must brynge hym hether;' & therwith he passeth
forth without any mo wordes / but he sayd to hym
selfe, 'a, good lorde Ihesu Cryst, helpe & ayde me in all
my besynes / I was temptyd *with* an yll⁷ spryte when ¹⁶
I made a⁸ lee at y^e fyrst gate / I dyd it by lyghtnes of
courage and⁴ lake of remembraunce, wherof I am now⁹
ryght sorye' / Huon thus beyng in dyspleasure *with*
hym selfe for the lye *that* he¹⁰ made, went forth tyll ²⁰
he came to the palays, and enteryd in to a fayre garden
wherin the admyrall tooke often tymys his pastaunce,¹¹
for there coude no tree nor freute nor flower be wyshed
for but ther they myght be found, both in somer & ²⁴
wynter / & in the myddes of this garden there was a
fayre founteyne *commynge* out of y^e ryuer Nile *that*
commyth from paradyce, the whiche founteyne as than
was of such vertue / *that* yf any syeke man dyd drynke ²⁸
therof, or wasshyd his handes & face,¹² incontynent¹³
shulde be hole / & also yf a man had bene of grete age
he shulde retourne agayne to the age of .xxx. yere /
and ³² ¹¹a woman¹¹ to become as freshe & lusty as a mayde
of .xv. yere / this founteyne had *that* vertue¹⁵ y^e spase

¹ Fol. xxix. col. 1. ² his. ³ of him *after* pardon. ⁴ for.
⁵ vnto. ⁶ if. ⁷ euill. ⁸ the. ⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ had.
¹¹ pasture. ¹² therein. ¹³ he. ¹¹⁻¹⁰ old women. ¹⁵ by.

of .ix. yere / but .x. yere after *that* Huon had ben
 there *that*¹ was dystroyed and broken by y^e Egypsyence,
 who made warre to² the admyrall *that* was as than in
 4 Babylon. ³And whan Huon had wasshyd his handes
 & faee in y^e founteyne, & dronke of y^e water / he
 behelde the palays, & thought it meruellously fayre /
 & whan he had well regarlyd it, he saw a lytell besyde
 8 the founteyne a grete serpent, who kept the founteyne,
 to the entent *that* none shulde be so hardy to drynke
 nor⁴ touche the founteyne / for yf a traytore or any man
that hath falsyd his fayth dyd touche it he coude not
 12 scape without deth / but whan the serpent saw Huon,
 he inclynyd hymselfe without makynge of semblant to
 do hym any yll / than⁵ Huon sat downe by the foun-
 teyne & began ⁶peteously to wepe,⁶ & sayd, ‘a, good
 16 lorde, without thy socoure it is impossyble for me to
 departe hense alyne. A, noble kynge Oberon, forsake
 me not now *in* this neede / for the trespas *that* I haue
 done ought to be forgyuen me, sen⁷ I dyd it neelygenly
 20 for lake of remembraunce / certenly I wyll knowe yf
 for so small a cause ye wyll leue me / wherfore, what
 so euer fall, I shall proue & assay to know y^e trouthe’ /
 than he toke his horne & blewe it so fersly / *that* kynge
 24 Oberon harde it, beyng *in* his forest / & whan he hard
 it he sayd / ‘A, good lorde,’ ⁸quod he,⁵ ‘I here the false
 knyght blow his horne, who settyth so lytell by me /
 for at the fyrst gate *that* he passyd⁸ he made a false
 28 lye / by y^e lorde *that* fornyd me, yf he blowe tyll y^e
 waynes in his neke ⁹brest a⁹ sonder, he shall not be
 socouryd for me / nor for no¹⁰ maner of myschyefe *that*
 may fall to hym.’ Than Huon, beyng *in* y^e garden,
 32 blew so sore¹¹ / *that* y^e admyrall, who was set at his
 dyner, rose fro y^e borde *with* all his lordes / & al

Huon washes his
 hands and drinks
 of the fountain,

which is kept by
 a serpent that
 destroys all false
 men.

But it does not
 touch the knight.

Huon prays to
 Oberon for help,

and blows his
 horn.
 The fairy hears it,
 and declares he
 will not succour
 him because he
 has lied.

The Admiral and
 his attendants
 hear the blast

¹ it. ² on. ³ Fol. xxix. col. 2. ⁴ or.
⁵ omitted. ⁶⁻⁶ greuouslye to lament. ⁷ seeing.
⁸ by. ⁹⁻⁹ burst in. ¹⁰ any. ¹¹ lowde.

while at dinner
within the palace,
and begin to
dance and sing.

The Admiral
asserts that some
enchanter has
found his way
into the garden,
and bids his
servants find him
and bring him
into his presence.

Meanwhile Huon,
perceiving Oberon
will not listen to
him, bitterly
grieves over his
desertion.

other ladyes & dameselles, knyghtes & squyers / boyes
& squylyons of y^e kechyn / & all other came in to y^e
palays to y^e admyral, & began to daunse & syng &
made grete ioy. the sorer¹ *that* Huon blew his horne, 4
y^e more they daunsyd & sange. And whan Huon left
blowyng, than y^e admyrall called his barons & com-
maundyd them to be armyd / and sayd, ² ‘syrs, go in
to this gardyne, for suerly there is sum enchaunter / 8
therefore take hede that he skape not, and bryng hym
alyue to me, for I wyll know of hym the cause why he
hath done this dede / for yf *that* he eskape he shall³ do
vs more yll’ / whan Huon had blowyn a longe spase 12
and saw no body come to hym, he was sore abasshyd.⁴
than he began to wepe,⁵ and sayd, ‘A, good lorde god,
now I se well myn ende aprocheth, when kyng
Oberon fayleth me, in whom I haue all my trust in lyfe 16
and deth. A, dere lady mother, & brother Gerardyn, I
shall neuer se you more. A, noble kyng Charle-
mayne, grete wrong ye haue done to me thus to
banyshe me *with* out deserte / for that / *that* I dyd, 20
was in my defence / god forgyue it you. A, kyng
Oberon, well *thou* mayest be reputyd for an vnkynde
creature, thus to leue me for on smal faulte. certenly
yf thou be a noble man I hope *thou* wylt pardon me / 24
at leste I put all to god, & to hym I submytte me ⁶&
to the blyssyd vyrgyn mary his mother.⁶ And what so
euer fall, I wyll enter in to the palayes and do my
message that kyng Charlemayn hath commaundyd me 28
to do’ / so he made hym redye and departyd fro the
founteyne / thynkyng he shulde fynde the admyrall
at dyner at that owre.⁷

¹ more.

² Fol. xxix. back, col. l.
lament.

³ will.

⁴ and.

⁵⁻⁶ omitted

⁷ time.

¶ How Huon came in to the palayes and dyd
his message to the admyrall / & how he
slew many paynymys / and¹ after² taken
4 and set³ in pryson. Ca. xxxviii.



8 **W**han Huon had ben a certen spase at
the founteyne / he departyd all armyd
& mountyd vpe the grese⁴ of the
palayes the same tyme the admyrall
had causyd .ii. of his princypall
goddess to be set in y^e myddes⁵ of the palayes, ryche-
ly besene,⁶ & before them two grete torches byrnyng⁷ / so
12 that no sarasyn passyd by them but made to them
grete reuerence / and⁸ Huon passyd by them and wolde
not ones loke on them, nor speke to no man *that* he
mette / wherof they had⁹ grete mervayll, & sayd
16 one to another, so *that* Huon¹⁰ harde them / ¹¹one of
them sayd,¹¹ ' I beleue this man *that*¹² thus enteryd in
to y^e palayes all armyd is sum messenger sent fro sum
greate prynee to y^e admyrall / & than Huon sawe a
20 paynym kynge spekyng to y^e admyrall / &¹² was
newly come to y^e admyrall, by cause *that* same day y^e
admyrall Gaudys shulde haue delyueryd to hym his
doughter, y^e fayre Esclaramonde, in maryage / & Huon
24 saw wel how he was y^e gretest prynee *that* as than was
there *with* y^e admyrall / than Huon sayd to hymselfe,
' A, good lorde, yf I acqyutte my selfe trewly to kinge
Charlemayn / I must slee this paynym kynge / I
28 thynke it be he *that* I loke for, sen¹³ he syteth so nere
to y^e admyrall / god confound me but incontynent I
¹⁴stryke of his hede / ¹⁵than let our lorde Ihesu Cryst
do *with* me at his pleasure / than Huon came nere to
32 y^e table / & drew out his sword, & there *with* gau¹⁶ the

Huon at length
mounts the steps
leading into the
palace.

He speaks to no
man as he walks
in.

Beside the
Admiral sits a
paynim king,

who has come to
woo the fair
Esclaramonde.

¹ was. ² afterward. ³ put. ⁴ degrees,
⁵ Fol. xxix. back, col. 2. ⁶ adorned. ⁷ burning.
⁸ but. ⁹ all. ¹⁰ easily. ¹¹⁻¹¹ omitted. ¹² who.
¹³ seeing. ¹⁴ will. ¹⁵ and. ¹⁶ Fol. xxx. col. 1.

Huon draws his sword and strikes off the monarch's head.

The Admiral orders Huon's arrest.

He is attacked on all sides, but his armour protects him.

He shows the ring to the Admiral,

who, on seeing it, bids no man lay hand on the knight,

and tells him he may do in his palace what he will.

Huon kisses Esclaramonde thrice,

sayd kynge suche a stroke that his hede fell on the table, so that the admyrall was therewith all bloody. Than Huon with a hye voyce sayde, 'A, good lorde, what a good begynnynge is this / the rest I remyt to 4 our lorde Ihesu Cryst, whom I requyre to ayde me to parforme y^e reste of myne enterpryse / in this poynt I haue nere quytte my selfe agaynst kynge Charlemayne.' Than the admyrall sayd to his barons / 'take this man 8 that hath done me this offence as to murder this kynge syttinge at my table / yf he escape, loke me neuer in the face' / than the paynyns assaylyd Huon on all sydes, and cast at hym dartes & swordes to haue slayne 12 hym. But his good hernes¹ sauyd hym fro the deth / & with his sworde he slew many a fell² paynym, so that none durst aproche nere hym / whan he saw *that* he was sore oppressyd, he tooke his rynge³ of his arme 16 & cast it on the table before the admyrall, & sayd / 'syr admyrall, be ware on payne of thy lyfe of doynge to me any hurt or damage, by this token that I shew the' / whan the admyrall saw the rynge, he knew it 20 well / than he began to crye / that no man shulde be so hardy as to touche hym *that* hath slayne the paynym kynge / than⁴ euery man let Huon in rest wher of he was right ioyfull / than he sayd to y^e admyrall, 'Syr, 24 I wyll fro hense forth⁵ thou do as I commaunde *thee*' / 'frende,' quod the admyrall, 'thou mayst do in my palayes what thou wylt / what soeuer thou commaunde shalbe done, no man shall say the contrary.' Than 28 Huon saw where his daughter, y^e fayre Esclaramonde, sat by her father ; than⁴ Huon went to her / & kyst her .iii. tymys before her father, wher of⁶ the damesell was sore abasshyd ; but she saw hym so fayre, & felte his 32 mouth so swete that she thought, without she myght haue hym to her loue, she shoulde dye for sorow so *that* she chaunged couloure & blusshyd as ruddye as a

¹ armor. ² bolde. ³ from. ⁴ and. ⁵ that. ⁶ at.

rose / ¹whau Huon had kyssyd y^e lady / than he went
 to the admyrall, & sayd / 'syr admyrall, know for
 trouthe² I am crystenyd / & am a messenger sent fro
 4 noble kynge Charlemayne to the / by cause there is no
 prynce, crysten nor hethen / but *that* obeyeth his
commaundementes, except thy selfe, therefore by me he
 sendeth *thee* worde / that sen³ the dolowrous day of
 8 batayll at Ronceuall,⁴ where as he lost his .ii. newewe
 Rowlaunde & Olyuer, he neuer sens assembled so
 myche people as he wyll do this next somer to come
 vpon *thee*, both by water and by londe, without thou
 12 wylt beleue in y^e law of Jhesu Cryst; therefore, yf thou
 wylt beleue me, be cristened or⁵ this myschiefe⁶ fall
 vpon the.' 'Speke no more of *that*,' quod y^e admyrall /
 'for I had rather be hewen and skayne than to leue
 16 my law to⁷ beleue vpon thy god.' 'Syr admyrall,'
 quod Huon, 'more ouer kyng Charles *commaundeth*
 y^e to sende hym an .M. sparhawkes, ⁸M. goshawkes,
⁸M. beeres, & a .M. wayters enchainyd together; ⁸M.
 20 yonge varlettes, ⁸M. fayre dameselles / and also a
 handfull of thy berde, & .iiii. of thy grete teth.' 'A,'
 quod y^e admyrall / 'I se *thou* arte hardy & outragious
 to demaund of me this *that* thou hast sayd. And also
 24 I haue grete meruayll of thy mayster *that* he is so
 foolysse⁹ to *commaunde* me by *thee* to send hym my
 berde & grete teth / or¹⁰ this tyme he hath sent me mo
 than .xv. messengers, & hath demaundyd parte of this¹¹
 28 thou spekest of / but all .xv. hath ben hangyd, &¹²
thou art come by thy folly, ¹³shalt make¹³ the .xvi. But
 by reason of the ryng *that thou* berest we dare not
 touch *thee*. But I pray the,¹¹ by the fayth & law *that*
 32 *thou* art of, shew me what deuell hath gyuen *thee* that
 ryng' / *thou* Huon, sore abasshyd as he that dorst not

and, addressing the Admiral, says that Charlemagne has sent him,

and unless the monarch promises him fealty and will be converted, the Emperor will make war upon him with a mighty host.

The Admiral refuses to become a Christian.

Huon tells him all else that Charlemagne demands of him.

The Admiral warns Huon that fifteen envoys have come to him making the like demand, and have all met their death at his hands.

¹ Fol. xxx. col. 2. ² that. ³ since. ⁴ Roncevaux.
⁵ else. ⁶ will. ⁷ and. ⁸ a. ⁹ as. ¹⁰ before.
¹¹ that. ¹² nowe. ¹³⁻¹³ to make up. ¹¹ therefore.

make a lye, for fere of kyng Oberon, sayd / 'sir,¹ for
dought of the, nor² of no³ paynem here, I wyl not
spare to shew the y^e trouth. know well⁴ *that with*
this good sworde I haue slayn y^e lord Angolaffer y^e 4
gyaunt' / whan⁵ the admyrall harde that, he sayde to
his lordes, 'Syr, loke that this ribauld⁶ skape not,
for by al the goddes that I beleue on, I shal neuer haue
ioy in my herte tyll⁷ I se hym taken.' Than paymymys 8
and sarasyns on all partes assaylled Huon / whan he
saw *that*, he recommaundyd hym selfe to our lord god ;
he⁸ thought he shulde neuer se fayre daye more / and
so with his sworde in both hys handes he defendyd 12
hym selfe nobly in sleynge and cuttyng of handes /
armes / and fete / of the sarasyns, & of maney he made
the braynes to fly abrode on the payment. Grete orroure⁹
it was to behold / for by reason of his good harnes¹⁰ 16
there was no paynym coude do hym any damage / but
they gaue hym way, nor durst aproche nere hym.
Huon beyng full of yre, as he fought, he sawe on the
one syde of the palayes an arche in the wall, & so, euer 20
styll fyghtyng, he drew thether, & set his backe to the
arche, to thentent that none shulde come behynd hym /
there he faryd lyke a wyld bore in y^e wood, & de-
fendyd hymselfe in suche wyse, *that* whom so euer he 24
towchyd *with* a full stroke, had no nede after of any
surgyon / thus along spase Huon enduryd, & had no
grete damage.¹¹ But the force of y^e paynymys was so
grete that it was not possyble for hym to susteyn 28
longe / &¹² he waxyd so wery that his strokes fleblyde /
often tymes he called apon god¹³ & on the vyrgyn
mary¹³ / & on the other parte the admyrall cryed to his
men & sayde, 'a, ye feynt hertyd knaues,¹¹ greate shame 32
it is to you all that one man shall so longe endure

Huon tells how
he obtained the
magic ring.

The Admiral
orders his men to
seize Huon.

A fierce fight
takes place.

Huon sets his
back to an arch
in the wall and
defends himself
like a wild boar.

¹ not. ² or. ³ any. ⁴ then. ⁵ Fol. xxx. back, col. 1.

⁶ villaine. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ and. ⁹ terrour. ¹⁰ armour.

¹¹ harme. ¹² for. ¹³⁻¹³ omitted. ¹¹ slaues.

agaynst you all,¹ that ye can nother take hym nor sle
 hym / than the paynymes, whan they harde the
 admyrall so dysprayse them / they came in a grete rage
 4 all at ones vpon Huon, where as he was alone vnder
 the arche. than a paynym who was neuwe to the
 admyrall, cam vpon Huon; ²whan Huon saw hym
 aproche, he lyft vp his sworde & gaue ³the paynym ⁴on
 8 the helme⁴ suche a stroke *that* he claue his hede to the
 brest, and ther with his sworde fell out of his handes /
 and another sarasyn tooke it vp / than all the sarasins
 at ones ran vpon Huon, & tooke hym, and so⁵ tooke
 12 fro hym his horne and cuppe, and dyd⁶ of his harnes⁷ /
 whan he was vnamyd, the sarasyns behelde hym well,
 and many sayde how they neuer saw so fayre a man
 before, affermyng that yf al frenche men were such as
 16 he is,¹ there were no kinge able to resyste them.

He slays the
Admiral's
nephew.

Huon is at length
overcome by
weariness, and is
disarmed.

¶ Of the grete compleyntes that Huon made
 beyng in pryson / and how the admyralles
 doughter cam to comforte hym / & how she
 20 departyd not well content with Huon.

Capitulo .xxxix.

24 **W**han Huon was dysarmyd, y^e paynims
 tooke & brought hym before the
 admyrall, who was ryght ioyfull whan
 he sawe Huon, and called his barons,
 8 and demaunded of them what dethe
 the caytyff shuld dy that had done them suche damage
 28 as to sle one of his moste puyssaunt kynges, and also
 his nepheu, besyde many other. then they all answered
 with one voyce, that he shulde be slayne all quycke⁹
 incontynent / then stept fourth an olde auneynt

He is brought
before the
Admiral, who asks
his barons what
punishment he
should suffer.

All are in favour
of immediate
death,

¹ omitted. ² but. ³ Fol. xxx. back, col. 2.
⁴⁻⁴ after stroke. ⁵ then. ⁶ put. ⁷ armour.
⁸ Fol. xxxi. col. 1. ⁹ alive.

except an aged councillor, who reminds the Admiral that on this day, according to their law, none ought to die at their hands, and advises that Huon should be respited for a year.

The old man asks whether Huon ought not to be thanked for the death of the giant Angolaffer Galafre.

Huon is led off to prison.

He reproaches Oberon.

admyrall of .vi. score yeres of age, and¹ was of the admyralles prey councell, and² sayd, 'sir admyrall, ye may not do thus for the loue of this good day, the whiche is of y^e fest of saynte Iohnn / accorlyng to our⁴ law, ther ys none ought to dye on that day / but, syr, respgh^t his lyfe for a hole yere, the which³ shalbe the fest of your goddes: on that day ye ought to de-lyuer .ii.⁴ Champyons to do with them your sacrefyce; 8 lett this man be one / and another shall⁵ come be that tyme; and whiche of tho .ii. champyons be ouer come, ye shall make your sacrefyce to your goddes of hym; thus ye promysed your goddes to do the fyrst 12 day that ye toke on you the syngnyory of Babylone / and, syr, yf it were not for that this man hath slayne one of your kinges & your nephew, ye ought not to slee hym, but rather to thanke hym / for by hym the man 16
⁶in the worlde⁶ that ye ought moste to hate is slayne, that⁷ was the gyant⁷ Angolaffer, for⁸ now by his deth ye are out of all seruytude and bondage, and by hym⁹ sett at lyberte / when the Admyrall gaudis had well 20 herde the paynem, he sayd, 'sen¹⁰ it is so that ye gyue me this counsell / and that of ryght myne aunseters hath¹¹ acustomyd the same, I wyll not do the contrary, but it shall be as ye haue sayd.' then was Huon led 24 with .iiii. paynems to a darke preson, & the Jayler was commaunded to gyue hym mete & drinke suffyeyent / when Huon saw how he was in preson, he was ryght sorowfull, and began to remembre the noble duches hys 28 mother, and Gererde his brother / and sayd, 'a, Oberon, how is it that¹² thou art soo vnkynnd & outragyons to me / for so lytell¹³ ¹⁴offence to suffer me¹⁵ endure this greate mysery, for I knowe well it is not vnknown to 32 thee that the offence that I haue done was but alonely¹⁶

¹ who. ² he. ³ and then. ⁴ .xi. ⁵ may.
⁶ after hate. ⁷⁻⁷ is. ⁸ and. ⁹ this man.
¹⁰ seeing. ¹¹ haue ener. ¹² omitted. ¹³ an.
¹⁴ Fol. xxxi. col. 2. ¹⁵ to. ¹⁶ only.

by forgetfulnes.' Now lett vs leue spekyng of Huon,
 and speke¹ of the fayre Escaramonde, daughter to
 the admyrall. when she saw it was nyght, & she all
 4 a lone in her bedde / she remembered the frenche
 knyght who had kyssyd her .iii. tymes in y^e presence
 of her father, and she was in greate sorow by cause he
 was sett² in presone, and sayd to her selfe, 'without he
 8 were a knyght of grete enterpryse he wolde neuer haue
 ben so hardy to haue done as he hath done this day
 in dyuers maners' / wherfore she sayd he was well
 worthy to be belouyd & socoured / then incontynent
 12 she rose & made her redy / and preuely she toke a
 torche of wax in her hand and lyghted it, & yssuyd
 out of her chaumbre as preuely as she coule: it was
 about mydnyght, and every man was aslepe in the
 16 palayes. she went straye to the prison, and came
 at so good a tyme that she found the Jayler³ aslepe /
 then she stole awaye the kayes, and wente & openyd the
 prison dore; and⁴ when Huon saw the candel⁵ lyght
 20 & y^e dore of the prison open, he was in grete fere leest
 they wold take hym out to put hym to dethe, or to
 do hym sum⁶ dyspleasure / then⁷ he began to make
 pytyfull complayntes / the lady, who could well speke
 24 frenche, vnderstode all Huons *complantes*, and re-
 memberyd his name, bycause the day before she had
 harde hymselfe shew her father hys name. then she
 sayd, 'Huon, dysmay the⁸ not; I am Escaramond,
 28 daughter to y^e Admyrall, whom, this day passed, thou
 dyd kys .iii. tymes in the presence of my father; if it
 be so that thou wylt fullfyll my wyll, I shall put to my
 payne⁹ to delyuer the out of prison / for I am so
 32 ¹⁰amorous of ¹⁰thee that euer sen¹¹ thou dedest kys me
 I haue had none other thought nor ymagynaeyon but

Escaramonde
 laments Huon's
 imprisonment,

and secretly at
 midnight goes
 towards the
 prison.

She confesses to
 Huon her love
 for him.

¹ say somewhat. ² put. ³ fast. ⁴ But. ⁵ torch.
⁶ other. ⁷ whereupon. ⁸ omitted. ⁹ endeavour.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ affectionate towards. ¹¹ since.

onely on the and¹ to brynge the out of y^e daunger
²that thou art in.' 'Dame,'³ quod Huon, 'god rewarde
 you ⁴of the⁴ greate curtesaye that ye wold do to⁵ me ;
 but, fayre lady Esclaramond, ye be⁶ a sarazyn, and I am 4
 crystened. trew it is, in that I dyd kys you,⁷ was by
 the *commaundement* of kyng Charlemayne, who sent
 me hether,⁸ but or⁹ elles I had rather to haue bene here
 in *perpetuall* pryson / then to haue touched eny *parte* 8
 of your flesh¹⁰ or mouthe as long as ye be a saryzyn.'
 'Huon,' quod the lady, 'sen¹¹ thou art of that mynd,
 thou shalt end thy dayes here in *preson* miserably, nor¹²
 neuer trust me, for¹³ yf I can, I shall cause y^e derely to 12
 aby the refuce¹⁴ *that* thou haste made me.' Then the
 lady Esclaramonde departed fro the pryson and came
 to the Jayler, and awoke hym, & sayed, 'frend, I charge
 the on payne of thy lyfe / that to this frenche *prisoner* 16
 within thy kepyng, that¹⁵ these iii dayes and .iii.
 nyghtes thou gyue hym nother mete nor drynke.'
 'Dame,'³ quod the Jayler, 'your *commaundement*
 shall be fulfilled.' then y^e lady for dysplasure wente 20
 agayne to her bed ryght pensyue and full of fantesyes/
 & Huon was .iii. dayes & .iii. nyghtes without mete or
 drynke, & on the .iiii. day he sayd, all wepyng,¹⁶ 'A,
 good horde, I see well I muste¹⁷ dye for hungre ; I 24
 humbly require the to ayde & socoure me, and graunt
 me the grace *that* I¹⁸ consent nor do eny thyng that
 shuld¹⁹ be ayenst thy pleasure, or ayenst thy holy law,
 for ony trybulacyon that can cum to me' / Thus this⁹ 28
 noble Huon *complayned* all wepyng¹⁶ ; ¹²there is²⁰ no
 creature that had harde hym but ²¹that shuld²¹ haue
 ben *parte* takers of his greate sorowes.

Huon reminds
 Esclaramonde that
 she is a Saracen,

and he ought
 never to have
 approached her


Esclaramonde
 departs in wrath,
 and bids the
 gaoler keep his
 prisoner three
 days without food
 or drink.

The request is
 obeyed, and Huon
 fears he will die
 for lack of
 sustenance.

¹ how. ² Fol. xxxi. back. col. 1. ³ Madame. ⁴⁻⁴ for your.
⁵ vnto. ⁶ are. ⁷ but that. ⁸ so to doe. ⁹ omitted.
¹⁰ bodie. ¹¹ seing. ¹² and. ¹³ but. ¹⁴ refusall.
¹⁵ for. ¹⁶ sorowing. ¹⁷ heere. ¹⁸ neither.
¹⁹ shall. ²⁰ was. ²¹⁻²¹ he would.

¶ How Huon made grete *complaintes* for the
 faunye that he endured, and how the fayre
 Esclaramonde came¹ to *comforte* hym so²
 4 that Huon wolde fulfyll her desyre.

Capitulo .xxxix[a].³

4  Hus, as ye haue herd before, Huon
 8 complayned peteusly, for he had ben
 .iii. dayes and .iii. nyghtes without
 sustenance. ⁵y^e lady Esclaramonde,
 who caused it, every mornynge &
 every euenynge came⁶ to the *prison* to here what
 12 Huon wold say, and euer she would demaunde ⁷Huon
 yf he were eny other wyse aduysed to answeere her
 or not, & euer she founde hym at one poynte / and⁸
 at the last, when she saw *that*,⁹ then she demaundyd of
 16 hym / ¹⁰yf she delyueryd hym out of preson yf¹¹ he would
 then *promyse* her to lede her with hym into Fraunce, & to
 take hyr to his wyf when he cam ther. 'yf thou wylt
promyse me this,' *quod* she, 'thou shalte haue mete &
 20 drynke suffyeyent at thy pleasure.' 'Dame,'¹² *quod*
 Huon, 'I promyse you faythfully,¹³ though I shulde be
 for euer dampned in hell,¹³ I shall do your pleasure,
 what so euer fall¹⁴ to me therby' / 'then know for
 24 trouthe,' *quod* the lady, ¹⁰'for the loue of the I wyll
 become crystened & beleue in the law of our¹⁵ lord
 Ihesu / Cryst as sone as we come in¹⁶ eny place where as
 it may be.'¹⁷ Huon thanked her / ⁵then she causyd
 28 hym to haue mete & drynke, wherof he was ioyfull /

Esclaramonde
 visits the prison
 day by day,

and promises to
 set him free,
 if he will take
 her with him
 to France,
 and make her his
 wife.

She is willing to
 become a
 Christian.

Huon thanks her,
 and agrees to all
 her plans.

¹ againe.² conditionally.³ The original has two chapters numbered xxxix.⁴ Fol. xxxi. back, col. 2. ⁵ and.⁶ before first every : second every omitted. ⁷ of.⁸ But. ⁹ he still continued in that manere.¹⁰ that. ¹¹ whether. ¹² Madame.¹³⁻¹³ that upon your forsaking Paganisme, and conuersion
 to our christian faith.¹⁴ happen. ¹⁵ the. ¹⁶ to. ¹⁷ done.

Esclarmonde tells
the gaoler to go
to her father,
and say that
Huon is dead.

The gaoler serves
Huon faithfully,
and keeps the
secret.

then¹ she callyd y^e Jayler & sayd, ‘go thy way in haste to the Admyrall my father, and shew² hym how³ the freuche knyght is deed .iii. dayes past for⁴ feblenes and hungre’ / ‘Dame,’⁵ quod the Jayler, ‘I am redy to do 4 your *commaundement*,’ & so he wente to the Admyrall & sayd, ‘*sir*, the freuche knyght that was in my kepinge ys deed for⁶ famyn .iii. dayes past.’ ‘a,’⁷ quod the Admyrall, ‘I am sory therfor; but sen⁸ it wyll be⁹ none other wyse I must ouer¹⁰ passe it, but I had rather *that* he were aliue.’ & thus, as ye haue harde, Huon was respyted¹¹ from the¹² deth / ¹³it is a *commen*¹⁴ sayeng,³ one day of respyte¹⁵ is worth ¹⁶.c. yere.¹⁷ then ¹² the Jayler returned to the preson vnto the lady, and shewed her what he had saed to the Admyrall / ‘well, friend,’ quod the lady, ‘if thou wylt be secrete I shall make *thee*¹⁸ ryche for euer as¹⁹ to ayde me in such things ¹⁶ as I wolde haue²⁰ / ‘Dame,’²¹ quod he, ‘to dye in the quarell I shall do you seruyse suche as ye *commaunde* me, the fere of deth shall not lett me to do it.’ Now lett vs leue spekyng of Huon, who was often tymes ²⁰ vysyted *with* the Jayler, and had all thynges as he desyred, and was well lodged at his pleasure / ¹Let vs now speke of Gerames & of *them that* were *with* hym in the castell of the gyant. 24

¶ How Gerames & his company departed from the towre, & the damesell with *them*, and cam to babylon, & of the maner that Gerames held²² to know sum newes of Huon. Capitulo .xl.

¹ and. ² tell. ³ that. ⁴ through. ⁵ Ladie. ⁶ by.
⁷ Alas. ⁸ seeing. ⁹ be *after* otherwyse.
¹⁰ ouer *after* it. ¹¹ deliuered. ¹² *omitted*.
¹³ for. ¹⁴ but a very true. ¹⁵ deliuerance.
¹⁶ u. ¹⁷ of endurance. ¹⁸ Fol. xxxii. col. l.
¹⁹ helping. ²⁰ thee. ²¹ Madame.
²² vsed.

4 **W**E haue herd here before how Huon
 departed fro the towre of the Gyant,
 and lefte there Gerames & all his
 company, with the damesell his
 cousyn. they taryed theyr .iii.
 monethes, and neuer herd eny thyng of Huon, wherof
 they were sorowfull / and¹ went fourthe² in a² moren-
 8 ynge & came to the sees syde, to se yf they myght here
 eny worde³ of ther lorde Huon; and as they lokyd in
 to⁴ the see they spyed a shyppe charged with .xxx.
 paynemes and grete ryches / then⁵ Gerames saw how
 12 the shipp was commynge to that porte / then⁶ he sayd
 to his company, 'syr, lett vs go and se yf we can
 know eny tydynges of Huon by them' / then they
 went to the port, & by that tyme⁷ the maryners had
 16 caste ther anere / then Gerames demaunded of them
 whense they were, & whether they wold go. 'sir,'
 quod they, 'we wolde go to the Mesque to paye to
 Angolafer, the grete gyant, a trybute that we are
 20 bound euery yere to paye / and,⁸ syr, we desyre you to
 shew vs wher we myght⁹ fynde hym' / and when
 Gerames saw how⁷ thy were all aloude out of the shyp,
 he sayd, 'a, ye vnhappy paynems, ye shall neuer
 24 departe hens, for he that ye demaunde for is deed /
 and all ye shall bere hym good¹⁰ company.'

¶ Then Gerames sayd to his company, 'syr, let all
 these paynems be slayne' / & then incontynent they
 28 sett vppon them, so that all the paynems were slayne,
 not one that¹⁰ seaped a lyue / for the crysten men were
 armyd, and the paynems without harnes¹¹ or eny wepyn /
 for other wyse they durste not cum alond for fere of
 32 the gyant. then Gerames entred in to the shyp and
 toke all that they founde theyr, and bare it into the

For three months
 Gerames and his
 company tarry
 for Huon in the
 giant's tower.

They go to the
 sea-shore to seek
 news of him,
 when a ship filled
 with Saracens
 sails up.

The voyagers are
 come to pay their
 yearly tribute to
 the giant,
 and ask Gerames
 where they may
 find him.

Gerames replies
 that he is dead,
 and that his
 questioners shall
 share his fate.

All the paynims
 are slain,
 although they
 are unarmed.

¹ They. ²⁻² one. ³ newes. ⁴ vpon.

⁵ and. ⁶ wherefore. ⁷ that. ⁸ therefore.

⁹ Fol. xxxii, col. 2. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ armour.

towre / & then they wente to dyner, and made grete ¹of¹
 that aduenture, and after dyner Gerames sayd, ' syrs, yf
 we were now in Fraunce, and² kynge Charlemayne dyd³
 demaunde of vs what is become of Huon, ye know well ⁴
 ther is none of vs can tell whether he be alyue or
 deed / for yf we shulde say² he is deed / &⁴ after warde
 returne home, then we shulde be reputed for false men
 euer after, bothe we and our chyldren / ⁵a man may be ⁸
 a presoner .xiiii. or .xv. yere, and yet come home agayne
 at the last safe and sounde / But, syrs, and ye wyll
 beleue me, we shall do lyke trew men / we haue as
 now in this port a good shyppe, well furness-hyd with ¹²
 euery thyng / and we haue here gold and syluer
 plenty / and we shall sone vytell our shype / and then
 lett vs take the see, & neuer rest saylyng tyll⁶ we here
 sum newes of our lord Huon / and yf we do thus, then ¹⁶
 we do as trew men ought to do / and I desyre you all
 euery man shew his aduise⁷ / then, without takyng of
 any longer respyt, they answeyrd all *with* one voyce
 that they were redy to accomplesse all that he had ²⁰
 deuysed : then⁸ they tooke gold and syluer, and all ther
 ryches, and bare it in to the shyppe, & furnysshed it
with wyne, bysket, salt flesshe, ⁹and artelery / and
 when ther shyp was garnysshed, they put in theyr ²⁴
 horses & ther armure / & they all .xiii. companyons
 entred in to the shype, and the damsell with them. then
 they wayed vp ther aneres & hawsed vp ther sayle,
 and so lefte the towre of the Gyant all voyd, and no ²⁸
 man therin, & thus they sayled alonge the cost tyll⁶
 they came into the hye see, and so long they sayled tyl
 they came to Damyete / & there they entred into the
 ryuer of Nyle / and so longe they sayled therin / that ³²
 they aryued at Babylon, and came to the port, and

Gerames advises
 the knights to
 sail with him in
 the Saracens' ship,

and seek out
 Huon.

All agree to follow
 his counsel.

They fit out the
 ship for the
 voyage,

and sail into the
 high sea till they
 reach Damietta.

Passing up the
 Nile,
 they arrive at
 Babylon.

¹⁻¹ joy for. ² that. ³ should. ⁴ he.
⁵ for. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ herein. ⁸ So.
⁹ Fol. xxxii. back, col. 1.

tooke out theyr horses. Gerames, that knew well the
 langage and the maner of the enterynge in to¹ y^e .iiii.
 gates, sayd to his company / 'syr, lett vs lepe² on our
 4 horses, & let vs enter into y^e cyte to se yf we may
 here eny newes of our master Huon.' thus they rode
 fourthe & entred in to the cyte / ³then gerames sayd,
 'syr, we wyll go to the palayes, but when we come
 8 there holde you all your pease, & suffer me to speke,
 wherfore it is conuenient that ye all agre to my
 wordes, and say not the contrary' / they answeyrd and
 sayd they were contente so to do / ³thus they rode
 12 togyther through the towne. 'A, good lord,' quod
 Gerames, 'I beseche the of thy grace to graunt vs that
 we may here sum good tydynge of our mayster, Huon
 of Burdeux, for whom we be in iuberdy of dethe' / so
 16 they passyd all the .iiii. brydges and gates, by reason
that Gerames shewed fourth suche reasons *that* the
 porters were content / then they came before the greate
 hall, and theyr they alyghted, and mounted vp all
 20 .xiii., and the damsell with them; and when they were
 in the hall they saw the Admyrall gaudys syttyng on
 a ryche chayre, garmysshed with gold and presyous
 stones / and Gerames that coulde well speke the langage
 24 sarazin,⁴ cam before y^e Admyrall and sayd / 'the same
 Mahounde⁵ that causeth ⁶to grow⁶ y^e wine and y^e⁷
 corne saue and kepe ye Admyrall gaudys, whom ⁸I se
 theyr syttyng amonge his barons' / 'Frende,' quod the
 28 admyrall, 'thou art welcom. I pray the shew me what
 thou art, & whether thou wouldest go' / 'syr,' quod
 Gerames, ⁹'I shew⁹ you playnely I am come from the
 good cyte of mombraunte, and am sonne to kyng
 32 yuoryn.' when the Admyrall hard that / he rose vp on
 his fete and sayd, 'thou art welcome, the sonne of my
 brother / fayre nepheu, I pray you shew me how dothe

They disembark,
 and mounting
 their horses, ride
 through the city.

Gerames,
 although he
 knows of the
 four gates,
 promises to lead
 them to the
 palace.

He induces the
 porters to let them
 through the gates,
 and they come to
 the great hall,
 and having
 dismounted,

together enter
 the presence of
 the Admiral.

Gerames salutes
 him in the
 Saracen tongue.

He feigns himself
 to be son to king
 Ivoryn,
 and to have come
 from the city of
 Mombraunt,

whereupon the
 Admiral bids
 him welcome,

¹ all. ² mount. ³ &. ⁴ after langage. ⁵ god. ⁶⁻⁶ after corne.
⁷ omitted. ⁸ Fol. xxxii. back, col. 2. ⁹⁻⁹ to tell.

believing
Gerames to be
his nephew.

Gerames pretends
that the twelve
Frenchmen with
him have been
sent by Ivoryn

to be imprisoned
by the Admiral
his brother.

Gerames is given
command of
everything in the
Admiral's house,

and is named
his chief
chamberlain.

Gerames thus
takes charge of
his companions.

The Admiral
warns him not
to starve them,
as Huon of
Burdeux,
a recent prisoner,
was starved to
death.

mi brother yuoryn' / 'syr,' quod Gerames, 'when I
departyd fro hym I lefte hym in good helth, and he
saluted you by me / and hath sent here to you .xii.
frenchemen by me, the which were taken vpon the 4
see as they were goynge a pylgrymage to the holy
sepulcre of god¹ in Jeruzalem / and he desyret^h you to
put them in preson vnto² the day of saynt Johnn the
Baptyst, at whyche day ye must make the fest of your 8
goddes / and then to brynge them into the medow here
without, and to³ tye & bynde them to stakes, and lett
your archers shote at them, to the entent to know who
shoteth best / and⁴ this damsell that is here with me / 12
she to be put to your doughter to teche hyr to speake
perfeyghtly the ⁵language of frenche'⁵ / 'fayre
nepheu,' quod the Admyrall, 'as ⁶ye haue denyed⁶ yt
shalbe done / and I giue you powre to commaund eury 16
thyng in thys house at your pleasure, and I pray you
shew me what ys your name' / 'syr,' quod he, 'I am
callyd Jeracle' / 'well,' quod the Admyrall, 'fro hense
furthe I retayne you to be as my chefe chamberlayne, 20
and I wyll that ye haue the kaye of the preson in your
kepynge, and therin to put these caytyues⁷ and to do
with them at your pleasure. ⁸I wyll ye loue them but
a lytell⁸ / but let them haue mete & drynke suffyeyent 24
that they dye not for⁹ famyn / as but late¹⁰ dyed a
frencheman that was sent to me by kynge Charles of
Fraunce, who was callyd Huon of burdeux, the whiche
was a ryght fayre yonge man.' 28

11 **W**Han Gerames herd that, he had before¹² neuer
¹³so grete¹³ sorowe at his herte / for¹⁴ his dyspleasure and

Gerames is angry
and grieved at the
Admiral's words
concerning
Huon's sad end,

¹ Christ. ² vntill. ³ there. ⁴ as for.

⁵⁻⁵ french language. ⁶⁻⁶ he hathe appointed. ⁷ captiues.

⁸⁻⁸ extend vnto them what kindnesse you please.

⁹ with. ¹⁰ lately. ¹¹ Fol. xxxiii. col. 1.

¹² after neuer. ¹³⁻¹³ greater.

¹⁴ then (hearing of the death of Huon).

yre¹ was so gret that he hadde nere hande rymne vpon
 y^e Admyrall / and he was so angry² in his herte³ that
 he toke vp a staffe that laye by hym, & gaue eche of
 4 the frensshe men such strokes on theyr hedes that the
 blode ranne downe, but they suffred it, and durst not
 styre, they were in such fere of the Admyral / but
 then⁴ cursed Gerames for his strokes / who dyd it for
 8 the nones.⁵ And when the Admyrall saw how he had
 well beten y^e frensshemen he sayd, 'fayre nephew, it
 semyth wel by you that ye loue⁶ but lytell⁶ these crysten
 men.' 'Syr,' quod he, 'I hate these crysten men more
 12 than ony men in the worlde / for, syr, all the way that
 I haue come I haue thus betten them thre tymes in
 euery day in the honor of my god Mahounde, and in the
 dyspyte of the⁷ lawe⁸ of Jesu chryste,⁸ on whome they
 16 beleue.' thus then Gerames departed fro y^e Admyral /
 & lede with them the .xii. Frenche prysoners / betynge
 them tyll he came to y^e pryson / and none of them
 durste speke one worde / but to them selfe they cursed
 20 Gerames. And as they went to⁹ y^e pryson warde¹⁰ they
 met with the lady Esclaramond / and she sayd,
 'cosyn / I am ryght ioyous of your comyng / but yf I
 durst trust in you / I wolde shewe you a secrete mater /
 24 so that ye promyse not to dyscouer me' / 'cosyn,'
 quod Gerames / 'by my faythe that I owe to my god
 Mahounde, ye maye well shewe me youre wyll &
 plesure / for¹¹ myn eyen¹² to be drawn out I shall neuer
 28 dyscouer you.' & when the damsell herd that promys /
 she sayd / 'fayre¹³ cosyn, it is a .v. monthes passed¹⁴ /
 theyr cam to my fader the Admyrall a Frensshe
 knyght with a message fro kyng Charlemayn, who
 32 called hymselfe Huon of Burdeux /¹⁵ who, when he had

but not to excite
 suspicion,
 he cudgels the
 Frenchmen.

Esclaramonde
 meets Gerames
 leading his
 companions to
 prison.

She tells Gerames
 how, although
 the Admiral
 believes Huon
 dead, he is still
 alive.

¹ anger. ² vexed. ³ mind. ⁴ they. ⁵ nonst.

⁶⁻⁶ after men. ⁷ their. ⁸⁻⁸ and God.

⁹ towards. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ if. ¹² were.

¹³ Deare. ¹⁴ since. ¹⁵ Fol. xxxiii. col. 2.

done his message / he slew a paynym kynge as he sate
at the table by my fader / & after came and kyst me
.iii. tymes¹ / & after² slew many sarazins / wherfor at
last he was taken prysoner & set³ in pryson, where as
4 he is yet / howe be it, I made my fader byleue that he
is deed for⁴ famyn ; ⁵how be it,⁵ cosyn, he is as yet
⁶on lyue,⁶ as wel serued of mete & drynke as my
fader is.' 8

When Gerames vnderstode y^e damsell Esclara-
mond / he was bothe sorowfull & angry / for
he thought the damsell dyd it to dysceyue him, & to
cause hym to shew forth the secretnes of hys mynde / 12
& by cause ⁷of *that*⁷ doute⁸ he passed forth & made no
maner of answeere to the damsell / but came to y^e
pryson, & put in the prysoners rudely ; & the damsell
returned ryght sorowfull in that she had shewed so 16
muche of her mynd to Gerames, whom she toke for her
cosyn / when Gerames had set³ the .xii. freysshemmen in
pryson, he returned ryght sorowful / & Huon, beynge
in the pryson. had grete meruayle what prysoners they 20
were that were let downe in to the pryson / ⁹he could
not se them, the pryson was so darke / then he drew
nere to them to here them speke / so¹⁰ at laste one of them
began to make his complaynt, & sayd / ' a, good lorde 24
Jesu cryst, socour vs, for thou knowest wel this that we
suffre we haue not deserued it,¹¹ but it is for y^e loue of
our yong lord, Huon of Burdeux / we haue loued hym
so well *that* nowe we be loste for euer / ¹²dere lorde 28
Jesu cryst, haue pyte on our soules¹² / when Huon
herde what they sayd / then he knewe well² they were
crystened & freysshe men / ⁹then he coueyted moche to
know what they were, & so aproched nere to them & 32

Gerames fears she
has deceived him,

and says nothing
to her.

He sets the
Frenchmen in
prison.

Huon could not
see them through
the darkness of
the prison,
but he hears one
of them making
complaint of his
hard fate.

Huon knows
from their speech
that they are
Frenchmen,

¹ before my Fathers face. ² that. ³ put. ⁴ with.
⁵⁻⁶ yet, deere. ⁶⁻⁶ aloue and. ⁷⁻⁷ he was in.
⁸ thereof. ⁹ for. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ omitted.
¹²⁻¹² except. deere Lord, thou haue mercie vppon vs.

sayd / 'syr, ye that be here, I pray you shewe me
 what ye be, & how ye be come hyder' / 'syr,' *quod*
 one of them, 'trewe it is a¹ fyue monthes passed theyr
 4 departed from vs a yong knyght, with whom² we
 departed³ out of the realme of Fraunce / and he was
 borne in Fraunce, and sone to a noble Duke / called
 duke Seuyne of Burdeux / this knyght slewe Charlet,
 8 sone to the⁴ kyng Charlemayne, by a mysaduenture,
 wherfore he was banysshed out of y^e realme of
 Fraunce / & sent by kyng Charlemayne to doo a
 message to the Admyrall Gaudys, who⁵ is deed in
 12 pryson, as it is shewed vs / & syr, we went³ to seke for
 him, and are betrayed by one of our owne company.'
 &⁴ when Huon herde hym speke / he knewe hym well,
 & sayd / 'syr, be of good comferte & make good chere,
 16 for I am here,⁴ Huon, safe & in good helth, thanked
 be god & the Admyralles doughter / who is so amorous⁶
 of me that she hath sau'd my lyfe / ye shall see soone
 how she wyll come & vysyt vs⁷ But I pray you, syrs,
 20 what is become of the⁴ old Gerames / whyther he be
 lefte behynde to kepe the toure with the damsell my
 cosyn, who I lefte in your kepyng' / 'syr,' *quod*
 they, 'a wors creature, ⁸ more vntrue⁸ traytour was
 24 neuer borne / for he hath betrayed vs & hath beten
 & put vs in this⁴ pryson / & as for y^e damsell, she
 is with the Admyralles doughter' / when Huon par-
 ceuyed that all they were of his company / he went &
 28 kyssed⁹ them, & sayd, 'syr, knowe of a surety that all
 that Gerames hath done is¹⁰ to the entent to delyuer vs
 all / ¹¹ I knowe so well¹¹ the trouth of Gerames. Syrs,
 make good chere / for as soone as nyght cometh we
 32 shal be vysyted *with grete ioye*' / 'syr,' *quod* they,

and asks them
 how they came
 thither.

They tell their
 story,

and Huon reveals
 himself.

They bitterly
 complain of
 Gerames'
 apparent
 treachery,

but Huon tells
 them that
 Gerames is
 seeking by such
 devices to save
 them.

¹ that. ² Fol. xxxiii. back, col. 1. ³ came. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ and he. ⁶ enamoured. ⁷ me. ⁸⁻⁸ or more false.

⁹ embraced. ¹⁰ done.

¹¹⁻¹¹ out of prison. I doe so well know.

'surely we byleued that Gerames had forsaken the faythe of Iesu¹ Cryst &² become a sarazyn / for he hath made the Admyrall byleue that he is sone to his brother, kynge yuoryn of Montbraut.' when Huon⁴ herd that, he had grete ioye at his herte, & sayd / 'a, good lorde, the trouthe of Gerames and loue that he hath³ all wheres³ shewed to me / shall be to vs ryght profytable in y^e spyte of⁴ Oberon, who hath forsaken⁸ S⁵me for a small offence / by Gerames we shal be delyuered out of this pouerte & daunger.' Now leueth thystory⁶ to speke of Huon / & his company, beyng in pryson, & ⁷speketh of⁷ the olde Gerames, who¹² studyed⁸ for the delyneraunce of Huon & his company.

¶ How Gerames and the fayre Esclaramonde wente to the pryson to comforte Huon & the other prysoners. Cap. .xli. 16



Owe sheweth thystory⁶ when *that*⁹ Gerames was returned to the Admyrall he sayd / 'syr, y^e freysshemmen that I brought are faste in²⁰ pryson and well beten' / 'fayre nephew,' *quod* the Admyral, 'they haue had but an euyll neyghboure of you.' Then Gerames wente in to his chambre and studyed how he myghte furuysshe²⁴ these¹⁰ prysoners with vytayle / & dyde so moche that he had suffyeyent / and when nyght came he went with his vytayle to the pryson / for he myght do there what he lyst, for euery man was redy to do hym²⁸ ¹¹seruyce / when he came to the pryson dore / he sent euery man away and taryed there alone / and he had not ben there longe but *that*¹² ¹²thyther came¹² the

Gerames studies how he may send food to his prisoners, and at length goes with it himself to the prison.

¹ omitted. ² was. ³⁻³ alwaies. ⁴ king.

⁵ Fol. xxxiii. back. col. 2. ⁶ the Historie.

⁷⁻⁷ returneth to. ⁸ and practised. ⁹ before when.

¹⁰ the. ¹¹ any. ¹²⁻¹² came thether *after* daughter.

Admyralles doughter / when Gerames saw her he wyst
 not what to thynke / and¹ sayde, 'fayre cosyn, I praye
 you shewe me what doo ye here at this houre' / 'dere
 4 cosyn,' quod she / 'the grete truste that I haue in
 you / hathe made me to come hyther / by cause to
 daye I dyscouered to you al my secretes, and ²that I
 am in wyll to do / & that is,² that ye wolde leue the
 8 law of Mahounde & receyue the crysten fayth / & I³ to
 go⁴ in to fraunce⁵ with these prisoners, & we shal well
 fynd y^e maner how to departe, & we ⁶shall haue⁶ with
 vs all the prysoners that ye haue put in pryson.'

Esclarmonde
 meets him at
 the door,

and begs that he
 will arrange for
 the release of
 his prisoners,
 so that she and
 they may return
 to France
 together.

12 **W**hen Gerames vnderstode⁸ y^e lady h-
 was ⁹ioyfull / for then he knewe well¹⁰
 she wente not aboute to dysceyue¹¹
 16 hym / but that she dyd it of good
 corage¹² & good wyll that she bare to
 Huon / how be it, he thought¹⁰ he wolde not dyscouer
 hymselfe to her vnto¹³ y^e tyme he knewe y^e trouth of
 Huon / then¹⁴ he answered fyersly¹⁵ the damsell,¹⁶ &
 20 sayde, 'O thou fals & vntrue wenche,¹⁷ how arte thou
 so hardy ¹⁸to speke or thynke thus? / surely the Admy-
 rall thy father shall knowe it as soone as he cometh
 out of his chambre, & then shalt thou be brint,¹⁹
 24 and the frensshemen hanged' / 'a,²⁰ syr,' quod she,
 'yet I pray you let me go in to the pryson with you,
 to the entent that I may se Huon ones yet or²¹ I dye /
 for the loue of whom I am content to dye; if he dye
 28 I wyl not lyue one day after / therefore let me ones
 take ²²leue of him.' 'Dame,'²³ quod Gerames, 'for this
 tyme I am content *that* ye go with me' / then Gerames

Gerames affects
 anger at
 Esclarmonde's
 treachery against
 her father.

But she begs
 permission to pay
 one visit to Huon,

and, Gerames
 consenting,

¹ but.

²⁻² what I am intended to doe. Therefore let me intreat you.

³ then. ⁴ with me. ⁵ together. ⁶⁻⁶ will take.

⁷ Fol. xxxiiii. col. 1. ⁸ had heard. ⁹ right.

¹⁰ that. ¹¹ descrie. ¹² heart. ¹³ vntill.

¹⁴ wherefore. ¹⁵ angerly. ¹⁶ after answered.

¹⁷ maide. ¹⁸ as. ¹⁹ burned. ²⁰ alas.

²¹ before. ²² my. ²³ Well.

they enter
together.
Huon recognizes
his old friend,

and Esclarmonde
learns the truth.

Huon and his
company thank
Esclarmonde for
her assistance.

toke a torche in his handes, and opened the dore & entred / he was no soner *entred* but Huon knew hym, & went & *embraced* hym, & sayd, 'a, my true loue, blessyd be the houre that I founde you' / then they all 4 cleped & kyssed¹ hym. when the lady sawe theyr maner² she was ioyfull / for then she saw well that her dede³ shold⁴ the surelyer be *conuayed*⁴ / then she cam to Huon & *demaunled* yf they were his *sertes*⁵ that 8 made so gret chere⁶ togyther. 'dame,⁷ *quod* Huon / 'surely al these that be here be my men / surely⁸ ye may trust them / for there is none of them but *that* they shal do your *commaundement*.' 'Huon,' *quod* 12 the dansell, 'there comynge pleaseth me ryght wel' / then Huon sayd to his company / ⁹'syr, I pray you make me no more chere, but to⁹ this noble lady, for by her we shal be *delyuered* / for¹⁰ it is she that hath 16 sayd my lyfe' / then they all togyther¹¹ thanked her / 'syr,' *quod* she, 'yf ye wyll worke by my counsell / I shal shew you how¹² I maye ayde you to *delyuer* you¹³ hense / ¹⁴I wyll that ye all byleue surely how¹⁴ I do 20 fermely byleue in Iesu cryst, and at this daye there is no man that I more hate then the Admyrall Gaudys my father, by cause he beleueth not in our lorde Jesu cryst / for he hateth so the crysten men / he *can* not 24 abyde to here¹⁵ spekyng of theym / for he byleueth but vpon Mahoumde & vpon¹⁶ his ydolles, therefore my herte can not loue hym / yf he dyde other wyse I wolde purchase to hym none yll / for all the good in the world / 28 but I shall shewe you what ye muste do / when it is the houre of mydnyght I shall bryng you all in to my

¹ embraced. ² of saluting. ³ intent.

⁴⁻¹ be more surely compassed. & ⁵ seruantes.

⁶ loue. ⁷ Madame. ⁸ boldly.

⁹⁻⁹ gentlemen and my deare friends, forbear this extremitie of kindness to me and bestow it vpon

¹⁰ and. ¹¹ humbly. ¹² Fol. xxxiii. col. 2.

¹³ from. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ First let me unfainedly perswade ye that

¹⁵ any. ¹⁶ omitted.

chambre, where as I shall¹ prouyde harneys² for you all /
 and there ye shall all be armed / then I shall brynge you
 in to y^e Admyral my faders chambre / whom ye shall
 4 fynde slepyng / and then³ ye maye slee hym / and as for
 me, I shall¹ be the fyrst that shal stryke hym / and when
 he is slayne then shall we departe surely' / when Huon
 4 vnderstode her, he sayde / 'dame,⁵ & god wyll your
 8 fader shal not so be slayne / y^e day shal come that ye
 shall other wyse delyuere vs / we thanke you that ye
 desyre so moche our delyueraunce / ⁶I thynke it good
 that ye and Gerames departe hense / for this tyme, for
 12 it is nere hand day, to the entent that our besynes be
 not perceyued' / then the lady & Gerames departed &
 closed agayne the pryson dore, & wente⁷ in to the palayes,
 & / ⁸when it was day / & also⁸ every day Gerames
 16 & y^e lady went to vysyt y^e prysoners, & bare them
 every thyng that was nedefull for them / Gerames
 was all wayes with the Admyrall / and dyd what he
 wold / for theyr was no paynym that durste do con-
 20 trary to his commaundement. Now leue we to speke
 of the Admyral / of Gerames, and of Huon, & of all
 them that were in the⁹ pryson / ¹⁰vnto the tyme we¹⁰
 returne to them agayne.

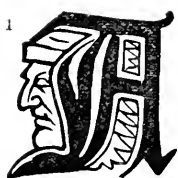
She promises
to lead them that
night to her own
room,
and thence will
take them to her
father's chamber
that they may
slay him while
asleep.
Huon rejects her
unfilial plan.

Every day
Esclarmonde and
Gerames visit
the prison.

24 ¶ ¹¹How the gret gyant Agrapart, eldest broder
 to Angolaffer, whom Huon slewe / as-
 sembled his people and came to Babylon
 to haue the trybute of the Admyral as his
 28 broder had / and of the batayll hande
 for¹² hande that he desyred of the Ad-
 myrall Gaudys / the whiche was agrede.¹³

Capitulo .xlii.

¹ will. ² armour. ³ there. ⁴ had. ⁵ Madame. ⁶ but.
⁷ vp. ⁸⁻⁸ as if they had not beene there at all and thus.
⁹ omitted. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ vntill such time as we may.
¹¹ Fol. xxxiiii. back. col. 1. ¹² to. ¹³ vnto.



Agrapart grieues
for the death of
his brother
Angolaffer
[Galafre], whom
Huon had slain.
He was as gigantic
and hideous to
look upon as his
brother.

He gathers
together the men
of the neighbour-
ing county,

and bids them
follow him to
Babylon to obtain
from the Admirall
the land and
tribute which
belonge to his
brother.

¹ S ye haue herd¹ her before how Huon
slewe the gyant Angolaffer / the
whiche gyant had .xvii. bretherne
all elder than hym selfe / ²& anone ⁴
after *that* the deth of Angolaffer was
known, then when his elder brother
named Agrapart was aduertysed of the deth of his
brother, he toke therof grete sorow / he was as grete as ⁸
his brother was² / he was .xvii. fote of length, & of³
bygnes he was⁴ thereafter / he was a fote bytwene the
browes / & his eyen more redder & brynnynge⁵ then a
broude of fyre, & y^e grystell of his nose as grete as the ¹²
mossell⁶ ⁷of an oxe / & he had two teth yssuyng out of
his mouth more then a fote longe eche of them / ⁸yf I
shold dyscryue his foule fygure at length,⁹ it shold¹⁰
anoie all the herers therof / ¹¹ye may well byleue; when ¹⁶
he was in dyspleasure he had a fearfull chere¹² / for then
his two eyen semed¹³ .ii. brynnynge⁵ torches; when
he was surely¹⁴ aduertysed of the deth of his brother he
sent ouer all his *coultre that* euery man shold come to ²⁰
hym in harneys; ¹⁵& so they dyde / & whan they were
come, he declared to them the dethe of his brother
Angolaffer, & sayde howe it was his mynde to goo to
Babylone to the Admirall Gaudys / and to take ²⁴
possessyon of the londes and seynoryes that were his
brothers, and also to haue the trybute that was dewe by
the Admirall / then all his lordes sayde, ‘syr, com-
maunde at youre plesure, & we shall obey it’ / ‘well. ²⁸
syr,’ *quod* he, ‘then I wyll that euery man lepe¹⁶ on

¹ ¹ It hath bene sufficiently declared.

²⁻² who liued distant from him in diuers seuerall places.
It was no longe while after but that his elder brother named
Agrapart was aduertised of the death of his Brother which he
tooke to his hart exceeding heauile. Now you must vnderstand
that he was in all respects of as huge stature as his brother, for

³ in. ⁴ made. ⁵ burning. ⁶ nostril.

⁷ Fol. xxxiiii. back, col. 2. ⁸ but. ⁹ the full.

¹⁰ would. ¹¹ therefore. ¹² countenance to looke vpon.

¹³ like. ¹⁴ certenly. ¹⁵ armour. ¹⁶ mount.

theyr horses / to go toward Babylone' / & so they all
 obeyed, & lept¹ on theyr horses & departed, & rod
 so long *that* they cam in to a playne nere to the cite
 4 of Babylon; they were a² .x.M. men togyder: then³ Ten thousand
men assemble
before Babylon.
 Agrapart sayde, 'syrs, tary ye all here tyll I come
 agayne, for I wyll go all alone & speke *with* the
 Admyrall Gaudys' / then he armyd hym,⁴ & toke a
 8 grete fawchon in his handes / & departed al alone / &
 so went & entred in to the cyte of Babylon / & so past
 the .iiii. gates; theyr was no paynym *that* durst say
 him nay / he rested not tyll⁵ he cam to the palays;
 12 the same tyme the Admyrall was syttyng at dyner, &
 Gerames⁶ before hym syttyng;⁶ then the Gyaunt came
 to the table / and sayde, 'The same god Mahounde vnder
 whome we lyue,⁷ and causeth the wyne & corne to growe,
 16 may⁷ confounde y^e Admyrall⁸ Gaudys as an yll caytyfe
 and an vntrew⁹ traytour' / when the Admyrall¹⁰ saw
 how he was so dyspraysed¹⁰ / sayd,¹¹ 'Agrapart, of¹² this
 that thou hast sayd thou lyst falsely / thus shamfully
 20 to rebuke me in myn owne court before all my lordes;
 but¹³ shew me y^e cause why¹⁴ ye do¹⁴ me this iniury' /
 'Admyrall,' *quod* he / 'it is by cause ther is come in to
 thy court he that hath slayne my brother / whom
 24 incontinente thou oughtest to haue slayne¹⁵ hym
 quycke¹⁵ / wherefore yf it were not for myne¹⁶ honor with
 my fyst, I wolde stryke the on the nose¹⁷ / thou hast
 sett¹⁸ hym in prison without any more hurte doyng to¹⁹
 28 hym / therfor, thou traytour thefe, by Mahunde be thou
 cursed; thou art not worthy to sytt in a sete royall¹³ /
 aryse vp! it is not mete for the to syt there' / and
 therwith he drew the Admyrall so rudely out of his
 32 chayre / that his hatt and crowne fell downe to y^e When he has
finished speaking
he pulls the
Admiral from his
throne,

¹ got. ² about. ³ and. ⁴ himselfe. ⁵ vntill.

⁶⁻⁶ with him. ⁷⁻⁷ omitted. ⁸ Fol. xxxv. col. I.

⁹ false. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ heard himselfe so highly abused he.

¹¹ to. ¹² in. ¹³ therefore. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ thou doest.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ likewise. ¹⁶ owne. ¹⁷ face. ¹⁸ put. ¹⁹ vuto.

and seats himself there.

He demands the land and tribute that was due from the Admiral to his brother,

but offers to free him of all obligation if he can send into the field against him two champions who are able to overcome him.

The Admiral accepts the challenge,

erthe. then¹ y^e Admyrall was sore abasshed; then Agraparte satt downe in his chayer, and sayd, ‘thou false traytor, my brother is deed, therfor from hens fourth thou shalt be my subgett / for it appertayneth⁴ to me to haue the landes that my brother had, and y^e trybute that thou were wonte to p^{ay}ye to² my brother, or elles I shall stryke of thy hede. how be it, I wyl not do ayenst ryght / for yf thou wylte prone the contrary, 8 or to³ fynde .ii. champyons to be so hardy that for thy loue⁴ wyl fyght with me in playne batayle, I shall fyght with them; or mo, yf thou wylte sende them to me / and yf it be so that I be ouercome and dyscomfyted by 12 .ii.⁵ of them, I am content⁶ from hense fourth thou shalt holde thy landes franke and free without eny trybute payenge / and⁷ yf it be⁸ so that I conqyre them bothe / then thou to be my subgett, and to pay me trybute for 16 ener, & also to pay me for a knowlege⁹ euery yere .iiii. *drams*¹⁰ of gold for¹¹ thy hed money’ / ‘Agraparte,’ quod the Admyrall, ‘I am content thus to do, & to sett¹² .ii. of my men to fyght with the.’ 20

¹³ ¶ How the Admyrall gaudys toke Huon out of preson and armyd hym to fyght with the gyant Agraparte. Capitulo .xliiii.

and proclaims that he will give his daughter in marriage to any man who will fight against the giant.



Han the Admyrall had herde the grete 24 gyant he cryed¹⁴ aloude, ‘where be y^e two gentyll knyghtes *that* wyl be¹⁵ euer my frendes / now is the tyme come that all the goodness and greate gyftes 28 that I haue gyuen among you be¹⁶ now¹⁷ rewardyd; yf there be ony of you that wyl fyght ayenst this gyant, I shall gyue hym my doughter¹⁸ Esclaramonde in maryage,

¹ whereat. ² vnto. ³ omitted. ⁴ dare or. ⁵ any.
⁶ that. ⁷ But. ⁸ fall out. ⁹ due tax. ¹⁰ Ducates.
¹¹ as. ¹² appoint. ¹³ Fol. xxxv. col. 2. ¹⁴ said.
¹⁵ for. ¹⁶ is. ¹⁷ to be. ¹⁸ Fol. xxxv. back, col. 1.

and after my dethe to haue all¹ my erytage; no man shall ²say nay therto' / but for eny fayer wordes or promyse that the Admyrall coulde do,³ there was no
 4 paynem so hardy to do⁴ it, wher *wit*/⁵ y^e admyrall made gret sorow, & began to wepe;⁶ & when the gyant Agraparte saw him, he sayd, 'thy wepyng⁷ cannot auayle the, for whether thou wylt or not it must
 8 behoue *thee* to pay these .iiii. peses of golde yerly / for I am sure ther is no paynem that dare fyght ayenst me. when ye fayre lady Esclaramond saw her father wepe it sore greued her hert, & ⁸sayd / 'o, my father, yf I knew
 12 it shuld not dysplease you, I wolde shewe you one thing the whiche shulde brynge you out of this dought' / 'doughter,' quod he, 'I swere by Maheunde I woll not be dyspleased what so euer thou sayest' / 'sir,' quod
 16 she, 'I ⁹haue shewed you or this⁹ *that* the frencheman that brought you the message fro kynge Charlemayne was deed in pryson; but, syr, surely¹⁰ he is as yet alyue. yf it plese you I shall fetche hym to you / and,
 20 *sir*, without dought I ¹¹waraunt you he wyll take on hym this bateyll ayenst the gyant, for he shewed you how he slewe the other gyaunt Angolaffer; ¹²I haue hope by the ayde of Mahounde / in lyke wyse he shall sle
 24 his brother this gyant Agraparte.' 'doughter,' quod the Admyrall, 'it is my pleasure that ye shall fetche the presoner to me; for yf he may¹³ dyscomfyte this gyant, I am content that he and all his company shall
 28 deperte franke and free at there pleasure' / then the lady and Gerames wente to the preson / and toke out Huon and all his company, & brought them before the Admyrall. Then the Admyrall soore¹⁴ behelde Huon, &
 32 had ¹⁵meruell that he was in so good case / ¹⁶his coloure

No paynim ventures forth.

Agrapart defies the Admiral to find any to conquer him.

Esclaramonde tells her father that Huon still lives,

and promises that he will accept Agrapart's challenge.

Huon is led before the Admiral.

¹ omitted. ² be so bold as to. ³ make. ⁴ vndertake.

⁵ wheryppon. ⁶ lament. ⁷ lamenting. ⁸ she.

⁹⁻⁹ I did once delude you in telling you. ¹⁰ credite me.

¹¹ dare. ¹² therefore. ¹³ can. ¹⁴ earnestly.

¹⁵ great. ¹⁶ yet.

was sum what pale by reason of lyenge so longe in
 preson / then the Admyrall sayd, 'frende, yt semeth
 by thy chere¹ that thou hast had ²a good preson'² /
 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke your doughter therof,³ and⁴ 4
⁵I pray you shew me for what cause ye haue as now
 sent for me' / 'frend,' quod the Admyrall, 'I shall
 shew the / beholde yender sarasyn that is armed, who
 hathe challenged to fyght with me hand to hande 8
 or ayenst two of the best men ⁶I haue / & I can fynde
 none so hardy that dare fight agaynst this paynem / and
 yf it be so that thou wylt take on⁷ the this enterpryse
 for me / I shall⁸ delyuer the & all thy company quyte 12
 to go in to thy countre at thy pleasure / and surely to
 condute the to the cyte of Acre. And also to⁹ gyue the
 a somer chargyd¹⁰ with gold / the whiche thou shalt
 present fro me to kyng Charlemayne / & euery yere 16
 fro hense forth to sende hym lyke present¹¹ for my hede
 mony / and ¹²therof to make suche wrytyng¹² as his
 counsell can deuysel / and¹³ yf he haue any warre I shall
 send hym two .M. men of armes payed for a¹⁴ yere¹⁵ / and 20
 yf it be so that he desyre myne owne person / I shall¹⁶
 passe the see with a .C.M. paynyms to serue hym ; for I
 had rather to be in to¹⁰ sermitude there than to pay .iiii.
 drams to this Gyant ; and, more ouer, yf thou wylt 24
 abyde¹⁷ with me I shal gyue the my doughter Esclara-
 monde in maryage / and the halfe of my realme to
 mainteyne thyne estate.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I am
 content this to do / so that I may haue myn owne 28
 harnes¹⁸ & my ryche horne of yuorye and my cuppe,
 the whiche were taken fro me whan I was taken¹⁹
 prysoner.' 'Frende,' quod the admyrall, 'all shalbe

The Admiral
 invites him to
 accept the
 giant's challenge.

If Huon is suc-
 cessful in the
 fight,
 and he desires to
 return to France,
 he shall be freed
 and led to Acre,
 with presents for
 Charlemaigne.

But if after his
 success he will
 stay with the
 Admiral,
 he shall wed
 Esclaramonde
 and possess half
 his realm.

¹ lookes. ²⁻² no ill imprisonment. ³ therefore
⁴ but. ⁵ Fol. xxxv. back, col. 2. ⁶ that. ⁷ vpon.
⁸ then. ⁹ I will. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ as.
¹²⁻¹² to make such assurance. ¹³ also. ¹⁴ whole.
¹⁵ beforehand. ¹⁶ will then. ¹⁷ heere. ¹⁸ armour.
¹⁹ yielded.

deliuered to the: thou shalt not lese the valew of one
 peny' / than the admyrall sent for the horne &¹ harnes² /
 and cuppe / and deliuered them to Huon, wher of
 4 he had grete ioy / ³whan Agraparte saw and knew
 that the admyrall had founde a champion to fyght
 with hym, he sayd to the admyrall, 'syr, I wyll go out
 and speke with my knyghtes / and in y^e meane tyme
 8 let thy champion be redy aparelyd / for I shall not
 tary longe / for⁴ I shall neuer haue ioy at my herte tyll
⁵I haue rased⁶ his herte out of his body.' ther with
 he departed and wente to his men, & Huon dyd⁷ on his
 12 cote of mayle, and than he toke Gerames his horne of
 yuoray, & sayd, 'frende, I pray you kepe my horne tyll
 I returne agayne' / then he ⁸prayed ⁹our lorde to
 forgyue hym his synnes, to socoure and to ayed hym to
 16 dyscomfayt that foull fende the Gyaunt / ¹⁰when he had
 made his prayers to god he dyd⁷ on his harnes² as
 quickly as though he had neuer ben in preson, wherby
 he knew well that god was pleasyd wth hym. ¹⁰than he
 20 sayd / 'o, noble kyng Oberon, I pray the sen¹¹ god is
 pleasyd with me, put awaye thy dyspleasure and perdon
 me / for the brekyng of thy commaundement I haue
 been sore punysshed, and I pray the be not dyspleasyd
 24 yf I spake eny hasty worde beyng in preson / ¹²famyn
 causyd me to do it / in the brekyng of thy com-
 maundement I confesse I dyd yll therin, yet 'it was
 but by neelygence and forgettyng / ¹³a, syr,¹³ what
 28 curtesey ye shewed me when ye founde me in the
 wod & gaue me your ryche horne and cuppe, by the
 whiche often tymes I haue ben succoured / therefore,
 syr, now I requyre the to perdon me all my trespasses
 32 and helpe me at my nede, for I see well without it be
 by the grace of god and your helpe ther is no thyng

The Admiral further promises to restore his cup, horn, and harness, which he does straightway.

Agrapart is anxious for the fight.

Huon arms himself, and gives into Gerames' keeping the ivory horn.

Huon prays to Oberon that he may be received again into his favour.

¹ omitted. ² armour. ³ but. ⁴ beside.

⁵ Fol. xxxvi. col. 1. ⁶ torne. ⁷ put. ⁸ went and. ⁹ to.

¹⁰ and. ¹¹ seeing. ¹² for. ¹³⁻¹³ Alas, Sir, remember but.

can saue my lyfe' / thus he besought god of perdon
 and to gyue hym grace to dystroy his enemy, who
 is¹ orryble to beholde / and whan he had made his
 oreson² ther cam a sarazyn to Huon, and sayd, 'syr, ⁴
 here is your owne sworde that ye loste when ye were
 taken.' 'frende,' quod huon, 'ye do ³to³ me grete
 eurtesy; god gyue me grace to rewarde the' / then he
 dyd on his helme and gyрте on his sword / then⁴ the ⁸
 Admyrall sent hym a good horse, the best in all his
 courte, for he was not so fayre but he was ⁵of bountye⁵
 aboute all other / when Huon saw hym he was ryght
 ioyfull, and thankyd the Admyrall / as for his ryche ¹²
 apparell,⁶ I make no men⁷eyon therof / the sadell, harnes,
 and brydell were so ryche that the valew ther of coulde
 not be estemed; then Huon made the sygne of the
 crosse and mounted on his horse armed at all pees,⁸ ¹⁶
 and so rode out of the palayes in to a fayre medow, and
 there made a course to asay his horse / and then he
 restyd hym before the Admyrall, who lened in a
 wyndow in his palaes, and⁹ he beheld Huon, and¹⁰ sayed ²⁰
 to his lordes / 'syr,¹¹ these frenchemen are to be
 doughted and feryd, for Huon is a goodly yonge man,
 and gret damage¹² it had been yf he had been slayne' /
 the Admyrall commaundyd the felde to be kept with a ²⁴
 thousand sarazyns, to thentent that no treason shulde be
 done ¹³& then the Admyrall sayd, 'Mahound be thy
 gyde.'¹³

A Saracen restores
 his sword to him,

and a good horse
 is given him.

The Admiral
 admires Huon's
 fair appearance
 when he is
 mounted and fully
 armed.

¶ How Huon fought¹⁴ with Agrapart the ²⁸
 gyant, and dyscomfyted hym, & delyuered
 hym to the Admyrall, who had gret ioye
 therof. Capitulo .xliiii.

¹ was so. ² prayer. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ and.
⁵⁻⁵ in goodness. ⁶ furniture. ⁷ Fol. xxxvi. col. 2.
⁸ points. ⁹ when. ¹⁰ he. ¹¹ Trust me. ¹² wrong.
¹³⁻¹³ or any iniurie offered to his faire seeming Champion.
¹⁴ ofught *in text*.



1 **W**hen Huon had made his course he cam²
 to the felde Where as his enmy was
 4 redy.³ when Agraparte saw Huon he
 sayd / 'thou *that* art of so greate
 courage as to fyght ayenst me / how
 nere akyn art thou to the admyrall, sen⁴ for y^e loue of
 hym thou wylte put thy selfe in aduerture of dethe.
 8 'Paynem,' quod Huon, 'know for trouthe⁵ I am
 nothyng a⁶ kynne to the admyrall, but I was borne
 in the realme of Fraunce / & yf thou desyre to knowe
 what I am, I saye vnto the⁵ I am he that slew thy
 12 brother.' 'for that,' quod the paynem, 'I am the
 more sorowfull / and yet agayne⁷ ioyouse, when⁷ mahound
 hath done me that grace to haue poure to reuenge his
 dethe; but yf thou wylte beleue and worshyp my god
 16 Mahound, & forsake thy beleue, and go with me into
 my country, I shall make the so greate a lorde that⁶
 all thy kynne⁸ was neuer none⁹ suche / & I shall gyue
 the my syster in maryage, whiche¹⁰ ys a fote gretter
 20 than I am, and¹¹ as blacke as a cole' / 'paynem,' quod
 Huon, 'I care nother for thy lond, nor for thy syster,
 but all the deuylls in hell kepe them both; beware
 thou of me / for I shall neuer ioy in my herte vnto¹² the
 24 tyme⁵ I haue slayne the, as I haue done thy brother. I
 defy the in y^e name of god¹³ and of the vyrgyn Mary¹³ /
 '& I the,' quod the Gyaunt, 'in the name of mahounde' /
 then they wente a sunder to take ther courses / then³
 28 they ran eche at other, & mett so fersly that ther speres
 brake in peces;³ y^e encounter was so rude *that* by force
 of the horses¹⁴ bothe the horses fell to the yerth, and¹⁵
 y^e champions quyekely releuyd,¹⁶ and so came eche
 32 vppon other / Agraparte toke vp his fauchyon to
 haue stryken Huon, but he stept a lytell on the one

Agrapart asks
Huon what
relationship he
bears to the
Admiral.

Huon replies that
he is a French-
man,
and the slayer of
Galafre.

Agrapart offers
him peace and his
sister in marriage
if he will forsake
his religion for
that of Mahomet.

Huon defies him
in the name of
God and of the
Virgin.

The fight begins
and their horses
fall.

1 Fol. xxxvi. back, col. 1. 2 in. 3 and. 4 seeing that.
 5 that. 6 of. 7-7 ioyfull in that. 8 there.
 9 any. 10 who. 11 is. 12 vntill. 13-13 omitted.
 14 shocke. 15 but. 16 recouered.

Huon deals
Agrapart a fierce
blow on his helm.

The giant is
wounded,

and in fear for his
life yields to
Huon.

The Admiral is
pleased at Huon's
victory.

Gerames reveals
himself to the
Admiral.

syde, wherby the paynem myst his stroke / and Huon
lyfte vp his swerde, and strake the gyant on the helme
so meruelus ¹a stroke, that he strake of a quarter ther
of and Wounded hym sore, and the stroke descended 4
downe, & dyd cut of his ere, so that y^e clere² blode ran
downe to the ground. then Huon sayd, 'paynem,
thou art³ vnhappy; when thou cammest hether thou
myghtest haue ben contente with the dethe of thy 8
brother, and not to cum hether to haue as moch,⁴ for
thou shalt nener see fayre day more' / when the
gyant saw hymself hurt he had grete fere, and sayd,
and in fear for his life yields to Huon.
'cursyd be he of Mahunde *that* forgyd thy sword / I 12
had rather I had ben bounde to haue payd a greater⁵
sum of money to haue saued my lyf, then to be slayne
here / therfore I yeld me⁶ to thee; take here my sworde;
I pray the do me no hurt' / 'Paynym,' quod Huon, 16
'haue no dought seu⁷ thou doest yelde the to me ther
is non so hardy that shall do the eny dysplesure' / then
Huon toke y^e paynem by the arme, and brought hym
into y^e cytye, wher of the admyrall & all his lordes had 20
grete ioye; but the grete ⁸ioy⁸ that Esclaramund had
passed all other. when Gerames saw how the gyant
was ouer come, he came to y^e admyrall & sayd, '*sir*
Admyrall, know for trouthe⁹ I am crystenyd, & I am 24
not your nephew; I cam hether but alonely¹⁰ to serche
for my lorde Huon, and the better to know the trouthe
I sayd I was some to yewryn of mount brake,¹¹ your
brother, therby to know the sertente what was become 28
of Huon / for I knowe¹² well he was sent to you from
kyng Charlemayne on¹³ message.'

• How Agraparte the gyant cryed mercy to
the Admyrall / & how Huon desyryd the 32

¹ Fol. xxxvi. back, col 2. ² black. ³ wert. ⁴ thyself.

⁵ great. ⁶ myself. ⁷ seeing. ⁸⁻⁸ inward content.

⁹ that. ¹⁰ only. ¹¹ Mombrance. ¹² knew. ¹³ a.

Admyrall Gaudys to leue his law and to be
crystenyd. Capitulo .xlv.

¹ **W**han the admyrall herde Gerames he had
⁴ grete meruayle, and sayd / 'it is herde
 for any man to be ware of the craft &
 suttylte that is in a frencheman.' than
 the admyrall saw where Huon was
⁸ comynge vp the grese,² and brought³ with hym the
 Giant / than⁴ the admyrall and all other⁵ cam and
 met hym, and Gerames and his company with them,⁶
 who were ryght ioyfull whan they saw hym come / whan
¹² Huon saw the admyrall he tooke Agrapart by y^e hand
 and sayd to the admyrall, 'Syr, I delyuer hym into
 your handes, that this day dyd you so grete iniurye
⁷ that he⁷ drewe you out of your chayr; I delyuer
¹⁶ hym⁸ to you to do with hym at your pleasure' / whan
 Agrapart saw that he knelyd downe⁸ and sayd, 'syr
 admyrall / he hath mych to do that foolyshely
 thynketh / I say this by my selfe / for to day whan I
²⁰ cam to you I thought my selfe the moost pyssaunt
 man that reyned on the erth / and thought that ye were
 not suffeyent nor worthy to *ser*sue me / but often
 tymis⁹ beleuyng desseyueth hys mayster / for I thought
²⁴ that for x men I wolde not ones¹⁰ a tournyd¹⁰ my chere
 to haue regardyd them / but other wyse is fallen to me /
 for I am discomfytyd alonely by one man, and am
 taken and brought in to your handes, therfor ye may
²⁸ do with me at your pleasure / therefore,¹¹ syr. I requyre
 you haue pytye of¹² me, & pardon the outrage that I
 haue done to¹³ you.' Than the admyrall answeyrd and
 sayd / how he wolde pardon hym on the condycyon
³² that he shulde neuer after trespas hym, nor no¹⁴ man in

Huon delivers
Agrapart to the
Admiral.

The giant repents
of his vain
boasting before
the fight.

The Admiral
pardons him on
condition of his

¹ Fol. xxxvii, col. 1. ² steps. ³ bringing. ⁴ whereon.
⁵ his Lordes. ⁶ him. ⁷⁻⁷ euen he that. ⁸ omitted.
⁹ rash. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ turne. ¹¹ yet. ¹² on. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ any.

becoming his
man.

Agrapart does
homage to the
Admiral,

and they and the
Frenchmen dine
together.

Huon shows the
Admiral how his
cup fills with
wine when the
sign of the cross
is made above it.

It is handed to
the Admiral,
but it remains
empty while he
holds it.

his countre / and be syde *that*, to become my¹ man, and
to do me² homage before all them that ³be here³ present.
'Syr,' *quod* Agrapart, 'I am redy to fulfyll your plea-
sure' / ⁴than he dyd homage to the admyrall in the pre- 4
sence of all them *that* were there / *than*⁴ in grete ioye
they sat all downe to dyner / y^e ⁵admyrall made greate
honour to Huon / & made⁶ hym⁷ syt by hym / *than*
Agrapart and Gerames, and all the other frenche men.⁸ 8
As for there seruys, and many dyshes of sundry sortes
of mettes, I leue spekyng of them. Huon, who had
grete desyre to accomplyshe his enterpryse, drew out
his cuppe / the whiche Gerames hade⁹ delyueryd to 12
hym with his horne of yuory / &¹⁰ sayd to y^e admyrall /
'*sir*, ye may se here this rych cuppe in my hand, y^e
which y^e se¹¹ all empty' / 'syr,' *quod* y^e admyrall, 'I
se wel ther is no *thinge* therin.'¹² 'syr,' *quod* Huon, 16
'I shall shew you how our law is holy and deuyne.'
than Huon made the sygne of the crosse thre tymes
ouer the cuppe / the which incontinēt was full of
wyne, wher of¹³ the admyrall had grete meruayle. 'Syr,' 20
quod Huon, 'I present you this cuppe, that ye shulde¹⁴
drynke therof. ¹than shall ye se¹⁵ the goodnes of the
wyne.' the admyrall tooke it in his hande / and
incontinēt the cuppe was voyde, & y^e wyne vanysshyd 24
away / *than*¹³ the admyrall had grete meruayle, and
sayde / 'Huon, ye haue enchauntyd me.'¹⁶ 'Syr,' *quod*
Huon, 'I am none enchaunter / but it is by cause ye
be full of synne. for the lawe that ye holde is of no 28
value¹⁷ the grete vertue that god hath put in this
cuppe, by reason of the sygne of the crosse that I
made¹⁸ ye may parseyue that my saynge is trew /

¹ his. ² him. ³⁻³ were there. ⁴ and.
⁵ Fol. xxxvii. col. 2. ⁶ caused. ⁷ to. ⁸ sat downe.
⁹ before. ¹⁰ then. ¹¹ is. ¹² Now.
¹³ whereat. ¹⁴ may. ¹⁵ tast. ¹⁶ Not so.
¹⁷ wroth. ¹⁸ whereby.

'Huon, quod the admyrall, 'ye nede¹ to haue no
 besynes¹ to spe to me to forsake my beleue² to take
 yours / but I wolde knowe of you whether ye wyll
 4 abyde here with me, or elles to³ go in to Fraunce / for
 that I haue promysyd you I shall fulfyll it.' 'A,
 sir admyrall,' quod Huon, 'I know⁴ you wyll kepe
 couenant with me in that ye haue promysyd me.
 8 But, syr, aboue all other matters I pray you haue pyte
 of your owne soule, the whiche shal be dampnyd in
 hell without ye leue your beleue, ⁵the whiche is⁵
 nother good nor iust / for³ without ye do thus, I swer
 12 by ⁶my fayth that I shall ⁷cause so⁷ many men of armes
 that al the houses in your palays and cyte shalbe full' /
 whan y^e admyrall herd Huon say so he behelde his
 owne men and sayd, 'Syr, here ye may wel here the
 16 pryde that is in this frencheman, who hath been more
 than halfe a yere in my pryson, and now he thretenethe
 to slee me by cause I wyll not take on me his law, and
 leue myn owne / I haue grete meruayle where he
 20 shulde fynde⁸ men as he hath sayd / or ⁹to let⁹ me to
 slee hym at my pleasure. 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'yet I
 demaunde¹⁰ of you yf ye wyll do as I haue sayd.'
 'Huon,' quod the admyrall, 'beware on payn of your
 24 eyen, and as myche as ye loue your lyfe, *that* ye speke
 no more to me of this mater, for by the fayth that I
 owe to mahound / yf al kyng Charlemayn's host were
 here assembled,¹¹ shulde not lye in there power to saue
 28 your lyfe.' 'Admyrall,' quod Huon, 'I am in dought
 that to late ye shall¹² repent you.

Huon tries to persuade the Admiral to become Christian,

and threaten- to overrun his city with armed men if he refuse.

The Admiral angrily protests against Huon's threat.

¶ How Huon, seyng that the admyrall wolde not forsake his beleue, blew his horne /

¹⁻¹ not to trouble yourself. ² and. ³ omitted.
⁴ well. ⁵⁻⁵ in that it is. ⁶ Fol. xxxvii. back, col. 1.
⁷⁻⁷ call hether. ⁸ such store of. ⁹⁻⁹ what lets.
¹⁰ once more. ¹¹ it. ¹² will.

wherby Oberon cam to hym / and ¹the
 admirall² slayne and all his men / and how
 Huon and the fayre Esclaramoude were
 in perell of drownynge by reason that he ⁴
 brake the commaundement of kinge
 Oberon. Ca. .xlvi.



Huon blows his
 horn,

and the Admiral
 and his company
 rise and dance.

Oberon hears the
 blast,

and declares he
 will lead an army
 to Huon's aid.

With his men he
 straightway
 appears at
 Babylon,
 and slays all who
 will not become
 Christians.

Han Huon saw that y^e admirall wolde
 not leue his law to receyue crysten- 8
 dome / he sette his horne to his
 mouthe / and blewe it ³by suche
 force³ that the blud brast⁴ out of his
 mouthe / so that the admirall & all other that were 12
 there put the tabylles fro them and rose, and all that
 were in the ⁵palays began to synge & daunce / the same
 tyme kyng Oberon was in his wood, and herd⁶ the
 horne blowe, sayd, 'A, good lorde, I know surely that 16
 my frende Huon hathe greate nede of me / I pardon
 hym of all his trespas, for he hath ben suffyeyently
 ponyshyd / ⁷I wishe my selfe with hym with an
 .C.M. men well armyd / there is not in all y^e worlde so 20
 noble a man as Huon is / it is⁸ pytye that his herte is
 so lyght and mutable / than incontinēt he with all
 his company were in y^e cyte of Babylon, where as they
 began to slee all suche as wolde not beleue of⁹ Ihesu 24
 Cryst / ¹⁰than Oberon went to the palays with all his
 cheualrye, and euery man *with* his sword naked in
¹¹there handes¹¹ / when Huon saw Oberon / he embrasyd
 hym & sayd, 'I ought greatly to thank god and you 28
 that ye become so far of to ayde me in all my besynes.'
 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'as ye beleue me and worke by
 my counsell, I shall not fayle you' / than on all sydes
 they slew paynmys, men & ¹²women & chyldren / except 32

¹ how. ² was. ³⁻³ with such violence. ⁴ issued.

⁵ Fol. xxxvii, back, col. 2. ⁶ hearing. ⁷ and now.

⁸ great. ⁹ on. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹⁻¹¹ his hand. ¹² omitted.

suche as wolde become¹ crystenyd. Oberon came to
 the admyrall & toke hym and delyneryd hym into the
 handys of Huon, who had there of greate ioy / ²than
 4 Huon demaundyd of the admyrall what he was myндыd
 to do ³to³ leue y^e lawe of Mahounde and to⁴ take cryst-
 endome. 'Huon,' quod the admyrall, 'I had rather be
 hewyn al to peaces than to take your law and to⁴ for-
 8 sake myne owne' / Oberon than sayd to Huon, 'why
 do ye tary to put hym to deth?' / than⁵ Huon lyft vp
 his sworde and strake⁶ ther with the admyrall, that his
 hede flewe fro hys sholders / than² Oberon sayd to
 12 Huon, 'Now it lyeth well in thy power to be quyte
 with⁷ Charlemayne' / than Huon tooke y^e admyralles
 hede and openyd his mouthe, and tooke out hys .iiii.
 grete teth / and than cut of hys berde and tooke therof as
 16 myche as pleasyd hym / than Oberon sayd, 'Now ⁸thou
 hast in thy handes the admyralles teth and berde /
 looke, as well as thou louest thy lyfe, kepe them well.'
 'A, syr,' quod Huon, 'I requyre you⁹ put them in
 20 suche a plase that¹⁰ they may be well kept / ²so that I
 may haue them¹¹ in tyme of nede / for I fele my selfe
that my herte is so lyght / that¹² other I shall forgete
 them or elles lese them' / 'of this¹³ thou sayest,' quod
 24 Oberon, 'I thynke thou spekest wyslye / ¹⁴I do wysch
 them in Gerames syde in suche maner that they shall
 do hym no hurte' / he had no soner spoken the worde /
 but by the wyll of god and the power that he had in¹⁵
 28 the fayrre / they were closyd in Gerames syde in suche
 wyse that no man coude se them / than he sayde to
 Huon / 'frende, I must go to my castell of Momure / I
 desyre you to do well / ye shall take *with* you Esclara-
 32 monde, doughter to the admyrall. But I charge you
 on payne of your lyfe, and in as myche as ye fere to

Oberon gives the
Admiral into
Huon's hands.

Huon slays him
because he refuses
to be converted,

and takes out his
four great teeth,
and cuts off his
beard.

Oberon bids Huon
take good care of
these trophies,

and by his power
of enchantment
causes them to be
placed in
Gerames' side so
that none could
see them,
nor did Gerames
feel any hurt from
them.
Oberon takes
leave of Huon,
and bids him take
Esclaramonde
with him to
France,

¹ he. ² and. ³⁻³ if he would. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ whereuppon. ⁶ after therwith. ⁷ king.

⁸ Fol. xxxviii. col. 1. ⁹ to. ¹⁰ where. ¹¹ again.

¹² as. ¹³ that. ¹⁴ therefore. ¹⁵ by.

but avoid all
intercourse with
her till they are
married at Rome.

Huon promises to
obey Oberon.

A beautiful ship
is made ready by
Oberon for
Huon's journey.

Oberon foretells
great misery for
Huon.

Escaramonde is
made a Christian,
and Huon's
cousin is wedded
to a converted
Admiral.

displease me / that ye be not so hardy¹ to company
with her bodely tyll² ye be maryed together in y^e cyte
of Rome / and³ yf thou dost the contrary / thou shalt
fynde suche pouerte and mysery, that though thou **4**
haddest doble y^e myschyefe that thou hast had sens
thou camyst out of Fraunce, ⁴it shulde⁴ be no thyng
in regarde to⁵ that / that shall fall to the here after yf
thou breke my commaundement.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, **8**
'by y^e pleasure of our lord Ihesu Cryst I shall ⁶be well
ware⁶ of doynge of any thyng agaynst your pleasure.'
Then Oberon aparelyd a ryche shyppe, well garnyshyd
with chambers, and hangyd so ryehely that it was **12**
incredable to be her l or sene / there was no cord / but
it was of gold and sylke / yf I shulde shew you the
beaute and ryches of this shyppe, it shulde⁷ be ouer
longe to resyte it / whan the shyppe was fournyshyd **16**
with vytaylles / than he put therin his horses / than
Oberon took leue of Huon, and kyssyd and embrasyd
hym, ^{8,9}sore wepyng⁹ / whan Huon saw hym wepe he
had greate meruayle, and sayd, 'Dere sir, for what **20**
cause do you wepe?' 'Huon,' quod he, 'the thyng
that monyth me thus to do / is by cause I haue ¹⁰of the¹⁰
grete petye / for yf thou knewest the pouerte and
mysery that thou shalt endure / there is no membre¹¹ **24**
thou hast but that¹² shulde⁷ trymble for fere / for I know
for certen / that thou hast so myche to suffer / that
¹³therin is¹³ none humayne tonge can reherse it / and
then Oberon departyd without more spekyng / whan **28**
Huon saw Oberon departe he was ryght pensyue / but
his ¹¹grete¹¹ youthe put hym out of his sorow / and¹⁵
made his ordynance in the cyte, and crystenyd y^e
fayre lady Escaramonde, and after dyd marye his **32**
Cosyn Heylye¹⁶ to an admirall of the countre who was

¹ as. ² untill. ³ for. ⁴ I yet can it. ⁵ of. ⁶⁻⁶ well beware.

⁷ would. ⁸ Fol. xxxviii. col. 2. ⁹⁻⁹ greatly lamenting.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ after petye. ¹¹ that. ¹² it. ¹³⁻¹³ omitted.

¹¹⁻¹¹ sweetness of. ¹⁵ Then hee. ¹⁶ Sibilla.

newly crystenyd / and Huon gaue to theym the cyte of
 Babylon and all that longed therto. Than he made &
 ordeyned a lytell shyppe to go with his owne shyppe,
 4 to thentent to send a lond for vytaylles whan nede
 1 requyred¹ / than he and his company went in to his
 grete shyp, & so toke leue of his cosyn that was newly
 maryed, who was ryght sorowfull for his departynge.
 8 Than they lyft² vp theyr saylles / and had a good
 freshe³ wynde, and so saylled tyll they were out of the
 ryuer of Nile / & so passyd by Damiet and came in to
 the hye see and had wynde at wyll / and on a day⁴ they
 12 sat at dynere and made good chere / for by reason of his
 cup they had wyne at theyr pleasure. 'A, good lorde,'
 quod Huon, 'greatly I am bounde to thanke you⁵ /
 that I haue such a cuppe and horne and harnes⁶ / for
 16 whan so cuer I wyl⁷ blowe my horne I can haue men
 ynow to come to ayde me / and also I haue the admyr-
 ralles berde and grete teth / and⁸ speycially the fayre
 lady Esclaramonde, whom I loue so parfygthly⁹ *that* I⁹
 20 am so¹⁰ in amoures¹⁰ with her fayre body / *that* I can no
 lenger end¹¹ure it / how be it, the dwarfe Oberon to
 moeke me hath¹² dettendyd me in any wyse¹² *that* I
 sholde not touche her in no¹³ wyse. But I wyll well¹⁴
 24 that he knowe / that in this case I wyll not obey hym /
 for she is myn owne, therefore I wyll do with her at
 my pleasure.' whan Gerames herde hym, he sayd,
 'A,¹⁵ syr, what wyll ye do? Ye knowe well Oberon
 28 neuer as yet made any lye¹⁶ to you¹⁶ / but alwayes ye
 haue founde hym trew / for yf he had not been,¹⁷ both
 you and we all had ben lost or¹⁸ this tyme. And now¹⁹
 ye wolde breke his commaundement / yf ye touche this
 32 lady or²⁰ the tyme come that he hath sette you, grete

who becomes the
ruler of Babylon.

Huon and his
company pass the
river.

Huon cannot
resist his love for
Esclaramonde.

Gerames warns
Huon to
remember
Oberon's latest
command.

1-1 should require. 2 set. 3 faire. 4 as.
 5 kinge Oberon. 6 armour. 7 shall. 8 but. 9-9 and.
 10-10 enamoured. 11 Fol. xxxviii. back, col. 1.
 12-12 forbidden me strictly. 13 any. 14 after that he.
 15 Alas. 16-16 omitted. 17 so. 18 before. 19 againe. 20 ere.

But Huon will not
listen to him.

Gerames declares
he will leave the
ship,

and with thirteen
men enters a
little boat and
goes away.

Huon and
Esclaramonde
take their
pleasure together.

Soon after a
terrible storm
arises,

and the ship is
broken to pieces.

Huon and
Esclaramonde are
driven on to an
island.

mysfortune shall fall thereby' / 'Gerames,' quod Huon /
'for you / nor for none¹ other ²I shall not leue² / but
or³ I departe I wyll haue of her my pleasure; and yf
any of you be afrayed, I am contente he shall departe ⁴
in this lytell shyppe and goo where as⁴ he lyst / and
take vytayle in to it for there⁵ prouysyon.' 'Syr,'
quod Gerames, 'sen⁶ ye wyll do none other wyse, I am
ryght sorowfull / and I wyll departe, and so wyll do⁴ ⁸
all cure other company.' Then Gerames departyd out
of the grete shyppe and enteryd in to y^e lytell shyppe,
and .xiii. in his company / & Huon taryed styll with
the lady. and whan he sawe that all his company ¹²
was departyd, he went & made redye a bed, & sayd to
the lady / 'dame,⁷ surely I must⁸ haue my pleasure of
you' / whan she herde Huon / she fell downe sore
wepyng, and humbly desyred Huon that he wolde for- ¹⁶
bere her company vnto⁹ the tyme¹⁰ they were¹¹ maryede
together / accorlyng to the promyse that he had made
to kyng Oberon / 'fayre lady,' quod Huon, 'none
excuse can anayle / for it must be thus' / than he ²⁰
tooke the lady and made her goo to bed / and there
they took together theyr pleasures / he had no sonner
accomplyshyd his wyll / but there rose suche a meruel-
ous tempest ¹ that the wavcs of ¹²the see semyd so greate ²⁴
and hye as mounteyns / and therewith it blew and thon-
deryd and lyghtenyd that it was¹³ ferefull to beholde
the see / and the shyppe was so sore tormentyd / that
¹⁴the shyppe brast¹⁴ all to peeces, so that there abode¹⁵ ²⁸
but one pece of tymbre where apou Huon and the
lady was / and it happyd so well for them that they
were nere to an yle, and thether the wynde draue
them / & whan they sawe¹⁹ they were there aryuyd, ³²

¹ any. ²⁻² will I not forbear. ³ ere. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ his. ⁶ seeing. ⁷ Madame. ⁸ now.

⁹ vntill. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ should be.


¹² Fol. xxxviii. back, col. 2. ¹³ very. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ it burst.

¹⁵ remained.

and that they were on the londe, they both kneled
 downe & thankyd our lord Iesu Cryst that they
 were¹ scapyd the parell of drownynge / the other
⁴ company that were in the lytell shyppe / drane at
 auenture in the see, and they cryed to oure lorde Iesu
 Cryst to saue them fro drownynge / ²they had sene well
 howe the shyppe with Huon and the lady was broken
⁸ in the see, wherfore they thought surely that Huon
 and the lady was pereshyd. Now lette vs leue spek-
 ynge of³ Huon of Burdeux & of⁴ y^e fayre Esclaramonde.

The little ship in
 which are
 Gerames and his
 company is
 greatly distresse.l.
 The knights see
 Huon's ship
 wrecked,
 and fear he and
 his Esclaramonde
 haue perished.

¶ How Huon and Esclaramonde aryued in
¹² an yle all naked, & howe the pyrates of
 the see tooke Esclaramonde and left Huon
 alone, and bounde his handes and fete and
 iyen. Capitulo .xlviij.

¹⁶  Han Huon and Esclaramonde sawe
 howe they were dryuen a londe all
 naked, peteously wepyng they enteryd
 in to the yle, where as theyr dwelt
²⁰ nother man nor woman / but the
 erthe was so fayre and grene that⁵ ioy it was to se it /
 it ^{6 7} was happy for them that the wether was so fayre
 and hote / so⁷ they hidde them⁸ in the grene herbes,⁹
²⁴ to thentent they shold not be parseyued / ¹⁰the lady
 wept peteously / than¹¹ Huon sayd,¹² 'fayre⁴ lady, be
 not abasshyd / for if we dye for loue we shall not be the
 fyrst / for trystram dyed for the loue of the fayre Isoude,¹³
²⁸ and she for hym / and so al wepyng they clyppyd
 and kyssyd eche other. and as they lay wrappyd in
 the grene grasse / ther arueyd .x. sarazyns in a lytell

The island which
 Huon and
 Esclaramonde are
 on is without
 inhabitants.

They seek to
 comfort each
 other.

¹ so well. ² for. ³ of them, returning again to.

⁴ omitted. ⁵ great. ⁶ Fol. xxxix. col. 1.

⁷⁻⁷ it was likewise so faire & hot that. ⁸ selues.

⁹ grasse. ¹⁰ still. ¹¹ and. ¹² vnto her.

¹³ Isoluda.

A little vessel
brings
ten Saracen
pirates to the
place.

Huon hears them
coming to
where he and
Esclaramonde
lay,
and rises.

Approaching
them he begs
them for some
bread.

The pirates learn
his sad story,

and give him two
loaves.

vessell, and¹ enteryd in to the yle,² & toke² freshe water
& other thynges that they nedyd / than they sayd eche
to other, 'lette vs goo forth in to this yle and se yf we
can fynde any aduventure' / they³ were pyrates of the 4
see, and had seruyd before the admyrall Gaudys,
father to ⁴the fayre⁴ Esclaramonde. Huon, who was
with his loue in the grene herbes⁵ / herd how nere to
them was people comyng / he thought to go to them to 8
se yf he myght get any mete. 'Dere loue,' quod
Huon, 'I praye you goo not hense / tyll I retourne.'
'Syr,' quod she, 'god be your gyde / but I requyre
you re⁶tourne agayne shortly' / than he departyd ⁷as 12
so⁷ naked as he was borne / and so came to them or⁸
they had dnyed / ⁹he salutyd them & desyryd them
humblye for the loue of god to gyue hym sum brede /
one of them answeyrd & sayd / 'frende, thou shalt 16
haue ynough / but we praye the shew vs what aduen-
ture hath brought the hether.' 'Syr,' quod Huon,
'the tempest of the see hathe brought me hether, for
the shyppe that I was in pereshyd, and all my company.' 20

WHan they herd hym they had grete petye, and
gaue hym .ii. loues of brede / Huon toke them
and departyd & thanked¹⁰ them, and⁴ went¹¹ to his
loue,¹² and gaue her parte of y^e brede, wherof she was¹³ 24
glade. then the pyrates that had gyuen Huon the brede
sayd one to an other, 'this man that is thus gone fro vs¹⁴
can not be but that he hath sum¹⁵ company / therefore
lette vs goo preuely¹⁶ after hym, and peradventure we 28
shall fynde out his company, for ¹⁷we thynk¹⁷ yf he
were alone he wolde not¹⁸ haue come to vs' / 'lette vs
go and se,' quod all the other, 'and not retourne tyll
we knowe y^e trouthe.' than they went all together and 32

¹ who. ²⁻² to take. ³ those men. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.
⁵ grasse. ⁶ Fol. xxxix. col. 2. ⁷⁻⁷ all as. ⁸ before.
⁹ where. ¹⁰ thanking. ¹¹ backe. ¹² Loue.
¹³ not a little. ¹⁴ surely it. ¹⁵ other. ¹⁶ presently.
¹⁷⁻¹⁷ mee thinkes. ¹⁸ so.

foolowed Huon as preuely as they coude / and whan they came nere where as he was they saw hym and the lady nere¹ by hym etyng of y^e brede that they had
 4 gyuen hym / than² they stode styll and aduysyd them to se yf they coude haue any knolege of hym or of the lady. And³ amonge them there was one *that* sayd,
 ‘Syr, neuer beleue me, but this lady is the fayre
 8 Esclaramonde, doughter to the admyrall Gaudys / and he that is with her is the same frencheman that fought with Gallaffer⁴ and slew hym / and also y^e admy⁵rall. It is happy *that* we haue founde them, and speycially
 12 that he is naked, without armure, for yf *that* he were armed, oure lynes were but short’ / whan they knew surely⁶ that it was Esclaramonde, doughter to the admyrall Gaudys / they than approchyd nere to them /
 16 and cryed alowde, and sayd, ⁷‘ A, dame⁷ Esclaramonde, your flyenge away auayleth you nothyng, for by you & your meanes your father hath been slayne by y^e thefe that sytteth there by you / certainly⁸ we shall brynge
 20 you to your vncle Iuorym of monbrant / who shall take of you suche correceyon that ye shalbe an ensample to all other, and y^e lechour that is by you shalbe² flayne ⁹all quycke⁹’ / whan the lady sawe
 24 these paynyns, she was ryght sorowfull and sore dyscomfortyd / than she kneled downe and helde up her handes and prayed them humbly / that they wolde haue petye on y^e frencheman / and as for her owne lyfe,
 28 she dyd put it to there¹⁰ pleasures, other to slee her or to drowne her or to bryng her to her vncle. ‘And, syrs,¹¹ I swere by Mahounde that if ye wyll graunt my request / yf I *can* be agreed with myne vncle Iuorym /
 32 I shall do you all suche pleasurs that ye & all yours shall be ryche for euer after. And¹² lytell shall ye

but they follow him when he returns to Esclaramonde, and see the two eating the bread together.

The Saracens recognize Esclaramonde and Huon, because they had been at the Admiral's court.

They reproach Esclaramonde with the death of her father,

and threaten to take her to her uncle Ivoryn,

and to kill Huon.

Esclaramonde pleads for Huon's life,

¹ hard. ² there. ³ Now. ⁴ Agrapart.

⁶ Fol. xxxix. back, col. 1. ⁷ certainly. ⁷⁻⁷ Madame.

⁸ therefore. ⁹⁻⁹ before your face. ¹⁰ owne.

¹¹ (quoth shee.) ¹² for.

which they agree
to spare,

but they bind his
eyes, hands, and
feet,
and torture him.

Esclaramonde is
led away by the
pirates.

wynne by the deth of one poore man.' 'Dame,'¹ quod
they / 'we are well content to leue hym here; but we
shall do hym all the shame and rebuke that we can,
that he shall² remembre it³ euer after' / than they toke 4
Huon / and layd hym on the grene grasse / and than
dyd bynd⁴ his iyen / ⁵handes and fete / so *that* the
blode brast⁶ out at the⁷ nayles, wherby he was in suche
dystres that he sownyd thre tymes and peteously called 8
on oure lorde god to haue petye of hym and to forgyue⁸
his synnes / whan the swete Esclaramonde sawe her
louer Huon so handelyd / and that she shokde departe
fro hym / to shew the petyefull compleyntes that she 12
made it⁹ were impossyble. Also Huon made peteous
compleyntes whan his louer¹⁰ Esclaramond departyd, the
which greuyd hym more than his owne payne that he
sufferyd. Now we shall leue spekyng of hym and 16
¹¹speke of¹¹ the fayre Esclaramonde.

¶ How the fayre Esclaramonde was led a way
with the pyrates of the see / and how the
admyrall Galaffer of Ansalerne delyueryd 20
her out of there handes. Ca. .xlviii.



Huon is left alone
on the island.

Owe sheweth the hystory¹² whan
these theues had taken & bound
Huon, handes / fete & iyen / they 2
left hym alone¹³ in the yle, & toke
the fayre Esclaramonde & brought
her in to theyr shyppe / than they gaue her a gowne
and a mantell furryd with ermyns / for they were 28
robbers of the see, and had myche good in theyr
shyppe / than they sayled forth nyght and day / at

¹ Ladie. ² may. ³ for. ⁴ blind. ⁵ and binde his.

⁶ burst. ⁷ his. ⁸ him. ⁹ Fol. xxxix. back. col. 2

¹⁰ Loue. ¹¹⁻¹¹ say what happened afterward to.

¹² how that. ¹³ alone.

last a wynd ¹toke them whether they wolde or not /
they aryued at the port of Anfalerne ; & the same tyme
the admyrall there was newly rysyn fro his dyner, and
4 stode lenyng out at a windowe in his palays / and
then² he parseyuyd y^e shyppe *that* lay at ancre in y^e
hauen / & saw the baners & stremers wauinge with the
wynde / wherby³ he wel parseyuyd that y^e shyppe per-
8 teynyd to kyng Iuoryn of Mombrant / than⁴ he with
his lordes went downe to the hauen. Than he cryed
out alowde / and sayd, ‘Syr, what marchaundyys haue
ye brought?’ / ‘syr,’ *quod* they, ‘we haue brought
12 sendalles & clothes of sylke / wherfore, *sir*, yf we shal
pay any tribut or custome, we are redy to pay it at
your pleasure’ / than Galaffer, y^e admirall, sayd / ‘I
know well ynough yf ye sholde pay any trybute ye
16 sholde not chose but ⁵to⁵ do it. But, syrs, I pray you
tell me what damesell is *that*⁶ I se in your shyppe sore
wepyng?’ ‘Syr,’ *quod* they, ‘it is a sclaue, a crysten
woman, whom we bought at Damiet.’ The lady herd
20 well how the admyral demaundyd for her, &⁷ what
answer y^e maryners had made / than she cryed out
alowd and sayd, ‘A, syr admyrall, for y^e loue & honour
of Mahounde I pray you haue petye on me, for I am
24 no sclaue, for⁸ I am daughter to the admyrall Gandys
of Babylone / who is deed & slayne by a frencheman /
these⁹ maryners here hath taken me / & wolde carye me
to myne vncl, kyng Iuoryn of Mombrant / and I
28 know surely, yf he had me, he wolde byrne me ⁵in
a fyer.’⁵ ‘Fayre ladye,’ *quod* the admyrall, ‘dysmay
you not / for ye shall abyde *with* me whether they
wyll or not’ / than he commaundyd y^e maryners to
32 bryng y^e lady to hym / &⁸ they answeryd¹⁰ they wolde
not so do / than y^e admirall commaundyd to take her

Esclaramonde
sails away with
the Saracens.
They arrive at the
port of Anfalerne,

and the Admiral,
seeing them from
his palace,

perceives from
their ship that
they are subjects
of King Ivoryn.

The Admiral
inquires what
merchandise the
ship carries

and who is the
damsel with
them.

They reply
falsely

but Esclara-
monde declares
her parentage.

The Admiral
promises to
release her,

¹ Fol. xl. col. 1.

² when.

³ thereby.

⁴ wheruyppon.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted.

⁶ which.

⁷ likewise.

⁸ but.

⁹ the.

¹⁰ that.

and fights for her
with the pirates
whom he over-
comes.

The Admiral
falls in love with
Escaramonde.

Escaramonde
begs him to tarry
a while before
making her his
wife.


She prays to
Christ to give her
strength to
remain faithful to
Huon.

from them *perforce* / ¹ than they of the shyppe began to
make defence. But anone they were all slayne, & the
lady taken, & brought to the admyrall / and ² had grete
ioy therof / how be ³ it, he was sory by cause one of them ⁴
that were in y^e shyppe skapyd away & fled to Mom-
brant / how be it, ⁴ y^e admyrall caryd not gretely for
it / syn ⁵ he had y^e lady, whom he brought in to his
palays / whan y^e admirall saw her so exceeding fayre / ⁸
he was taken in ⁶ loue, so *that* incontynent he wolde
haue maryed her after the sarazyns lawe / wherof she
was ryght sorowfull, & sayd, ‘Syr, reason it is *that* I do
your pleasure, syn ⁵ ye haue ryd me out of y^e handes of ¹²
these pyrates of the see. But, syr, I requyre you for
the loue *that* ye bere me that ye wyll forbere your
pleasure at this present tyme / for, *sir*, I haue made a
faythfull vow & promyse / *that* for a yere & a day fro ¹⁶
hense forth I wyll not lye ⁷ nor touch any man bodely ⁸ /
of ⁹ the whiche anow, syr, I am nowe sory ¹⁰ of for y^e
loue of you / for, ¹⁰ syr, I am ryght ioyfull *that* ye wolde ¹¹
me so myche honour as to haue me to your wyfe / oure ²⁰
greate god Mahounde rewarde you / and, ¹² syr, for y^e
loue of hym I pray you be content tyll ¹³ myn anow
be acumplyshyd’ / ‘fayre lady,’ *quod* he, ‘know for
trouthe / *that* for the honoure of my god Mahounde, & ²⁴
for the loue of you, I am content to tary this yere / ye,
& yf it were .xx. yere / than ¹⁴ to be sure of your loue.’
‘Syr,’ *quod* she, ‘Mahounde rewarde you’ / than ¹⁵ she
sayd to her selfe, ‘A, dere lord god Jesu Cryst, humbly ²⁸
I requyre *thee* to gyue me *that* grace to kepe my trouth
to my louer Huon, for or ¹⁶ I shall do the contrary I
shall suffer as myche payne & dolowre ¹⁷ as euer woman

¹ and. ² who. ³ Fol. xl. col. 2. ⁴ notwithstanding.
⁵ seeing. ⁶ her. ⁷ with. ⁸ boldly. ⁹ for.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ euen for the loue that I beare to you, but ¹¹ will doe.
¹² now. ¹³ untill. ¹⁴ then *after* loue. ¹⁵ but.
¹⁶ ere. ¹⁷ greefe.

dyd / nor ¹for fere of deth I shal neuer breke my
trouthe.¹ Now leue we to speke of her, & speke ²of
the thefe that scapyd out of the shyppe.

4 ¶ How the pyrat fled to Mombrant to Iuoryn /
& how he sent to defy the Admyrall
Galaffer of Anfalerne, and of the answer
that he had.³ Capitulo .xlix.

8 4  E haue herd here before how the fayre
Esclaramonde was rescued⁵ by the
Admyrall Gallaffer / and of the maner
that she founde to kepe her selfe trew
12 to Huon, & how one of the maryners
scapyd away and fled by londe, and at last⁶ came to the
cyte of Mombrant, where as he founde Iuoryn, to whom
he shewed all the hole mater as ye haue herde / and
16 howe his brother y^e admyral Gaudys was slayn by a
yong frenche knyght / and howe he & his company
founde the sayd knyght 'and your⁷ nece the fayre
Esclaramonde / whom we⁸ had thought to haue brought
20 to you.⁹ But¹⁰ y^e Admyrall Gallaffer hathe taken them
fro vs by force, and hath taken our shyppe and slayn
all your men that were within,¹¹ so that none scapyd but
I alonely.¹² whan kyng Iuoryn vnderstode y^e maryner
24 he sayd, 'A, syr¹³ Mahounde, how haue you sufferyd
that my brother Gaudys hathe thus peteously be
slayne / and also my nece hys doughter to consent
therto / certenly the doloure¹⁴ that I fele at my herte
28 constrayneth me rather to desyre¹⁵ the¹⁵ deth than lyfe.
And also, moreouer, to se hym *that* is myn owne
subget, and ¹⁵he that¹⁵ holdeth his londes of me / to
kepe my nece and thus to slee my men. Alas, I can not

News of
Esclaramonde's
fortune and of the
murder of
Gaudisse is
brought to his
brother Ivoryn,
of the city of
Mombrant.

Iuoryn is
indignant that the
Admiral, who is
his subject,
should hold his
niece
Esclaramonde.

¹⁻¹ and I will neuer breke my troth for fere of deth.

² say somewhat. ³ there. ⁴ Fol. xl. back, col. 1.

⁶ receiued. ⁶ he. ⁷ his. ⁸ they. ⁹ him.

¹⁰ quoth he. ¹¹ it. ¹² alone. ¹³ mightie.

¹⁴ greefe. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ omitted.

well saye what I sholde do therin / a lytell thyng wolde
 cause me to slee myselfe.' Than in great dyspleasure
 he called his lordes, & causyd the maryner to come
 before them / & there he made hym to shew agayne all ⁴
 the mater before them all:¹ how his brother y^e admirall
 Gaudys was slayne, & also how the admyrall Gallaffer /
 helde by force his nece, & how he had slayne his
 men / ²whan the lordes had herd ³all this,³ they sayd⁴ ⁸
 to Iuoryn, 'Syr, our aduyce is *that* ye sholde sende
 one of your secrete messengers to the admyrall Gallaffer /
 & commaund hym incontynent to sende you your
 nece / ⁵and to make amendes in *that* he hath slayne ¹²
 your men / and that he sende you worde by wrytyng
 what cause hath moued hym thus to do / and yf it be
 so that pryde doth so surmont⁶ hym that he wyll not
 obey your commaundementes / than by a iust quarell ¹⁶
 ye may go and make warre vpon hym, and take fro hym
 all hys londes *that* he holdeth of you' / whan Iuoryn
 vnderstode his lordes / he sayd, 'syr, I parseyue well
 your opynyon is good' / ⁷than a messenger was ²⁰
 appoyntyd and his charge gyuen hym, & so⁸ departyd,
 and rode so longe *that*⁹ he came to Anfalerne, where as⁹
 he founde y^e admyrall Gallaffer / whom he salutyd in
 y^e name of Mahounde / & than he declared his message ²⁴
 at lenght / ¹⁰whan¹⁰ Gallaffer herd his message, he sayd,
 'frende, go & saye to kinge Iuoryn, *that* as for y^e
 delyueraunce of his nece, I wyll not so³ do¹¹ / & as for
 his men *that* be¹² slayne, it was¹³ theyr owne foly, & ²⁸
 as touchynge *that* I sholde come to hym / I wyll not
 come at hym / lette him do what he can / ¹⁴yf he come
 &¹⁵ assayle me I shall defende as well as I can' / whan
 y^e messenger herd *that* he sayd / 'sir admyrall, sen¹⁶ ³²

His lords advise
 that a message
 be sent to the
 Admiral,
 bidding him give
 Esclaramonde up
 to Ivoryn,
 and make
 reparation for the
 death of his
 sailors.

An envoy is sent,
 and arrives at
 Anfalerne.

The Admiral will
 not obey Ivoryn's
 command.

¹ both. ² which. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ thus.
⁶ Fol. xl. back, col. 2. ⁶ in. ⁷ and. ⁸ he. ⁹ till.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ but assoone as. ¹¹ it. ¹² are. ¹³ through.
¹¹ but. ¹⁵ to. ¹⁶ seeing.

ye wyll do none other wyse / *in* the name of our god Mahound, & in y^e name of y^e ¹admyrall Gallaffer, I desyre you¹ / & he sendeth you worde by me *that* he
 4 wyll leue you nother cyte / towne, nor castell / but he wyll put them all to flame & fyer / nor leue you one fote of londe / &² also yf he may take you ye shall dye
 a shamfull deth.’ The messenger threatens his lands with fire and sword,
and himself with a shameful death.

8 ¶ Whan the admyrall saw howe he was defyed / he was more inflamed than a byrnynge fyer
 brond, & sayd to y^e messenger / ‘go & say to thy lord *that* I set no thinge by his thretenynge / &, yf I
 12 may know when he comyth, I shal do hym *that* honour *that* I wyll not abyd tyll he enter *in* to my countre / but I shal³ mete with him before / & say vnto hym frome / *that* yf I can take hym I shal sone ryd his soule
 16 out of his body.’ so y^e messenger departed / & cam to mombrant / ⁴whan Iuoryn saw hym he sayd / ‘frend, what sayth ⁵Galaffer? wyll he sende me my nece?’
 ‘Syr,’ quod the messenger / ‘he wyll not do it / he
 20 sayth he doughtyth you no thyng / and, yf ye be so hardy to come & assayle hym, he wyll mete with you before & fyght with you, & I herd hym swere *that* yf he may take you he wyll slee you without mercy’ /
 24 whan Iuoryn herd that / he swet for anger, & was in that case⁶ he coude ⁷speke no⁷ worde of a longe space / &² whan he had sum what asswagyd his yre, he sware by his god Mahounde *that* he shold neuer haue ioy nor
 28 myrthe at his herte / tyll he had destroyed the towne of Anfalerne, & slayn the admyrall Galaffer / than in hast he sente for all his lordes / & with them concludyd to send for all his men of warre, & gaue them day to be
 32 with him within .xv. dayes before Mombrant / the whiche thyng was done / for at that day they were all

The Admiral defies the King Ivoryn.

The Admiral's reply is reported to King Ivoryn.

The King is indignant and swears he will destroy the town of Anfalerne and slay the Admiral.

¹⁻¹ great king Iuoryn heere I defie you. ² but.
³ will. ⁴ where. ⁵ Fol. xli. col. 1. ⁶ that.
⁷⁻⁷ not speke one.

His army is
assembled.

assembled / as ye shall here¹ after. Now² leue thystorye²
to speke of them & ³retourne³ to speke of kinge
Oberon.

¶ How kynge Oberon, at the request of .ii. 4
knyghtes of the fayry called Gloryant &
Mallebron the monster of the see, went
& socouryd Huon, & carryed hym out of
the yle Noysaunt. Ca. .i. 8



Owe⁴ sheweth thystory,⁴ that Kynge
Oberon the same tyme that Huon
was in the yle Noysaunt / was in
his wood where as he was accus- 12
tomyd⁵ most parte for⁵ to be con-
nersaunt, by cause the place was⁶ myche delectable
& farre fro people / ⁷he sat hym down vnder a fayre
oke / than⁸ he began to wepe & compleyned / whan 16
Gloryant, a knyght of y^e fayry / saw hym / he had
grete meruayle, & demaundyd of hym why he⁹ made so
gret doloure⁹ / ‘Gloryant,’ quod y^e ¹⁰kinge Oberon /
‘the peruryd Huon of Burdeux causeth me thus to do / 20
whom I haue¹¹ perfyghtly lonyd, & yet he hath¹²
trespassyd my *commandementes* / for whan¹³ I departyd
fro hym I causyd hym to haue the admyrall Gaudys at
his pleasure / & also I made hym to haue the fayre 24
Esclaramonde, y^e admyralles doughter / & also I haue
gyuen hym my ryehe horne of yuory & my good cuppe /
the whiche he hath lost by his pryde & foly / &
therefore he hath ben ponyshyd, &¹⁴ lyeth all naked, 28
bounde handes & fete, & his iyen stoppyd,¹⁵ in an yle / in
y^e whiche place I shall¹⁶ suffre hym to dye¹⁷ myserably.’

Oberon deplores
the misfortunes of
Huon,

and laments that
he has disobeyed
his command-
ment.

¹ here. ²⁻² leaueh the Historie. ³⁻³ returneth againe.

⁴⁻⁴ the history sheweth. ⁵⁻⁵ after where. ⁶ very.

⁷ there. ⁸ and. ⁹⁻⁹ lamented so much. ¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ alwayes. ¹² still. ¹³ Fol. xli. col. 2. ¹⁴ now he.

¹⁵ blindfolded. ¹⁶ will. ¹⁷ most.

‘A,¹ syr,’ quod Gloryant / ‘for y^e honoure of our lord
 Jesu Cryst / call to your remembrance how *that* by
 goddes own mouth Adam & Eue² was dyffendyd² fro
 4 y^e etyng of³ fruyte *that* was in paradyce / ⁴the whiche⁴
 by theyr fragylyte brake goddes commaundement; how
 be it, our lord god had grete petye of them, & therefore,
 sir, I praye you haue pyte of Huon’ / than Mallebron
 8 stept forth & sayd, ‘A,⁵ sir, for y^e honour & reuerence
 of our lord god I desyre you to graunt me this one
 tyme *that* I may go & ayde hym’ / whan Oberon saw
 how he was sore⁶ desyryd of Gloryant & Mallebron, he
 12 was sore dyspleasyd; ⁷he answeyrd & ⁷ sayd / ‘Malle-
 bron, it pleaseth me ⁸well *that* this caytyue Huon, who
 endureth⁸ myche payne, be vysytyd by *thee*, ⁹for y^e
 which⁹ I condempne *thee* to be .xxviii. yeres a monster
 16 in y^e see, beside .xxx. yere *that* thou art inioynyd to all
 redy / but¹⁰ I wyll¹¹ thou gyue hym none other counsell
 nor ayde / but alonely to bere hym out of y^e yle *that*
 he is in, & to set hym on y^e mayne londe / than let
 20 hym go whether *that*¹² he wyl, for I desyre neuer more
 to se hym. Also I wyll¹¹ thou brynge agayne to¹³ me
 my ryche horne of yuory and my ryche cuppe and my
 harnes¹⁴ / feche them theyr, as he¹⁵ lost them.’ ‘A,⁵
 24 sir,’ quod Gloryaunt,¹⁶ ‘greate payne ye put hym vnto,
 whan for so small¹⁷ offence ye are so sore displeasyd with
 Huon / & as for the harnes¹⁴ *that* ye wolde haue agayne,
 ye know well howe Huon of Burdeux dyd conquere
 28 it / he had ben lost yf it had not bene / grete yll
 ye shall do yf ye cause hym not to haue it agayne.
 18 But, syr, sen¹⁹ I haue lycence to brynge hym out of the
 yle, I pray you shew me in what plase is the yle where

Gloryant begs
 Oberon haue
 mercy upon the
 knight.

Mallebron begs
 permission to go
 to his aid.

Oberon grants
 Mallebron's
 request under
 very hard
 conditions.

He is to place
 Huon on the
 main land,

and to bring back
 to Oberon his cup,
 horn and armour.

¹ Not so. ²⁻² were forbidden. ³ the. ⁴⁻¹ yet they.

⁵ alas. ⁶ so earnestly. ⁷⁻⁷ and answering.

⁸ so. ⁹⁻⁹ therefore. ¹⁰ now. ¹¹ that.

¹² omitted. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ armour. ¹⁵ hath.

¹⁶ Mallabron. ¹⁷ an. ¹⁸ Fol. xli. back. col. 1.

¹⁹ since.

as he is.' Than Gloryant sayd / 'brother Mallebrone /
 this yle is nere to¹ helle, & is callyd the yle Noysant' /
 'well,' quod Mallebron, 'than I commend you all to
 our lorde Ihesu cryst' / and so² departyd and came to 4
 the see syde / ³whan he cam there he lept in to the see
 and began to swym as fast as the byrde flyeth in the
 eyer / and so aryuyd in y^e yle Noysaunt / and so came
 to¹ Huon / whom he founde sore wepynge, and sayd / 8
 'syr Huon, I pray our lorde Ihesu Cryst to socoure &
 ayde thee.' 'A, very⁴ god,' quod Huon, 'who is it⁵ that
 speketh to¹ me?' / 'Huon,' quod he, 'I am a man
 who loueth the, and am called Mallebron, & am a 12
 best of the see who hathe or⁶ this tyme borne the ouer
 the salt water to Babylon.' 'A, Mallebron, dere
 brother,' quod Huon, 'I requyre the vnbynd me &
 brynge me out of this dolouros payne' / 'with a ryght 16
 good wyll,' quod Mallebron / than he dyd vnbynde
 hym and openyd his eyes / whan Huon saw that he was
 ryght ioyfull / & demaundyd who sent hym thether /
 'Huon,' quod he, 'know for trouthe⁵ / it was kinge 20
 Oberon, & where as I was condemnyd before to be a
 best of the see xxx yere, nowe for thy sake I must
 endure so .xxviii. yere more / yet I care not for the
 payne / for y^e loue that I bere to¹ the; there is no payne 24
 impossyble to¹ me to bere / but I must bere⁷ agayne to¹
 Oberon the ryche horne & cuppe & harnes⁸ / for so I
 haue promysyd kyng Oberon to do.' 'A,' quod Huon,
 'I pray to our lorde Ihesu Cryst to confounde y^e 28
 dwarfe who hath causyd me to endure all these paynes /
 for so small an occasyon' / 'Huon,' quod Mallebron,
 'ye do yll to say soo / for ye haue no soner spoken it /
 but *that* kyng Oberon doth know it' / 'certainly,' quod 32
 Huon, 'I care not what he can do; he hath done me
 so myche yll *that* I can neuer loue hym / but, *sir*, I

The island where
 Huon lies is
 called Noysant.

Malabron finds
 Huon there,

and unbinds him.

Malabron tells
 him Oberon's
 message.

Huon complains
 of Oberon's
 hardness of
 heart.

¹ unto. ² he. ³ and. ⁴ deare. ⁵ that.
⁶ before. ⁷ carie. ⁸ armour.

pray the tell me yf *thou*¹ wylt bere me hense, or elles
 whether that I shall² byde here for euer / 'frend,' quod
 Mallebron, 'I shall³ bere *thee* out of this yle & sette the
 4 on y^e mayne londe / other ayde may I not do the'⁴ /
 than Mallebron tooke on⁵ hym agayne his bestes skyn,
 & sayd, 'sir, lepe vp apon me' / than Huon lept vp on
 his crope⁶ as naked as euer he was borne / than⁴ /
 8 Mallebron lept in to y^e⁷ & began to swym, & came to
 the mayne londe / & sayd / 'frend Huon, more seruyce
 can I not do to⁸ *thee* at this tyme / but I recommaunde
thee to y^e kepinge of our lorde god, who sende thee
 12 comforte / I⁹ must go & seke for the horne / cuppe &
 harnes¹⁰ / y^e which *thou* wert wont to haue & enioy /
 & I to¹¹ bere them to⁸ kinge Oberon,¹² thus haue I
 promysyd to do' / &⁹ / Huon was there all alone &
 16 naked / &¹³ peteously compleynyd,¹⁴ & sayd, 'A, good
 lorde, I requyre *thee* to ayde me / I know not where I
 am, nor whether I may go, yet yf I had clothes to
 couer my naked skyn I shuld haue sum comforte, ¹⁵ &
 20 to¹⁵ go & seke sum aduerture / greatly I ought to hate y^e
 croked dwarfe Oberon, who hath brought me in¹⁶ all this
 payne / but by y^e fayth *that* I owe to⁸ god, sen¹⁷ he
 hath left me thus / from hense forth to do hym the
 24 more spyte I shall make lyes ynowe / I shall not leue for
 hym / *that*¹⁸ I recommaunde hym⁹ / to a .C.M. deuelles' /
 whan he had ben there a certen spase all alone / he
 arose & lokyd al about hym, to se if he myght perseyue
 28 any man passe by / by¹⁹ whom he myght haue any
 socoure / ¹² he was nere famyshyd for lake of sustenance,
 how be it, he thought to departe thense to seke sum
 aduerture / he went on his way ; he went so farre *that*

Malabron swims
with Huon to the
main land,
and there leaves

him to go in
search of the
horn, cup and
armour.

Huon prays to
God to succour
him in his
helplessness,

and declares he
will avenge the
wrongs that
Oberon has done
him.

Huon journeyes on

1 Fol. xli. back, col. 2. 2 must. 3 will. 4 and.
 5 vpon. 6 backe. 7 Sea (*omitted* in Crawford MS.).
 8 vnto. 9 now. 10 armour. 11 am. 12 for.
 13 *omitted*. 14 complayning. 15-15 for then I might.
 16 to. 17 seeing. 18 whom.
 19 from.

in hope of some fortunate adventure.

he founde an adventure / such as ye shall here / for our lord *Jhesu* cryst neuer forgetteth his frendes.¹

¶ How *Huon* founde a minstrell, who gaue hym clothinge & mete, & toke *Huon* with hym as his varlette, & went to *Mombrant*.

Ca. .li.

He sees an old man sitting under an oak tree in a fair meadow.



¶ *Huon* had gone a greate way he behelde on his ryght hande / and sawe nere hym a lytyll wood by a fayre medow side, and therin was stondyng a grete oke full of leues / & there beside was a clere founteyne, and there he saw an aunsyent man with whyte heres syttyng vnder the oke / & before hym he had a lytel cloth sprede a brode on the grasse / & theron flessch & brede & wyne in a botell / whan *Huon* saw the old man / he came to³ hym / & y^e aunsyent man sayd, 'A, *thou* wyld man, I pray the for y^e loue of mahounde do me no hurt / but take mete & drynke at thy pleasure' / whan *Huon* saw hym / he spyed lyeng beside hym an harp and a vyall wheron he coude well play, for in all pagany there was no mynstrell lyke him / 'frende,' quod *Huon*, 'thou hast namyd me ryght / for a more vnhappy⁴ than I am ther is none luyng' / 'frende,' quod y^e mynstrell, 'go to yonder male & open it, & take what *thou* lykyst best to couer thy naked skyn / than come to me & ete at thy pleasure' / 'syr,' quod *Huon*, 'good adventure is come to³ me thus to fynde you / mahounde rewarde you' / 'syr,' quod the mynstrell, 'I pray the come & ete with me, & kepe me company / for thou shalt not fynde a more sorowfull⁴ than I am.' 'By my fayth,' quod *Huon*, 'a companyon of your owne sort haue y^e

Food and wine are spread out before him.

At his side lie a harp and a viol.

The minstrel offers *Huon* clothing and food.

The minstrel is a man of sorrow,

¹ seruantcs.

² Fol. xlii. col. 1.

³ vnto.

⁴ man.

- founde / for there was neuer man that hath sufferyd so
 myche pouerte as I laude¹ be to² hym *that* fourmyd
 me / but sen³ I haue founde mete to ete, blyssyd by y^e
 4 owre that I haue founde you / for ye seme to be a good
 man / than Huon went to y^e male and tooke clothes,
 & than came to² the mynstrell & sat downe, & dyd ete
 & drynke as myche as pleasyd hym / the mynstrell
 8 behelde Huon, & saw how he was a fayre yong man
 &⁴ courteys / & than he demaundyd of hym where he
 was borne, & by what aduenture he was aryued there
 in *that* case *that* he was in / whan⁵ Huon herde how the
 12 mynstrell demaundyd of his estate / he began to study
 in hymselfe whether he shulde shewe the trouthe or
 eles to lye / than he callyd on⁶ our lord god & sayd,
 ‘a, good lorde, yf I shew this man the trouthe of
 16 myne aduenture I am but deed. A,⁷ Oberon, for a
 small offence thou hast left me in thys case, for⁸ yf I
 shew the trouthe of my lyfe to this man I am but deed ;
 I shall neuer trust the more / but I wyll⁸ put al my
 20 dedes⁹ in god / for the loue that I haue to my louer¹⁰
 thou hast me in hate / but sen³ it is so, as often as I
 haue nede I shall lye, nor I shall not leue it for fere of
 the / but rather do it in dyspyght of the’ / than Huon
 24 sayd to the mynstrell, ‘Syr, ye haue demaundyd of
 myne estate, and as yet I haue made you none answer /
 the trouthe is, I fynde my self so wel at myn case that
 I forgat to answer you / but I shal⁸ shew you, sen³
 28 ye wold know it / syr, of certen I am¹¹ borne of¹² the
 countre of aufryke / and fell in company with dyuers
 merchauntes by the see in a shyppe, thynkyng to haue
 sayled to Damiet / but a grete mysfortune fell apon vs ;
 32 there rose suche an orryble tempest that our shyppe
 pereshyd, and all that¹³ with in it none scapyd but I, and

and Huon thanks
him for his
welcome.

The minstrel
inquires his birth-
place and
adventures.

Huon resolves to
tell a lie in
defiance of
Oberon's
warning.

He declares that
he was born in
Africa,

and was
shipwrecked on
his way to
Damietta.

¹ praise. ² vnto. ³ seeing. ⁴ a. ⁵ Fol. xlii. col. 2.
⁶ to. ⁷ and king. ⁸ now. ⁹ trust. ¹⁰ Loue.
 ¹¹ was. ¹² in. ¹³ were.

The minstrel
tells how his
name is Mouflet,

and how his
master was the
Admiral
Gaudisse,
whom a
Frenchman
basely slew.

Huon says his
name is Salater.

The minstrel
laments his
desolate
condition,

and longs to
revenge himself
on his master's
murderer.

But he invites
Salater to follow
him to the
court of King
Ivoryn, the
brother of
Gaudisse.

I thanke mahounde that I am scapid alyue, therefore I
desyre you now to shew me your aduenture as I haue
shewyd you myne' / 'frende,' quod the mynstrell,
'sen¹ ye wyll know it / know for trouthe I am namyd 4
Mouflet / I am a mynstrell, as thou seest here by myne
instrumentes / and I say to² the that fro hense to the
red see there is none so connyng in all instrumentes as
I am / and I can do many other thynges / and the 8
doloure that thou seest me make is by cause of late I
haue lost my good lorde and mayster, the admyrall
Gaudys / who was slayne miserablye by a vacabounde
of Fraunce callyd Huon / that mahounde shame hym / 12
and brenge hym to an yll deth, ³for by hym I am fallen
in to pouerte and mysery. I pray the tell me thy
name' / 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'my name is Salater.'
'Well,' quod the mynstrell, 'Salater, dysmay the not 16
for the grete pouertes that thou hast sufferyd / thou
seest what aduenture Mahounde hath sent the / thou
art nowe better arayed than thou wert / yf thou wylt
folowe my counsell thou shalt haue no nede / thou 20
arte fayre & yonge / thou oughtest not to be dys-
mayed / but I that am old and aunsyent haue cause to
be dyscomforyd / sen¹ in myne old dayes I haue lost
my lord and mayster, the admyrall Gaudys, who dyd 24
me so mych good and profyte / I wold it pleasyd
mahounde that he that slew hym were in my power' /
whan Huon herde that he spake no worde, but cast
downe his hede. 'Salater,' quod the mynstrell, 'sen¹ 28
my lord is deed, I wyll goo to Mombrant to kynge
Ivoryn / to shewe hym the deth of his brother, the
admyrall Gaudys / and yf thou wylt abyde with me so
that thou wylt bere my fardell and harp a fote / or⁴ it be 32
halfe a yere past I waraunt⁵ thou shalt haue a horse /
for whan so euer thou shalt here me play vpon my

¹ seeing.

² vnto.

³ Fol. xlii. back, col. 1.

⁴ ere.

⁵ thee.

instrumentes / all the herers shall take therein suche
 pleasure / that they shall gyue me bothe gownes &
 mantelles, so that thou shalt haue myche a do to truss
 4 them *in my male,*' ¹'A,' after¹ quod Huon, 'I am
 content to serue you and to do all your *commaunde-*
mentes.' Than Huon tooke the male *in*² his necke &
 the harpe in his hande / and Mouflet, his mayster, bare
 8 the vyall / & thus the mayster and the seruaunt went
 on there way to go to Mombrant. 'A, good lord,'
 quod Huon, 'my herte ought to be sorowfull when I
 se myselfe in this case / that now I must become a
 12 mynstrelles varlet. goddes curse haue Oberon the
 dwarfe, who hath done me all this anoyauce.³ Alas,
 yf I had nowe my good hernes⁴ / my horne / and my
 cuppe ⁵I wold reken all the sorow that I haue enduryd
 16 at⁶ no thyng. A,⁷ whan I had .xiii. knyghtes to serue
 me, how is the⁸ chaunce now tournyd that I⁹ must *serue*
 a pore mynstrell.' whan Mouflet herd Huon make
 suche sorow within hymselfe he sayd / 'dere brother
 20 Salater, take good comfort / for ¹⁰or it be¹⁰ to morow at
 nyght, thou shalt se y^e good chere that shalbe made to
 me / wherof thou shalt haue parte / & of all y^e goodes
that I can gette.' 'Mayster,' quod Huon, 'mahounde
 24 rewarde you for the goodnes that ye haue shewyd me /
 & shall do' / thus the mayster & the *seruaunt* went
 forth to gether deuysynge. at last Huon spied be-
 hynde them *comynge* certen men of armes holdynge
 28 the way to Mombrant. 'Mayster,' quod Huon / 'here
 behynde vs are *comynge* men in armure, I know not
 yf¹¹ they wyll do vs any hurt or not' 'Salater,' quod
 Mouflet / 'be not abashyd / we wyl abyde here &
 32 know whether they wyll go' / & *with* in a while the
 men of warre came to them / who were in nombre a¹²

Huon follows
 Mouflet as his
 seruant.

Mouflet consoles
 Huon,
 who weeps
 because of his
 miserable estate.

Five hundred
 soldiers meet
 them on their
 journey,

1-1 'Well, Sir.' 2 on. 3 trouble. 4 armour.

5 Fol. xlii. back. col. 2. 6 as. 7 But. 8 this.

9 myself. 10-10 before. 11 whether. 12 omitted.

who are also
proceeding to
Mombtant.

They tell Huon
how they are
going to join
King Ivoryn's
army,
which he is
assembling to do
battle with the
Admiral who
holds
Esclaramonde at
Anfalerne.

.v.e. persons / the mynstrell salutyd them and sayd,
'Syr, I pray you shew me wheder ye wyll go' /
'frend,' quod one of them / 'by cause we se *that* ye be
a ientyll mynstrell I shall shewe you / we are goynge 4
to kyng Ivoryn of Mombtant / who wyll¹ go and
make ware vpon y^e admyrall Gallaffer / by cause *that*
now of late / the damesell Esclaramonde, doughter to
the admyrall Gaudys, passyd by Anfalarne / who sholde 8
haue ben brought to her vncle, kyng Ivoryn of Mom-
brant / but the admyrall Gallaffer toke her by force /
& slew all them that lede her / & hath maryed the
fayre Esclaramonde / wherof kyng Ivoryn is as sorow- 12
full as may be / & for *that* cause we be sent for by
kyng Ivoryn / who is ²in mynde² to assemble ali his
power / to go & dystroy y^e admyrall Galaffer. Now I
hane shewyd you the cause of our goynge to the cyte 16
of Mombtant.'

¶ ³Howe Huon and his mayster Mouflet
aryued at Mombtant, and how Huon spake
with kyng Ivoryn. Cap. .lii. 20



When Huon of Burdeux vnderstode the
paynims how they were goynge where
as¹ the lady Esclaramonde was / he was
surprysed,⁵ and sayde to his mayster / 24
'syr, I requyre you let vs go to the
warre with *them*' / 'salater,' quod Mouflet, 'beware
what thou sayest / for there⁶ as warre is I wolde not
come there for ony thyng.' Thus they wente forthe 28
tyll⁷ they came to Mombtant / and wente straye to the
palayes, where as he⁸ founde kyng Ivoryn & all his
barons / when the mynstrell sawe hym / he saluted hym
in the name of Mahounde / and sayd, 'syr, I am ryght 32
dolorous for the newes *that* I brynge you / for, syr,

¹ needs. ²⁻² minded. ³ Fol. xliii. col. 1. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ with ioye. ⁶ where. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ they.

Huon proposes to
Mouflet that they
should go to the
war.

The minstrel
refuses,

and arrives at
King Ivoryn's
court.

your brother, my lorde & mayster, the Admyrall
 Gaudys / is pyteously slayne.' 'Mouflet,' quod
 yuoryn, 'these newes hathe ben broughte to¹ me be-
 4 fore this tyme, wherof I am sory² / & also I am sory
 for my nece, the fayre Esclaramonde / who is kept
 fro me / by y^e Admyrall Galafer / & for ony message
 that I can sende to hym / he wyll not sende her³ to
 8 me. But by the faythe that I owe to my god
 Mahounde, I shall make hym suche warre that the
 memory therof shall be had a hondred yere hereafter /
 for I shall leue hym neuer a fote of lande, but I shall
 12 brynge all *in* to fyre and flame / and clene dystroy hym ;
 and in the dyspyte of his teth I wyll se my nece
 Esclaramond / and yf I may gete her I shall cause her
 to be stryken all to peces, and brynne⁴ her in to ashes /
 16 for my broder is deed by a vyllayne of Fraunce on⁵ whom
 she was amorous.' whan Huon herde him⁶ speke of his
 lady / his herte rose, and made promyse in hymselfe /
 that or⁷ the moneth were past he wolde go & se her or⁸
 20 fynde the maner⁹ to speake with her / then kyng
 yuoryn called Mouflet the mynstrell, & sayd, 'frend, I
 pray *thee* do some thyng to make me mery, for by
 reason of the dyspleasure that I haue had my ioye is
 24 lost / therfore it were better for me to take some myrth
 then to be long *in* sorow' / 'syr,' quod Mouflet, 'I am
 redy to do your pleasure' / then he toke his vyall &
 playde therof in suche wyse that it was grete melody
 28 to here it / for all the paynyns that were there had
 grete ioye & myrth, & made grete feest¹⁰ / when Huon
 herde it he sayde, 'good lord, I requyre the that this
 grete ioy may turne to me, as to here some good newes
 32 of her whom I desyre¹¹ sore to se.' when the mynstrell
 had fynysshed his songe / the paynyns dyde of theyr

The King
 declares his
 intention of
 killing the
 Admiral and
 Esclaramonde,

whose father fell
 at the hands of
 her French lover.

King Ivoryn asks
 Mouflet to make
 him merry.

The minstrel
 plays on his viol,

and the music so
 charms the
 Paynim hearers

¹ vnto. ² much agreed. ³ backe. ⁴ burne.

⁵ vppon. ⁶ Fol. xliii. col. 2. ⁷ ere. ⁸ and.

⁹ meanes how. ¹⁰ feasting. ¹¹ so.

that they give
Mouflet many
presents of
clothing.

Ivoryn says that
Huon is too fair
to serve a
minstrel.

Mouflet tells
how he succoured
him.

Ivoryn warns
Mouflet that Huon
will rob him of
his property,
and kill him
when he is rich.

clothes / and some gaue hym ther gowues / and some
theyr mantelles / he thought hymselfe ryght wel happy
that coude gyue the mynstrell ony thyng. Huon had
ynough to do to gather togyther the clothes that were 4
gyuen hym, and he put them in to his male / wher of
Huon was ioyfull bycause he sholde haue the one halfe.
Kynge yuoryn behelde Huon, & sayd to¹ them that were
about hym / 'grete damage it is that so fayre a yonge 8
man sholde serue a mynstrel' / 'syr kyng,'² quod
Mouflet, 'be not abashed though this yonge man do
serue me, he hathe cause so to do / for when youre
broder was dede I departed fro thens to come hyther, 12
and by the way I founde a grete oke, vnder the whiche
I sate downe to rest me, and therby was a fayre³
fountayne / fayre and clere / there I spred abrode a
towel on the grene² grasse / and set theron brede and 16
suche meate as I had, and drynke⁴ / and the same
tyme / this yonge man aryued & cam to¹ me al naked /
& prayed me for the loue of Mahound to gyue hym
some of my brede,⁵ and so I dyde, and clothed hym as 20
ye se / & I dyde so moche for hym that he promysed
to serue me and to bere my fardel and my harpe / and
more ouer, when I cam to ony passage of water he
wolde caste me in his necke as lyght as though I had 24
ben nothyng / he is so stronge, & bere me ouer' / 'a,
poore caytife,' quod kyng yuoryn, 'hast thou lyued so
long & can not perceyue why he doth it? / he abydeth
tyll⁶ thou haste gotten some ryches, and then he wyl 28
cut thy throte and cast thee in⁷ the ryuer, and then go
away with all thy ryches / cause hym to come & speke
with me' / 'syr,' quod Mouflet, 'he shal come to you,'
and so⁸ called Huon, and broughte hym to kynge 32
yuoryn. 'A, frende,' quod the kyng, 'I pray thee
shew me where thou were borne / for I haue pyte of the

¹ vnto. ² omitted. ³ greate. ⁴ as I had.


⁵ Fol. xliiii. back. col. 1. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ to. ⁸ he.

to se the in so low estate as to be varlet to a mynstrell /
 it were better for the to *serue* some prynce / or helpe
 to kepe a towne / or a castell, rather then thus to lese
 4 thy tyme / I wote not what I shold thi~~n~~ke therin. But
 that it semeth to be¹ / for² that thou arte of a faynte
 corage. what hathe moued the thus to do? / thou seest
 thy mayster hath nothyng but that he geteth with his
 8 vyal; canst thou fynde none other crafte³ to lyue by
 more honestly?' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I can craftes
 ynow / the whiche I shall name to⁴ you yf ye wyl here
 me' / 'say on,' quod yuoryn, 'for I haue gret desyre
 12 to know what thou canste do / but of one thyng I
 aduyse the: make no vaunt of ony thyng without *thou*
 canst do it in dede / for in euery thyng I wyll proue
thee.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I can mew a sparhawke /
 16 and I can chase the herte / & the wyld bore, and blowe
 the pryce, and serue the houndes of theyr ryghtes, and
 I can serue at the table before a grete prynce, and I can
 playe at chesse and tables as well as ony other can do /
 20 nor I neuer founde man coulde wynne of me yf I lyst.'

The King calls
 Huon and asks
 him why he is
 holding so mean a
 post.

Huon tells the
 crafts he knows.

¶ ⁵How kynge Iuoryn caused his daughter
⁶play at the chesse with Huon, ⁷on the⁷
 condycyon that yf he were mated he shold
 24 lese his heed, & yf she were mated / Huon
 shold ⁸lye with her all nyght⁸ / and how
 Huon wan the game. Cap. .liiii.

28  Hen kyng yuoryn herd Huon he sayd,
 'holde the to this, for I shall proue
 whether it be true that thou sayest or
 not' / 'yet, syr,⁹ I pray you let me
 shew forther what I can do / & then

Iuoryn cannot
 believe that Huon
 has so many
 accomplishments.

¹ mee.² omitted.³ meanes.⁴ vnto.⁵ Fol. xliiii. back, col. 2.⁶ to.⁷⁻⁷ vpon.⁸⁻⁸ haue her loue.⁹ (quoth Huon).

assaye me at youre pleasure.' 'By Mahounde,' quod the kynge, 'I am content ¹thou shewest¹ al that thou canst do.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I can ryght wel arme me / & set the helme on my hede / & bere a shelde & 4 spere / & rynne & galop a hors / & when it cometh to the poynt ²ther as² strokes shold be gyuen, ye may well sende forth a worse then I. Also, syr, I can ryght wel entre in to ladyes chambres to embrace & to³ kys them, & to 8 do ⁴the rest yf nede were⁴ / 'frende,' quod yuoryn, 'by *that*⁵ I here by *thee* thou canst do mo thynges then shold torne to good / but to proue the I shall cause thee to be assayed at y^e playe of the chesse. I haue a 12 fayre doughter *with* whom I wyll thou shalt play, ⁶on y^{e6} condycion *that* yf she wynne⁷ thou shalt lese thy hede / & yf *thou* canst mate her⁷ I promyse⁸ *that* thou shalt haue her ⁹one nyght *in* thy bed / to do⁹ *with* her 16 at thy pleasure, & a .C. marke of money there *with*.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'yf it were your pleasure I wolde be glad to forbere *that* enterpryce' / 'by Mahound,' quod y^e kyng, 'it shall be none other wyse, com ther of 20 what wyll' / in y^e mene seson *that* this bargen was makynge / a paynym went in to y^e ladyes chamber & shewed her howe there was *with* the kynge her fader a yonge man, &¹⁰ had made *promyse* how he shold play at 24 y^e chesse *with* her, ⁶on y^{e6} condycion *that* yf he lese¹¹ y^e game / ¹²he shall ¹³lese his hede / & yf he¹⁴ wynne, then ¹⁵to haue her all nyght in his bed to do his pleasure¹⁵ / & a C. marke of money / ¹⁶& dame,¹⁶ quod he, 'I ensure 28 you he *that* shall play agaynst you is the moost³ fayrest man *that* euer I sawe / pyte it is *that* he shold be a verlet to a mynstrel as he is' / 'by Mahounde,' quod

He will make trial of his knowledge of chess. He shall play with his daughter.

If he win he shall lie with her, and if he lose he shall surely die.

The maiden is summoned.


She learns how fair Huon is.

¹⁻¹ that thou shalt shew. ²⁻² where. ³ omitted.
⁴⁻⁴ them any seruice. ⁵ which. ⁶⁻⁶ vpon. ⁷ then.
⁸ thee. ⁹⁻⁹ to thy wife, to repose. ¹⁰ who. ¹¹ lost.
¹² Fol. xliiii, col. l. ¹³ should then. ¹⁴ chaunced to.
¹⁵⁻¹⁵ he to haue you to his wedded wife.
¹⁶⁻¹⁶ But, Madam.

y^e lady, 'I holde my father a fole when he thynketh
that I shold suffre a man to dye for wynnynge of
 a game at chesse.' Then yuoryn sent for his daughter
 4 by .ii. kynges, who brought her to y^e kynge her father /
 then yuoryn sayd, 'Doughter / *thou* must play at
 chesse *with* this yong varlet *that thou* seest here / so
that yf thou wyne ¹he shall lese his heed / & yf he
 8 wyne ¹I wyll *that* he shall ²lye *with thee* one nyght²
 to do with *thee* at his pleasure.' 'Father,' quod y^e
 lady, 'syn³ this is your pleasure, it is reason *that* I do it
 whether I wyll or not' / then she behelde Huon, whom
 12 she saw ⁴ryght fayre, & sayd to her selfe, 'By
 Mahounde, for the grete beaute *that* I se in this yonge
 man, I wolde this game were at an ende, so that I were
⁵a bed with hym all nyght.'⁵

King Ivoryn tells
 her the condition
 of the game,

and at sight of
 Huon she loves
 him madly.

16  Hen the lady was come theyr places
 were made redy / then she & Huon
 sate downe, & the⁶ kynge yuoryn & all
 the⁷ barons sat downe aboute them to
 20 se them play / then Huon sayd to the
 kynge / 'sir, I requyre you / *that* you nor none other
 do speke in our game / nother for y^e one party nor for
 y^e other' / 'frende,' quod the kynge / 'haue no doute
 24 therof' / & for more suerte the kynge caused to be
 cryed⁸ thorow⁹ all y^e palays that none sholde be so
 hardy¹⁰ to speke one worde on¹¹ payn of deth / then y^e
 chesse were made redy ; then¹² Huon sayd, 'lady, what
 28 game wyl ye play at?' 'frende,' quod she, 'at y^e game
 accustomed, *that* is, to be mated in y^e corner' / then
 they both began to study for y^e fyrst draught / ther
 were paynyns *that* beheld Huon / but he cared not for
 32 ony of them / but studyed on his game, y^e whiche they
 had begon, so *that* Huon had lost parte¹³ of his pawns,

Huon and the
 lady sit down to
 play.

Silence is
 enjoined on the
 spectators.

Huon loses some
 pawns.

¹ then. ²⁻² be thy husband. ³ seeing. ⁴ to be.
⁶⁻⁵ his wedded wife. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ his. ⁸ proclaimed.
⁹ out. ¹⁰ as. ¹¹ vpon. ¹² and. ¹³ Fol. xliiii. col. 2.

wher *with* he chaunged coloure & blussed as rede as a rose / the damsell perceyued him, & sayd, 'frende, wheron do ye thynke ye are nye¹ mated / anone my fader wyl stryke of your hede' / 'dame,'² quod he, 'as 4 yet y^e game is not done / grete shame shall your father haue, when ye shall lye all nyghte in myn armes, & I beyng but a varlet³ to a pore mynstrell' / when the barons herde Huon say so they began all to laugh. 8

The maiden neglects the game for love of Huon, and is at length checkmated.

Ivoryn is angry with his daughter.

Huon releases her from the wager he had made with the King.

The maiden reproaches herself because of her love for Huon.


And the lady who was⁴ surprysed with the loue of Huon for⁵ y^e grete beaute *that* she sawe in hym, so⁶ that she nye forgate all her play to thynke of Huon,⁷ ⁸so that⁸ she lost y^e game / wherof Huon was ⁹ioyfull / 12 & called y^e king, & sayd, 'sir, now may ye se how I can play / for¹⁰ yf I wyll¹¹ a lytell more study¹² / I wolde¹³ mate your doughter where as I lyst / when the kyng sawe that he sayd to his doughter / 'a ryse, cursed be 16 y^e houre that cuer⁶ I gate the / for grete dyshonour thou hast¹⁴ done to me, ¹⁵when so many grete men thou hast mated,¹⁵ & now I se here before me¹⁶ that a mynstrelles varlet hathe mated the' / 'sir,' quod 20 Huon, 'trouble not your self for that cause / as for the wager *that* I sholde wyn therby, I am content to relese it quyte ; let youre doughter go in to her chambre & sporte her with her damselles at her pleasure, & 24 I shall go & serue my mayster y^e mynstrel.' 'frende,' quod the kyng, 'yf *thou* wylt shewe me this curteyse, I shall gyue the a .C. marke in money' / 'sir,' quod Huon, 'I am content with youre pleasure' / & y^e lady 28 went her way sorowfull, & sayd to her selfe / 'a, false faynted hert, Mahounde confounde the / for yf I had knowe *that* thou woldest thus a¹⁷ refused my company

¹ almost. ² Madame. ³ seruant. ⁴ so.
⁶ in regard of. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ him. ⁸⁻⁸ wherby.
⁹ right. ¹⁰ but. ¹¹ would.
¹² studie but *before* a lytell more. ¹³ could. ¹⁴ now.
¹⁵⁻¹⁵ that heretofore hast mated so many great men.
¹⁶ my face. ¹⁷ haue.

I wold haue mated the / & then thou haddest lost thy
 hed / thus y^e mater passyd tyl y^e next daye / than kyng
 yuorin made ¹a crye¹ thorow² all the cyte that euery
 4 man sholde be armed & mounted on theyr horses, &
 that it was his mynd to set forward toward his enemyes.
 then euery man armed them & mounted on ³theyr
 horses; many helmes gletred agaynst the sonne / &
 8 many trompettes & taboures began to sowne / suche
 brute was made in the cyte *that* it was meruayle to
 here it.

Ivoryn orders his
 army to prepare
 for battle.

¶ How that⁴ Huon was aryued⁵ & mounted
 12 on a poore horse, and went after the army
 to anferlerne. Ca. liiii.

16  Hen Huon sawe howe he had not wher-
 with to arme him his hert mourned
 ryght sore / for gladly he wolde a⁶ gone
 forth with other yf he myght haue⁷
 ony hors to ryde⁸ on / ⁹he came to kyng
 yuorin, & sayd, 'syr, I requyre you let me haue a hors
 20 & harnes¹⁰ / that I may go with you to y^e batayle / &
 then shall ye se how I can ayde you' / 'frende,' *quod*
 yuorin, 'I am content¹¹ ye come¹² with me' / then the
 kyng commaunded one of his chamberlaynes to delyuer
 24 him¹³ hors & harneys,¹⁰ & y^e chamberlayn sayd / 'sir,
 beware what ye do / for often tymes suche fleynge
 vacabondes are of ¹³lyght corage / yf he haue¹³ hors &
 harneys¹⁰ / he may as sone go to your enemyes *parte* as
 28 to kepe with you / *sir*,¹⁴ neuer trust me but he is some
 counterfeyt varlet' / when the kyng herde him¹⁵ / he
 sayd, 'it may well be / yet let him haue a good harnes¹⁰

Huon begs for a
 horse and
 armour in order
 to enter the
 battle.

The King's
 chamberlain
 doubts Huon, and
 fears he may play
 the traitor.

1-1 proclamation. 2 out. 3 Fol. xliiii. back, col. 1.

4 omitted. 5 armyd. 6 haue. 7 had.

8 haue ridden. 9 wherefore. 10 armour. 11 that.

12 goe. 13 a. 11 and. 15 say so.

Ivoryn orders
that a poor horse
be given him.

A paynim offers
Huon a rusty old
sword,

which the
knight finds to
have come from
the same forge
as Roland's
sword.

Huon thanks the
paynim for the
sword.

He is given a
lean and feeble
horse,

and the paynims
mock at him
when he
mounts it.

& helme / & shelde / & let his hors be but of a small
valew, to the entent¹ he shall not go ferre of though he
wold' / the same tyme there was a paynym that herde
the kyng graunt how Huon shold haue harneys² / he 4
went to his howse & toke out of his cofer an olde
rusty swerde, & brought it to Huon / & sayd, ' frend, I
se wel ye haue no swerde to ayde yourself *with* all, &
therefore I gyue you this swerde, the whiche I haue 8
long kept *in* my cofer' / y^e paynym dyd gyue it to
Huon *in* a mockery / for he thought y^e swerde but of
a small valew. Huon toke y^e swerde & drew it out of
y^e sheth, & saw letters wrytten *theron in freuche* / 12
seyng³ how *this* swerd was forged by galans, who in his
daies forged .iiii. swerdes / & the¹ same swerd was one of
the thre / ⁴one was⁴ durandell, ⁵the which Rowlande
had⁵ / ⁶the .ii. was⁶ courtayn / when Huon had rede y^e 16
letters he was ryght ioyful, & sayd to y^e paynim /
' frende, for this good swerde *that* ye haue gyuen me I
thanke you / & I *promys* you yf I may lyue longe
I shall rewarde you with the double valewe therof. 20
after¹ Huon hadde this swerde there was brought⁷ him a
good harneis² / helme / sheld, & spere with a rusty hed.
Huon cared lytell for it by reason of y^e gret desyre *that*
he had to come to the place where as he myght shewe 24
his strength & vertue, then ther was brought to him a
lene hors, pyllid with a long necke & a grete hede /
when Huon saw *that* hors he toke him by y^e brydell &
lept vpon him without ony fote in y^e styrop, *in* the 28
syght of a .M. paynims *that* were there present / &
some said it was not wel done to geue him a hors
the which coude not serue nor ayde him in tyme of
nede / when Huon was mounted on his lene feble horse / 32
he was sorowfull / for well he perceyued how they

¹ that. ² armour. ³ Fol. xliiii. back, col. 2.

⁴⁻¹ and the second was called. ⁵⁻⁵ omitted.

⁶⁻⁶ and the third. ⁷ unto.

mocked him, & sayd softly to himselfe / 'a, ye fals
 paynyns, yf I may lyue a yere / I shall quyte your
 moekes' / then Huon rode forth with other / but for all
 4 that he coude do with his spurres, the hors wolde
 go / but his owne softe pace / wherof¹ dyuers paynyns
 mocked him. thus kyng yuoryn departed fro Mombrant
 with his grete army, & taryed in y^e felde for his men /
 8 & when they were all assembled togyder, then he
 departed & toke y^e way to Anfalerne / the which was²
 of / but .iiii. legges of³ / & whan they came there they
 ran before the eyte & draue away al the bestes,
 12 beofes and motons, & sent them to mombrant / then
 when y^e admyral galaffer saw kyng yuoryn before his
 eyte, & had dryuen away all the praye aboute the
 towne / he was so sorowfull that he was nere hande out
 16 of his wyt / & then he saw⁴ the fayre Esclaramonde
 before him, & sayd / 'dame,⁵ the grete loue that I haue
 set on you is this day derely bought / for by your
 occacion I se my countre destroyed & my men slayne &
 20 led in seruytude' / 'sir,' quod she, 'I am sory therof /
 it lyeth in you to amende it / syn⁶ this yll is come to
 you by me / then it is in you to render me to kyng
 yuoryn / & therby ye & your countre shall be in rest &
 24 peace' / 'fayre lady,' quod Galaffer / 'by y^e grace of
 Mahound / for ony fere that I haue of yuoryn your
 vncle I wyll not render you in to his handes tyll⁷ I haue
 had of you my pleasir' / 'sir,' quod she, 'ye may do
 28 with me as it shall please you after that the .ii. yeres
 be past for y^e accomplysshing of myn auow.' 'dame,'⁵
 quod Galaffer⁸ / '8 or I⁸ render you to your vncle yuoryn
 I shall haue neuer a foote of lande,⁹ fyrst it shall be
 32 clene dystroyed.'

Ivoryn leads his
 army to
 Anfalerne,

and captures all
 the cattle before
 the city.

The Admiral is in
 fear for himself
 and country,

and tells
 Esclaramonde she
 has caused his
 misery.
 She asks to be
 surrendered to
 King Ivoryn,

but the Admiral
 refuses to follow
 her advice.

¹ wherat. ² distant. ³ omitted. ⁴ Fol. xlv. col. 1.

⁵ Madame. ⁶ seeing. ⁷ vntill. ⁸⁻⁸ before I will.

⁹ for.

¶ Howe Huon fought with Sorbryn & slewe
 hym, & wan the good horse Blanchardyn,
 wheron he mounted, & wan the batayle /
 & was brought with grete tryumphe to 4
 Mombrant. Cap. .lv.

Sorbryn, the
 Admiral's
 nephew, offers to
 challenge the
 boldest of
 Ivoryn's soldiers,



¶ Hen Sorbryn, nephew to y^e admyrall
 Galaffer, herde his vncler make suche
 sorow, he sayd to him / 'fayre vncler, 8
 be not dysmayed, though yuoryn hath
 taken & slayne some of your men, &
 dryuen away your bestes. for eche¹ of yours, yf I
 lyue, I shall render agayn to you .iiii. I shal tell you 12
 how I shal² go & arme me, & yssu out & shew to
 yuoryn that³ he² set one or .ii. of y^e moost⁴ hardyest⁵ of
 all his hoost to fyght with me / &⁶ yf it be so that I be
 ouercome / then⁷ rendre his⁸ nece Esclaramond to him 16
 to do with her at his pleasur; & yf that I dysecomfyte
 his men / then let him departe, so that⁹ all y^e damage
 that he hath¹⁰ to you in this warre he to¹¹ render agayne
 to you y^e double therof / for better it were that this 20
 warre shold ende by .ii. ¹²men rather then so moche
 people shold be dystroyed' / 'fayre nephew,' quod
 Galaffer, 'I herde neuer a better worde / I am well
 content yf ye wyll haue it thus' / then Sorbryn went 24
 & armed him¹³ / he was a goodly knyght / for in all y^e
 paynyms landes there was not his pere, nor none that a
 p^{ro}ched nere to his valyauntnes / when he was armed,
 then blanchardin, his good hors, was brought to him / 28
 y^e bouute¹⁴ of this hors exceeded al other, & of beaute
 ther was none lyke him / he was as whyte as snow / y^e
 fresshenes of his aparyll, it was so ryche & goodly that

on the condition
 that if he is
 conquered,
 Esclaramonde
 shall be restored,

and if he is
 victorious,
 Ivoryn shall
 return after
 paying twice the
 value of the
 damage he has
 already done.

Sorbryn arms
 him-elf,
 and his good
 horse Blanchardin
 is brought him.

¹ one. ² will. ³ if. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ men. ⁶ that.

⁷ you to. ⁸ faire. ⁹ for. ¹⁰ done. ¹¹ will.

¹² Fol. xlv. col. 2. ¹³ himself. ¹⁴ goodness.

I can not make no¹ mencyon therof; but² no man
 coude esteme the valew of y^e ryches of y^e brydel, sadel
 & harnais / then sorbrin lept vpon his hors with out
 4 oni styrop / ³then he³ toke a grete spere, & so rode out
 of y^e cyte / & when he saw kyng yuoryn a ferre of, he
 cryed a loude & said / 'a, thou yuorin of mombrant, y^e
 admirall Galaffer hath sent me to the, & wyl that thou
 8 do arme on of ⁴y^e most⁴ valyauntest men of thy court,
 & let him come agaynst me / & yf he can vanquysse
 me / then he shal delyuer to thee thy nece Esclaramond /
 & ⁵yf I ouercome thy man, then thou to returne to thy
 12 cite & suffer thy nece⁶ styll with him / & also thou to
 restore all y^e domages that thou hast done⁷ him & his in
 this warre⁷ / when yuoryn herd the paynym / he loked
 aboute him to se yf ony of his men wold take on him
 16 this enterpryce to fyghte with Sorbryn / but there was
 no paynym that durste speke one worde / for they fered
 Sorbryn for y^e fyersnes that was in him / & they said
 amonge them selfe that who so euer dyd fyght agaynst
 20 him were lyke miserably to fynysse his days / y^e same
 tyme that yuorin spake with Sorbryn / Huon was amonge
 y^e other paynyms, & herd what sorbryn had sayd /
 & also he sawe⁸ no man durst go agaynst Sorbryn /
 24 then as wel as he myght he gate himselfe out of the prese
 vpon his lene horse. ³he³ strake him with his sporres /
 but for all that he coude do the horse wold nother trot nor
 galop / but go styll his owne pase. y^e ⁹olde mynstrell
 28 beheld Huon his varlet, who made hym redy to fight
 agaynst the paynym / and saw that he was so yll
 horsed, he ¹⁰escryed a ¹⁰hye, & sayd / 'syr kyng
 yuoryn / it shal be to ¹¹you grete velany¹² when suche a
 32 horse that is no thyng worth ye haue delyuerd to ¹¹my
 varlet / who goeth for your sake to fyght with Sorbryn,

He rides to King
Ivoryn and tells
him his purpose.

None of Ivoryn's
men will accept
Sorbryn's
challenge.

Huon hears
Sorbryn's words

and rides forward
on his poor steed.

The minstrell
reproaches
Ivoryn with the
bad plight of his
servant's horse,
for Huon will
fight against
Sorbryn.

¹ due. ² for. ³⁻³ and. ⁴⁻⁴ thy. ⁵ but.
⁶ to remaine. ⁷ to. ⁸ that. ⁹ Fol. xlv. back, col. 1.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ cryed on. ¹¹ vnto. ¹² dishonour.

Huon tells
Sorbryn that he
is a Christian.

with whom none of your¹ men dare fyghte / grete synne
it is that he hath not a better horse' / then Huon sayd
to² Sorbryn, 'Sarazyn, I pray the speke with me' /
'Frende,' quod Sorbryn, 'what wylte thou with me?' / 4
'paynym,' quod Huon, 'I requyre *thee*³ proue thy
vertue agaynst me.' 'Then,' quod Sorbryn, 'tell me,
art thou a paynyme or a sarazyn?' 'Frende,' quod
Huon, 'I am nother paynym nor sarazyn / but I am 8
crystened / byleuyng in the lawe of Jesu cryste / &
thoughe thou seest me but poorely apparelled / dyspysse
me not / for I am com of a noble extraccyon / wherfore
I requyre the on thy lawe that thou beleuest on, lette 12

Sorbryn counsels
him not to accept
the challenge.

me not go without batayle.' 'Frende,' quod Sorbryn,
'in this request thou doest gret foly / for thou desyrest
thy deth. I haue pyte of the / and therefore I counsell
the to returne backe.' 'Paynym,' quod Huon, 'I had 16
rather dye then to returne or⁴ I haue iusted with *thee*.'
then they went eche fro other to take theyr course, but
for all that euer Huon coude do, his horse wolde not
auaunce forth / wherof Huon was sore dyspleased, and 20
sayd, 'A, very god and man / I desyre the to gyue
me y^e grace that I myght wyne this horse that this
paynyme doth ryde on.'⁵ When Huon saw that his
horse wolde nother⁶ forwarde nor backe warde / he set 24

His horse will
hardly bear him,

his shelde agaynst his enemy / and Sorbryn came ryn-
nyng lyke the tempest, and with his spere strake in
Huons shelde such a stroke that the buckles nor ony
thyng elle coude resyste the stroke / but the shelde 28
was perced through out / but the good harneys⁷ saued
Huon fro⁸ all hurtes, and he remoued no more for the
stroke then⁹ it had ben a strong walle / wherof yuorin
and all other had grete meruayle, & said one to another / 32
how they had neuer sene before so grete a stroke nor a
goodlyer reseyt therof without fallynge to the erthe.

and Sorbryn
rushes at him,

striking a heavy
blow.

But Huon
withstands its
force,

¹ other. ² vnto. ³ to. ⁴ ere. ⁵ vppon.
⁶ go. ⁷ armour. ⁸ Fol. xlv. back, col. 2. ⁹ if.

euery man praysed gretely Huon that he helde hym
 selfe so fermely. 'By Mahouude,' quod yuoryn, 'our
 man is fyers and of gret hardynes. I wolde he were
 4 mounted nowe on¹ my hors.' And Huon, who had
 receyued the grete stroke, in grete yre cast downe his
 spere and toke his swerde with bothe his handes, &
 gaue ther with the paynym a grete stroke as he passed
 8 by hym a hye on¹ his helme / the stroke was so pusante
 that nother the helme nor coyffe of stele coude not²
 resyst the stroke / but that his heed was clouen to the
 sholdres, and so he fell downe deed in y^e felde / then
 12 Huon, who was quyeke and lyght / toke the good horse
 Blanchardyn by the reyne & alyghted fro his owne
 horse, without fete in the styrop lept vp² vpon the
 paynmys horse, & lefte his owne in the felde. and
 16 when he sawe hym self on Blanchardyn / he ³dashed
 to him³ his sporres to proue hym / when the horse felte
 the sporres / he began to lepe & gambaud & galop as it
 had ben the thonder / ⁴the paynmys had meruayle that
 20 he had not fallen to the erthe / ⁵when he had well
 proued *him* and turned hym in and out / he thought he
 wolde not gyue hym for the valewe of a realme. then
 he cam to⁶ kyng yuoryn with .xx. gambaudes. 'By
 24 mahouude,' quod yuoryn, 'this varlet semeth rather
 sone to a kyng or prynee then to be a varlet to a myn-
 strell' / then he came to⁶ Huon and embraced hym / &
 made hym grete feest⁷ / and the paynmys *that* were
 28 within Anferlerne with the admyrall Galaffer yssued out
 of the eyte / and whan Galaffer saw his nephew slayn,
 he rode about hym thre tymes and made a pyteous com-
⁸playnt, and sayde, 'A, ryght dere nephew, I may well
 32 compleyne⁹ your youth / when I se you this¹⁰ pyteously
 slayne / certaynely yf I lyue longe your deth shall

and taking his
own sword in
both his hands,

cleaves Sorbryn's
head to the
shoulders.

Huon seizes his
adversary's good
horse
Blanchardyn.

Iuoryn receives
Huon well and
makes for him a
great feast.

The Admyrall
deplores the
death of his
nephew,

¹ vpon. ² omitted. ³⁻³ smoot him with. ⁴ and.

⁵ so.

⁶ vnto.

⁷ respecte.

⁸ Fol. xlvi. col. 1.

⁹⁻⁹ by reason of.

¹⁰ thus.

and leads his men
on to battle.

Huon fights with
vigour, and does
much havoc.

Through his
prowess the
Admiral is
thoroughly
worsted.

Huon gives a
horse to the
paynim who had
bestowed the
sword upon him.

Yuoryn drives the
Admiral within
his city, and
departs.

derely be bought' / ¹he caused the deed body to be
 caryed *in* to the cyte with grete lamentacyons / ²then
 he & his men entred in to the batayle. there³ was
 grete slaughter made on both partes; but amonge all ⁴
 other Huon dyd meruayles / he slewe and bette downe
 & tare of helmes & strake out braynes with the pomell
 of his swerd / he slewe and bette downe all that came
 within his stroke / his hye⁴ prowes was suche that no ⁸
 paynym durst abyde him, but fled as the shepe doth
 fro the wolues / he dyd so moche by vertue of his
 arnes *that* within shorte space he brought all the⁵
 enemys to playne dysecomfyture / so that the admyrall ¹²
 Galaffer *with* moche payne fled and entred in to the
 cyte, ryght sorowfull for y^e losse that he had receyued
 that day / for the thyrde parte of his men were slayne
 in the batayl, and all by the valyauntnes of Huon, the ¹⁶
 whiche was so grete that kyng yuoryn and his barons
 stode styll to beholde his valyaunt dedes / and as Huon
 foughthe he spyed out the paynym that had gyuen him
 his swerde / then he remembred the promys that he ²⁰
 had made hym / then² he lyft vp his swerd & strake a⁶
 paynym ther with so that he claue his heed / to the
 brest & so⁷ fel downe dede / and Huon toke the
 paynyms horse & gaue the horse to hym that had ²⁴
 gyuen hym the good swerde / and sayd, 'frende, take
 it⁸ *in* worth the gyfte of this horse for a rewarde for
 the good swerde ye gaue me' / 'syr,' *quod* the paynym,
 'I thanke you' / fynally,⁹ Huon dyd so moche that ²⁸
 there was no paynym that durst abyde him / but fled
 and entred into the cyte of Anfalerne. then they
 closed their gates & lyfte vp theyr brydges / and kyng
 yuoryns men departed with the boty¹⁰ they had wonne. ³²
 then with gret tryumphe Huon ¹¹was conuayed rydyng

¹ so. ² and. ³ where. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ his.
⁶ nother. ⁷ hee. ⁸ well. ⁹ In breefe. ¹⁰ that.

¹¹ Fol. xlvi. col. 2.

cheke by cheke by kyngye yuoryn, and so brought to Mombrant, where as they were receyued with gret ioy. and the admyral Galaffer was entred in to Anferlerne in 4 grete sorow for Sorbryn his nephew, who was deed, & also for his men that he hadde lost in batayle / and when he was vnarmed he caused his nephew to be buryed with sore wepynges and lamentacyons. Now 8 let vs leue spekyngye of them ¹tyll we returne therto agayne.¹

Huon is treated with great honour.

In deep sorrow the Admiral buries his nephew.

¶ How Huon was set² in grete honoure, and satte at the table with kyngye yuoryn of Mombrant. Capitulo .lvi.

16 **W**hen yuoryn was entred into Mombrant he wente and vnarmed hym³ / his doughter came to⁴ hym to make him feest⁵ / and when he sawe his doughter / he kyssyd her and sayd, ‘Dere doughter / thou wert mated in a good houre by the mynstralles varlet / for at⁶ y^e day of batayle that 20 we haue had agaynst the admyrall Galafer, who⁷ was dyscomfyted by the only prowes of this varlet by whom thou were mated ; thankyd be my god Mahound / for by him I haue ouercome myn enymyes / & be syde that, he 24 fought hande to hande agaynst sorbryn, nephew to the Admyrall Galaffer / & he slewe hym / but yf I maye lyue one yere, the grete seruyce that he hathe done to⁴ me shall be euen ryght well rewarded’ / ‘father,’ quod 28 the lady, ‘ye are bounde so to do’ / then kyngye yuoryn went vp in to his palayes, and his doughter with him, & Huon / went to y^e lodyng where as y^e mynstrell was lodged / then⁸ he vnarmed him and went with his

Ivoryn tells his daughter of Huon's valorous deeds.

1-1 vntill wee haue occasion to returne vnto them againe.

2 hadde. 3 and. 4 vnto. 5 reuerence.

6 in. 7 he. 8 where.

Ivoryn invites
Huon to sit at
his table with
him,

and offers him all
his valuables,

and anything
further that he
may desire.

After dinner

Mouflet plays
music before the
King.

The minstrel still
addresses Huon
as his servant,
to the amusement
of the court.

maister ¹to the palayes / ²when kyngc yuoryn sawe
them, the kyng auansed forth and toke Huon by the
hande, & sayd / 'frende, ye shall go with me and syt at
my table / for I can not do you to moche honoure for ⁴
y^e good seruyce *that* ye haue done³ me. I habandon
to³ you all my house to do therin at your pleasure / take
all my golde and syluer & iewelles, & gyue therof at
your pleasure / I ordeyn & wyll that all that ye ⁸
commaunde shal be done; all that is here I habandon
to³ you / ye, in y^e ladys chambres take there your
pleasure as ye lyste / & when I go out ye shall go *with*
me.' 'syr,' *quod* Huon, 'of the grete honoure that ye ¹²
haue done to me I thanke you' / then they sat downe
at the table / & when they had denyd, the kyngc and
Huon satte togyder on⁴ the ryche carpettes / then
Mouflet the mynstrell apoynted⁵ his vyall, and played ¹⁶
so melodyously that the paynyns that herle *him* had
grete meruayle therof / for the vyall made so swete a
swonde / that it semed to be the mermaydes of the
see / kyngc yuoryn & all his lordes had so gret ioye ²⁰
that it semed to³ *them* that they were in the glory
of paradyce, so that there was no paynyne but *that*
gaue hym gownes & mantelles & other iewelles. the
mynstrell saw Huon syt by the kyng, & ²⁴ ⁶sayd / 'frende,
yesterday I was your mayster, & now I am⁷ your
mynstrell / I thynke now ye haue lytell care for me /
yet I praye you come to³ me & gather togyder these
clothes, & put them in my male as ye haue done or⁸ ²⁸
this' / when the kyngc and his lordes herd that they
began to laughe. Now let us leue spekyngc of them /
& speke⁹ of y^e olde Gerames.

¹ Fol. xlvi. back, col. 1. ² but. ³ vnto. ⁴ vppon.

⁶ opened. ⁶ hee. ⁷ become. ⁸ ere.

⁹ say somewhat.

¶ How the olde Gerames aryued at Anfa-
lerne by fortune, and the admyrall Galaffer
retayned hym to mayntayn his warre / and
4 how the fayre Esclaramonde spake with
1 hym. Cap. .lvii.



8 E haue herd here before y^e adventures
that hath fallen to Huon, & how y^e
olde Gerames & .xiii. with him departed
& lefte Huon by cause he wolde not
byleue them, wherby fell to hym suche
aduentures as ye haue² herde, & how Gerames & his
12 companions that were in y^e lytel shyp sayled forth in
the tempest without³ knowlege what was become of
Huon / but they thought rather he had ben deed then
alyue / and so within a moneth⁴ they were dryuen
16 by another tempest to the porte of Anfalerne / when
Gerames sawe how they were aryued there, he sayd to
his company / 'syr, we be not aryued at a good porte /
in this eyte dwelleth a paynym kynge who byleueth
20 ⁵nother in god nor in good saynt⁵ / a more fyers
paynyme can not be founde fro hens to the rede see ;
he is called the admyrall Galaffer ; without god haue
pyte of vs I can not se but we are lyke to dye / & we
24 can not returne back' / y^e same tyme the admyrall
Galaffer was rysen fro dyner, & loked out at a wyndow
& behelde the see syde / & than he perceyued the
lytell shyp where Gerames & his company were in /
28 when he saw it he went downe with som of his men,
desyringe to knowe what they were that ther ariued /
then he aproched to y^e shyp & said / 'syr, what men
be you that are thus aryued at my porte?' / 'sir,' quod
32 Gerames, 'we be frenchmen, pylgrymes, & are goyng to
offre at y^e holy sepulere, for⁶ fortune of y^e se hath

Gerames and his
companions in
their little boat
are driven to the
port of Anfalerne.

Gerames fears
that the Admiral
will use them ill.

The Admiral
comes down from
his palace,
and meeting
the knights,
inquires whence
they have come.

Gerames tells
their misfortune.

¹ Fol. xlvi. back, col. 2. ² since. ³ any. ⁴ after.
⁵⁻⁵ not in our god. ⁶ the.

The Admiral
receives them
kindly,

speaks to them of
King Ivoryn's
hostility.

Gerames promises
to fight for him
if his cause be
just.

The Admiral
tells him of
Esclaramonde's
arrival there,

and how King
Ivoryn seeks her
life,

and how he
himself has
wedded her,

brought vs hyder / & therefore, syr, yf there be ony
trybute *that* we ought to paye, we are redy to do your
pleasir' / 'syr,' *quod* ye admyrall, 'haue no dout
that by me or ony of min ye shal haue oni displeasur / 4
for yf ye wyll abyde *with* me ye are wel aryued' /
'sir,' *quod* Gerames, ¹' yf it may¹ please you,² shew vs
the cause why' / 'sir,'³ *quod* the admyrall,⁴ 'I shall shewe
you / trewe it is here nere me dwelleth kyng yuoryn of 8
Mombtant,⁵ who maketh⁶ me grete warre; he sleeth my
men & dystroyeth my countre, wherof I haue grete
sorowe in my hert' / 'sir,' *quod* Gerames, 'yf your
quarell be iust & ryghtfull we shall be all redy to ayde 12
you truly / for, *sir*, without your quarell be good
we wyll not abyde *with* you.' 'syr,' *quod* the
admyrall, 'I shall shewe you the trouth / so it was on⁶
a day I stode in a wyndowe & loked downe to y^e see 16
syde, as I dyd now when ye aryued at this porte /
& then I saw a shyp comynge & toke anere there as ye
be now / & in the shyp there was a damsell & x
maryners / who thought to haue ledde her to⁷ kyng 20
yuoryn of Mombtant; I can not tel where they had
taken her / & ⁸ she was doughter to the admyral
Gaudys / *that* Mahound take his soule / ⁹ I know⁹ for
certain *that* yf kyng yuoryn myght haue the damsell / 24
he wolde a¹⁰ brent¹¹ her / by cause it hath ben shewed
him that she was the cause of the deth of her father y^e
Admyral Gaudys / who was broder to yuoryn / & so
he is vnele to the damsell / and when I was aduertysed 28
that the .x. maryners wolde haue delyuered her in to
the handes of her vnele yuoryn / I toke her fro them &
slew them all by cause they wold not delyuere her ¹²with
fayrnes /¹² & thus I haue wedded the damsel / &¹³ 32

¹⁻¹ I would it might. ² to. ³ Why. ⁴ that.

⁵ Fol. xlviij. col. 1. ⁶ vppon. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ but.

⁹⁻⁹ and I knewe. ¹⁰ haue. ¹¹ burnt.

¹²⁻¹² to me with entreatie. ¹³ omitted.

when yuoryn herd this he made me warre / & was here
 before my cite *with* al his pusanee, & hath slayn my
 men / & led awaye all my bestes & prouysyon, & hath
 4 brent¹ & dystroyed my countrie / & euery day he cometh
 & ouer ryne all y^e countrie, & he hath *with* him a yong
 man / I know not of what countrie he is of / &² this
 8 loued,³ who was called Sorbrin / he was sone to my
 sister / for whom I haue suche sorow at my hert *that*
 it can not be apeased / & he hath led away his horse
 called Blanchardyn, the whiche is the best horse in x
 12 realmes / his lyke is not in al y^e world; wherfore
 I desyre you, as I maye deserue your *seruise*, to abyde
with me / & to do so moch ⁴*that* I myght haue y^e sayd
 yong man taken prisoner & the hors agayn to me
 16 restored / & yf ye can this do I shall so rewarde you
that y^e shall alwayes be ryche, & all tho⁵ in your
 company / 'sir,' quod Gerames / 'yf he come ony
 more hyder, & that ye shew me him / I shall do my
 20 payn⁶ to bryng him & y^e hors also to⁷ you' / 'frende,'
 quod the admyrall, 'yf ye wyl shew me this curteyse I
 shal habandon all my realme to be at your pleasure &
commauement' / *with* these wordes the olde Gerames
 24 yssued out of y^e shyp & all his company / & entred in
 to y^e cyte of Anfalerne *with* the admyral Galaffier³ /
 when they came to the palayes Gerames sayd / 'sir, I
 & my company requyre you to shew vs the damsell for
 28 whose sake ye maynten this warre.' 'frende,' quod the
 admyrall, 'yf ye were a yonge man I wolde not shewe
 her to⁷ you / but I se wel ye be old & auneyent /
 wherfore no yonge lady wyl set ony thyng by you' /
 32 then y^e admyral toke Gerames by y^e hande & led him
 in to the chambre where as Escharamonde was / as sone
 as the lady saw Gerames she knew him, wherwith she

and how Sorbrin
 has been slain
 by Ivoryn's
 champion.

Gerames offers to
 aid the Admiral
 in his war with
 the King.

Gerames and his
 company enter
 the city.

Gerames asks to
 see Escharamonde.

The damsel
 recognizes the
 old man,

¹ burnt. ² but. ³ and. ⁴ Fol. xlviij. col. 2.
⁵ those. ⁶ best. ⁷ vnto.

and cries aloud. began to chaunge coloure, & fel downe in a sowne in the chambre, makyng a grete crye¹ / when y^e admyral Galaffer saw *that* he was ryght sorowful, & sayd / 'fayre lady, why do ye make *this* sorow? are ye troubled 4 for² y^e syght of this olde man *that* I haue brought hyder?' / 'nay, surely, *sir*,' quod she / 'it is for a colyke *that* hath taken me in the ryght syde, wher by I haue often tymes grete payn³ / but, syr, yf it were 8 your pleasir I wolde gladly speke *with* this frenche knyght / for customably they know many thynges / & perauenture he may shew me such thinges as shalbe for my helth / for frenchemen are ryght subtyl⁴ in gynyng 12 of good counsell' / 'dame,'⁵ quod y^e admyral, 'it pleaseth me well *that* ye speke *with* him secretly' / then y^e lady called Gerames, & sayd / 'frende, I pray *thee* gyue me some good counsel *that* I may be eased of the payne 16 *that* I endure' / 'dame,'⁵ quod Gerames / 'for the honoure of you & of the admyrall that is here present, I shall ayde you in suche wyse that ye shall be eased of the payne *that* ye endure' / then Gerames, who was 20 subtyl, wel perceyued the mynde of the lady / then he aproched nere to⁷ her &⁸ sat downe togyder on a couche therby / 'Gerames,' quod the lady, 'I praye you what aduenture hath brought you hyther?' / 'dame,'⁵ quod 24 he, 'we be come hyther by reason of tempest of the see / but, dame,'⁹ quod he, 'I pray you what is become of Huon?' / 'by my fayth,' quod she, 'I byleue he is deed⁶ for when ye departed fro vs, such a meruaylous 28 tempest rose on the see that all *that* were in our shyp were perysshed, & the shyp drowned & broken in small peeces, excepte Huon & I / we saued vs on a table of wode, wherupon we aryued in an yle *that* was nere 32 vs / & when we were on the lande, there cam to⁷ vs

The Admyral inquires in vain why Esclaramonde is affected at the sight of him,

but he leaves the two together.

Esclaramonde asks how Gerames came to Anfalerne.

Gerames tells her, and inquires for Huon.

¹ outerie. ² at. ³ annoyance. ⁴ discreet.

⁵ Madame. ⁶ Fol. xlviij. back, col. I. ⁷ vnto.

⁸ they. ⁹ Ladie.

- .x. maryners, & toke me fro thens, & left Huon there
 byndfelde, &¹ handes & fete faste bounde, so that he
 had no power to releue *himselfe*; & these .x. maryners
 4 brought me hyder, & the admyral Galaffer hath slayn
 them all / therfore I thynke surely *that* Huon is
 deed; Iesu haue mercy on his ²soule² / and thus I am
 here with this admyrall, who hath assured me to wedde
 8 me / but as yet he neuer medled with me bodely / but
 I haue made him to byleue that I made a vowe to
 Mahoude, for .ii. yere to come³ no man shold haue
 parte⁴ of my body, & that is for the loue of Huon,
 12 whom I can not forgette. the admyral hath beleued
 me /⁵ for as long as I lyue I shal neuer forgete Huon, &
 shal alwayes,⁶ to dye in y^e payne,⁷ kepe me fro the
 bodely company of ony man lyunge / a, syr Gerames!
 16 yf ye myght do so moche that I might scape fro hens
 with you / ye shold do me a grete curteyse / for yf I
 myghte scape fro hens, & come in to a crysten realme, I
 wolde yelde my selfe in to some abbey of nonnes, to y^e
 20 entent *that* the resydew of my lyfe I myght pray for the
 soule of my louer ⁸Huon' / 'dame,'⁹ quod Gerames, 'be
 not dysmayed, for yf I can scape fro hens, what so euer
 come¹⁰ ther of, I shall cary you *with* me' / then the
 24 admyral came to¹¹ them & sayd / 'frende, ye hold ouer
 longe talkyng *with* the damsell / come a way! ye haue
 taryed there longe ynow' / then Gerames departed fro
 Esclaramonde, straynyng her by the hande / & the
 28 admyrall Galaffer toke Gerames by y^e arme / & brought
 him in to y^e hal to supper / & after supper they
 comoned of the feates of y^e warre. Nowe let vs leue
 spekyng of them / & ¹²speke of¹² kyng yuoryn of
 32 mombrant, & of¹³ Huon who was *with* him.

Esclaramonde
says that she be-
lieves him dead,

but that she will
remain faithful
to him.

She desires to
enter a convent.

The Admiral calls
on Gerames to
close his
interview with
Esclaramonde.

The Admiral
receives Gerames
at dinner.

¹ his. ²⁻² vpon him. ³ that. ⁴ vse. ⁵ and.

⁶ be ready. ⁷ to. ⁸ Fol. xlvii. back, col. 2.

⁹ Madam. ¹⁰ to me. ¹¹ vnto. ¹²⁻¹² returne to.

¹³ noble.

¶ How kyng yuoryn cam agayne before Anfalerne, & how Gerames and Huon fought togyder, & at last they knewe eche other, & how they entred in to Anfalerne & 4 closed¹ the admyrall without. Cap. .lviii.



Huon advises
Ivoryn to attack
Anfalern a
second time.

Ow sheweth y^e story² that a³ .ii. dayes after that kyng yuoryn had made his cours before Anfalerne / 8 then Huon came to yuoryn and sayde: ‘Syr, cause your men too be armed, & let vs go vvyte the Admyrall ⁴Galaffer / for a man that is in warre ought neuer to lye styll tyll he 12 hathe brought his enemy to vtraunce⁵ / for it semeth that he setteth but lytell by you when he kepeth styll your nece agaynst your wyl, ⁶& is⁶ your subiecte, &⁷ holdeth his landes of you’ / ‘frende,’ quod yuoryn, 16 ‘ye say truly, I shall do by your counsell.’ then he made to be cryed through the cyte, that euery man sholde make him redy to go with y^e kyng before Anfalerne / &⁸ Huon, who was desyrous to haue batayle, 20 armed him, & toke blanchardyn, his good horse, &⁸ mounted on hym without ony styrop, & toke a grete spere in his hande with a good sharpe hede / &⁹ y^e same tyme as Huon was in the palayes, yuoryns daughter 24 was lenyng in a wyndowe in her chambre, accompanied with dyners ladyes & damselles / she behelde Huon, & she sayd ‘by Mahoude, it is ¹⁰goodly¹⁰ to behold yonder yong man syttyng on y^e hors blanchardyne / 28 ryght¹¹ well¹² becometh hym⁸ his armure / a goodlyer man can not be founde, nor a more hardy / for y^e last day he slew Sorbyn, the ¹³most valyant¹³ knyght in all

Mounted on
Elanchardyn,
Huon sets out.

Ivoryn's daughter
admires his
beauty from her
window.

¹ shut. ² Historie. ³ aboute. ⁴ Fol. xlviij. col. 1.
⁵ vtter ruin. ⁶⁻⁶ hee being. ⁷ one that. ⁸ omitted.
⁹ Now. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ a goodly sight. ¹¹ how. ¹² he.
¹³⁻¹³ valiantest.

pagany, & also wan his good hors / but yet I am dys-
 pleased with *him* in¹ *that* when he played with me at
 the chesse / he was not so hardy, ones² to embrace nor³
 4 kysse me ; yf he had, I wolde haue loued *him* in suche
 wyse that yf he had requyred of me⁴ ony thyng elle⁴,
 I wolde not a⁵ refused *him* / though my fader had
 sworne the contrary a C tymes⁷ / thus the ladyes &
 8 damselles deuysed togyder of⁶ Huon, who⁷ set lytell
 therby / thus kyng yuoryn & his men yssued out of y^e
 cyte of Mombrant, & cam in⁷ to y^e felde, & then rode
 forth toward Anfalerne, & at the last cam before the
 12 gates of the cyte, & there ordred *them* in batayle⁸ / &
 Huon, who had grete desyre too attayne to good⁷
 renowne, cam to the gate with his spere in his hande,
 & cryed a hye⁹ to *them that* were on the walles, & sayde,
 16 'where is Galaffier your lorde? go & shew *him that* he
 come¹⁰ & iust agaynst *him that* hath slayne his nephew,
 & *that* I wyl serue *him* in lykwyse¹¹ if I may mete
 with *him* in batayle, or elles he shall delyuer to me y^e
 20 fayre Escclaramonde⁷ / Galaffier was nere by, & herd
 what Huon sayd, & knew wel it was he, by reson of the
 hors blanchardyn, wherof¹² his hert¹² was ryght sorow-
 full / and sayd to Gerames / 'frende, I shall shew you
 24 here he *that* hath done me all this yll / now I shal se yf
 ye wyll kepe promys with me.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames,
 'take no care / for by y^e fayth *that* I owe to god / I
 shall rendre to you bothe the hors & the man / to do
 28 with *them* at your pleaser.' then Gerames yssued out
 elene¹³ armed, well horsed, & toke a good spere in his
 hande / he was a goodly knyght of his age, pusant of
 body, and in his tyme gretely doughted¹⁴ / & when he
 32 was on hys hors, he strecched *himself* in the saddle in
 suche wyse *that* his styropes stretched out a long a⁷

King Iuoyrn
arrives with his
army before
Anfalerne.

Huon challenges
the Admiral to
avenge his
nephew's death.

Gerames offers to
fight the knight
in the Admiral's
behalf,

and arms himself
for fight.

¹ for. ² as once. ³ and. ⁴⁻⁴ my lone. ⁵ haue.

⁶ but. ⁷ omitted. ⁸ array. ⁹ aloud.

¹⁰ Fol. xlviij. col. 2.

¹¹ like sorte.

¹²⁻¹² he.

¹³ all.

¹⁴ redoubted.

handful or more; he was gretly praised of the painims
that saw him / ¹then y^e admyral Galafier commaunded
 euery man to be armed, & he *himself* was armed ryehely;
 then y^e gate was opened / & Gerames was y^e fyrst *that* ⁴
 yssued out *with* his company / when he was without
 y^e cyte, he strake y^e hors with the² spores so *that* he was
 a grete space before all his company / with his spere in
 his hande & shield about his necke, & his whyte berd ⁸
 hangyng downe on his brest vnder his helme, & ³ when
 Huon, on y^e other part, saw Gerames coming, he spored
 blanchardyn, & cam agynst Gerames / and so they met
 togyder without ony worde spekyng, & strake eche ¹²
 other on ther sheldes so *that* al was broken; but their
 harnes⁴ was⁵ good, so *that* they toke none yll,⁶ but theyr
 spers brake to their handes, ⁷so *that*⁷ the sheuers flew vp
 in to the ayre / & the strokes was so rude *that* both ¹⁶
 knyghtes & horses fel to y^e erth but ⁸then quykly⁸
 they arose,⁹ & gaue ech other grete strokes / Gerames,
 who was exper^te in dedes of armes, toke his swe[r]de
 with both his handes, and gaue Huon suche a stroke ¹⁹on ²⁰
 the helme, that *perforce* he was fayne to set one of his
 knees to the erthe / the stroke was so heuy / and yf it
 had not ben by the grace of god, he had ben slayne /
 Huon was so astonyed with y^e stroke that he had moche ²⁴
 a do to ¹¹releue, and ¹⁴sayd, 'a, good lorde, socoure me,
 & ¹²gyue me grace¹² that, or¹³ I dye, I may se y^e fayre
 Escaramonde.' these wordes he spake openly / for ¹⁴he
 had thought *that* Gerames vnderstode hym not,¹¹ for ²⁸
 lytel¹⁵ he thought that it had ben Gerames that fought
 with hym / then he came to Gerames with his swerde
 in his hande, to ¹⁶be¹⁶ reneged for he neuer receyued

He rides on in
 front of the
 Admiral's men.

Huon rushes
 upon him,

and they strike
 each other with
 great violence.

Gerames forces
 Huon to kneel
 upon the ground,
 and to petition for
 grace.

Huon does not
 recognize his old
 friend,

¹ and. ² his. ³ Nowe. ⁴ armour. ⁵ so.

⁶ hurt. ⁷⁻⁷ and. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted. ⁹ againe.

¹⁰ Pol. xviii. back. col. 1. ¹¹⁻¹¹ recouer, but.

¹²⁻¹² graunt me. ¹³ before.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ he thought that Gerames had not vnderstood him.

¹⁵ he before lytel. ¹⁶ ¹⁶ haue been.

before, suche a stroke as Gerames had gyuen hym. But Gerames vnderstode Huon by his wordes, & knewe hym / & ther with caste downe his swerde to the erth, 4 & had suche sorowe that he coude¹ speke no² worde / when Huon sawe that, he meruayled gretely why he caste his swerde to the erth / for³ Huon then wold not touch hym / but sayd, ‘ paynym, what is thy mynde to do? 8 wylt thou haue peace, or elles fyght with me?’ / ‘ a, syr,’ quod Gerames, ‘ come forth, & stryke of my hede / for well I haue deserued it, syn⁴ that I haue stryken you so rudely; but I knewe you not / wherof I am⁵ sorye’ / 12 when Huon herd him speke, anone he knew well that it was Gerames, wherof he had grete ioye in his hert for fyndynge of hym. the paynims that regarded them had grete meruayle what thyng y^e two champyons 16 ment or thought to do / ‘syr,’ quod Gerames, ‘ it behoueth vs shortely to determyne oure besynes / for I se on all partes paynims assemble togyder to be-holde vs / I shall shew you what is best for vs .ii. to do / lepe⁶ 20 on your horse & I shall lepe on myne / then I shall take you and lede you parforce, as my prysoner, to the cyte of Anfalerne / and there shall ye se your louer Esclaramonde, who wold⁷ haue grete ioye with your comynge, 24 and she wyll tell you ⁸of her⁸ newes.’ ⁹‘ frende,’ quod Huon / ‘ I shall do as ye deuyse’ / then they lepte on theyr horses, & Gerames cam to Huon & layd handes on him, as though he toke hym prysoner / & so led 28 him towarde y^e cyte of Anfalerne, & his company folowed hym / & when kyuge yuoryn sawe how Gerames had lede a-way Huon as his prysoner, he began to cry, & sayd, ‘ on forth, ye sarazyns / how suffre you 32 this yonge man to be lede away as a prysoner to the cyte of Anfalerne? / I shall neuer haue ioye at my hert yf ye suffre him thus to be led away’ / then y^e sarazyns

but Gerames knows him, and casts his sword away.

Huon inquires the reason of this conduct,

and Gerames reveals himself.

They cannot conceal their joy. The paynims wonder at their inaction.

Gerames proposes that Huon shall follow him into Anfalerne to see Esclaramonde.

The old man lays hand on him as if he were his prisoner.

Ivoryn urges his men to rescue Huon,

¹ not. ² a. ³ and. ⁴ seeing. ⁵ very. ⁶ you vp.
⁷ will. ⁸⁻⁸ other. ⁹ Fol. xlviij. back. col 2.

but Gerames
leads him before
the Admirall,
who bids him put
him in prison.

When Gerames
and Huon are
within the city,
they and their
company of
French knights
close the gates,
and, in the
absence of the
army in the
field,

Kill all the old
men and the
women and the
children.
The town falls
into their hands.

Huon visits
Esclaramonde.

She welcomes
him right
joyfully.

dasshed *in* to the prese to haue rescued Huon / & on the
other parte the Admyrall Galaffer came & met Gerames
& Huon; & then Gerames sayd to hym, ‘syr, go & fyght
with your enemyes; beholde here y^e yong man that ⁴
slewe your nephew Sorbryn! I shall led him into y^e eyte,
& set hym in sure pryson;¹ then I shall shortly returne
agayne to you to fyght agaynst kynge Iuoryn’ / ‘frende,’
quod Galaffer, ‘I re quyre you so do; & as soone as you ⁸
haue set hym in pryson, returne agayne.’ Gerames
departed fro the Admyrall, and wente to the eyte with
Huon and his .xiii. companyons with hym / when they
were entred in to the Cyte, they lyfted vp the brydges ¹²
and closed the gates / in the eyte there was no men of
warre; ² all were in the felde with the Admyrall agaynste
³ Yuoryn; there were none but women and ⁴ chyl dren &
olde folkes / & whan *that* Gerames & Huon saw how ¹⁶
they were strong ynough for them in the eyte / they
went *in* to the stretes & cryed ‘saynt Denys,’ & slewe all
they met, as well olde men as women & chyl dren / so
that *with*in a shorte space they had elene wonne the ²⁰
towne / many paynyns fled & lept downe⁴ in to the
dykes, & brake neckes, armes, and legges / then they
went in to the palays, and there they founde the fayre
Esclaramond. and whan Huon saw her, he dyd of his ²⁴
helme / & ran & embraced her, & whan the lady ⁵sawe
that it was Huon / the ioy that she had was so grete
that it was meruayle to se it / ther was suche ioy made⁴
at there metyng that it can not be recountyd / Huon ²⁸
and y^e lady enbrasyd and kyssyd other many tymys /
and she sayd / ‘A, Huon! ye be ryght hertely welcome /
for I went⁶ I sholde neuer haue sene you.’⁷ ‘Lady,’
quod Huon, ‘I ought greatly to loue & to cherysshe ³²
you, & I am ryght ioyfull that it hath pleasyd⁸ our
lorde Iesu Cryst⁸ *that* I haue nowe founde you in good

¹ and. ² for. ³ king. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ Fol. xlix. col. 1. ⁶ thought. ⁷ more. ⁸⁻⁸ God.

helth and prosperyte / for a more trewer¹ than ye be,
 there is none lyuynge' / whan all the company had
 made there salutasyons one to an nother, they went to
 4 dyner, & were rychely serued / for there was greate
 plentye in y^e cyte / and the sarazyns were *wit*hout the
 cyte, where as they fought and slew eche other / there
 was suche sleynge on bothe partes that the felde were
 8 coueryd with deed men and sore woundyd ; manye a
 horse ranne aboute the felde, & there maysters lyenge
 deed / these two kynges fought one agaynst the other,
 pusaunce agaynst pusaunce / ²two sarazyns that were
 12 escapid out of the cyte of Anfalerne came to the
 admyrall Galaffer, and sayd / ' A, syr, your cytye is
 loste by the frenchemen who be enteryd in to it ; there
 is nother man nor woman ³but that is³ slayne / the
 16 olde knyght that cam to you & his .xiii. companyons
 be all *seruautes* to y^e yong man that slewe your
 neuwe / whan the two frenchemen fought one *wit*
 an nother / they toke to-gether aquyntaunce, and they
 20 be all subgettes to the yonge man that was with kynge
 luoryn / and it is he that slew the admyrall Gaudys /
 and dyscomfytyd the Gyaunt Agrapart / we knewe
 hym well whan he enteryd in to the cytye / we wolde
 24 haue shewyd you therof / but we durst not tyll⁴ ye
 were returnyd fro the batayle. Now they be in your
 palays, ⁵where as it please⁵ them / for there is abyden⁶
 nother ⁷man / woman⁶ nor chylde⁸ / but all be slayne
 28 except a ⁹.xxx. ladyes & damselles who were with her
 that sholde be your wyfe / & they be put out of the
 cyte, ye may se them syttyng without the gate petously
 wepynge.' / whan the Admyrall Galaffer herd that, he
 32 was heuye and sorowfull, and sayd to his men *that*
 were aboute hym, ' Syrs, I praye you hastely gyue me

The Frenchmen
dine together.

Out-side the city
walls the battle
rages between the
two Saracen
armies.

News is brought
the Admiral of
the capture of his
city,

and of Huon's
previous
adventures at
Babylon.

All within the
town are slain
except the ladies
in waiting on
Esclaramonde.

¹ man, ² and, ³⁻³ therein, but they are all.

⁴ untill. ⁵⁻⁵ which pleaseth. ⁶ omitted.

⁷ Fol. xlix. col. 2. ⁸ liuing ⁹ some.

The Admiral is
advised to submit
to King Ivorn.

He offers his
sword to the
King,
and tells him of
his evil plight.

sum counsell what I shal do, for it is nedfull.' 'Syr,'
quod they, 'it is of necessity that ye goo to kyng
Iuorn, and knele downe at his fote, and pray hym to
haue mercy of ¹ you / other counsell as nowe we can not 4
gyue you.' 'Syr,' quod Galafer, 'I shall do as ye haue
sayd' / than the Admyrall Galaffer, with his sworde in
his hande, went throw the prease and cam to kyng
Iuorn, and alyghtyd fro his horse, & knelyd downe 8
before ²kyng Iuorn² / and sayd, 'syr kyng, I yeld
to you my sworde / with the whiche, yf you please,
stryke of my hede, for well I haue dyseruyd it. But,
syr, I pray you, for y^e loue of Mahounde, haue mercy of 12
me / I offer to make you³ amendes as you and your
lordes shall iuge / so that ye wyl ayde me to take the
frenchemen that be in my cytye, & hath taken a-way
my wyfe, your nece Escaramonde / syr, the yonge man 16
that ye so well louyd, who cam but lat to your courte
with a mynstrell, is the same frenchman that slew
your brother the admyrall Gaudys / this tydynges I
haue herd by .ii. messengers that knew hym in your 20
courte / & now⁴ with hym his⁵ .xiii. other frenchemen
whom I had reteynyd with me to maynteyn my warre,
but they be all subgetes to the yonge man / and now
all .xiii. be in my palayes, & my wyfe with them.' 24



¶ Howe Iuorn causyd Mouflet the old myn-
strell to be brought to the gybet to haue
been hangyd¹ & ⁶howe he was rescuwyd by
Huon. Capitulo .lix. 28

¹ vpon. ²⁻² him. ³ such. ⁴ there are.
⁵ omitted. ⁶ Fol. xlix, back, col. 1.



Uoryn berde Galaffer, he¹ sayd / ‘Alas!
 I was vnhapye *that* I knew not *that*²
 this yong man³ had slayne my brother:
 yf I had, it sholde derely haue ben
 bought. Therefore, syr Galaffer, cause
 your men to withdraw fro the batayle,
 and I shall withdraw myn, and I shall know of my
 8 barons what counsell they wyl gyue me.’ Than both
 partes blew the retrayte / than¹ kynge Iuoryn sayd to
 his lordes, ‘Syr, what counsell wyl ye geue me as
 touchyng y^e admyrall Galaffer?’ / ‘*sir,*’ quod they,
 12 ‘geue hym agayne his londes / syn he axeth mercy /
 yf he hath done yll, he offeryth to make amendes’ /
 than Iuoryn called Galaffer, & sayd, ‘*sir* admyrall, I
 render agayne to you all your londes, & pardon you of
 16 all myn yll wyl / & besyde *that*, I shall helpe you to
 destroy the frenchemen that are in your cyte of Anfa-
 lerne’ / than Galaffer knelyd downe, & thankyd kynge
 Iuoryn / for *that* courtesye *that* he shewyd him &
 20 offeryd to do / and so wolk haue kyssyd his fete / but
 Iuoryn wold not suffre hym, but lyft hym vp / Thus
 these two kynges agreed together / and sware to gether
 to haue the deth of Huon & his knyghtes / Than
 24 Huon & his company abandonyd vp the cyte of Anfa-
 lerne, by cause he had so few men to kepe it / & so
 kept y^e castell, y^e whiche was stronge ynow. stondyng
 on a rocke on the see syde, it was⁴ impreyngnable so it
 28 were well vytellyd / at the corner of the castell there
 was a strong towre, & vndermeth it was the porte
 where as shyppes cam to theyr anere / whan Iuoryn &
 Galaffer saw that the towne was gyuen vp by the
 32 frenchemen / they enteryd in to it *with* all theyr great
 pyssaunce / & logyd aboute in the towne / but in
 takyng of theyr lodgynges, Huon & Gerames and such

Ivoryn orders the
 battle to cease,
 and both the
 armies to retreat.

He promises to
 restore to the
 Admiral all his
 lands,
 and to aid him
 against the
 Frenchmen.

Huon and his
 knights abandon
 the city and
 retire to the
 castle.

Ivoryn and the
 Admiral enter the
 city with their
 forces.

¹ and.

² omitted.

³ that.

⁴ indeede.

Huon's men
shoot darts at the
Saracens.

as ¹were with them shot out darts & quarelles² in
suche wyse / that there was not so hardy a paynym
that dur-t pere before the castell. yf he dyd, he was
slayne or hurte / whan Iuoryn & Galaffer saw y^e 4

The Kings erect a
gibbet before the
castle.

deelynge of the frenchemen / they raysyd vp a gybet
before the castell / therby to make y^e frenchemen
afrayed /³ than they toke Mouflet y^e mynstrell, & bound
his handes behynde hym so sore *that* the blode cam out 8
at the nayles / than they hangyd his vyall aboute his

Iuoryn reproaches
Mouflet with
bringing Huon
to his court,

necke / & than he was brought before Iuoryn, who
sayde to hym, 'A, *thou* false traytore! yll hast thou
remembered the goodness *that* my brother Gaudys hath 12
done to the , whan *that*⁴ he that slewe hym, thou hast
brought in to my court, therby to do me dyspyte. But

and orders him to
be hanged.

I shall nother ete nor drynke tyl thou hast thy dysert,
& that is, to be hangyd.' 'A, syr!' *quod* Mouflet, 16

The minstrel
pleads in vain
that he knew not
who Huon might
be.

'Neuer in all my lyfe I haue done or thought any
treason / nor ⁵I know⁵ not that / that I brought to your
court hym *that* slew your brother the admyrall Gaudys,
who was my lord & mayster / therefore, *sir*, grete syne 20
it were for you to put me to deth for *that* I am not
gyilty of.' 'Thou lvest, false traytour,' *quod* Iuoryn /

He is led to the
gallows,

& so *commandyd* a .xxx. men to lede hym to y^e
galows / & whan they were com theder, they causyd 24
the mynstrell to mount vp on y^e ladder / the frenche-
men in y^e castell had great *meruayle* who it sholde be
that they wold hang vp there, ³whan the minstrell was
aboue on the ladder, he tournyd hym towardes y^e 28

and calls on
Huon to protect
him.

castell, & cryed *with* an hye voyce, 'A, Huon! how wyll
ye suffer me here to dye, yet remembre the goodnes
that I haue done to you' & of⁴ y^e courtesye *that* I dyd
whan ye came all naked. I gaue you than clothyng 32
& mete & drynke / & I abandouyd to you all *that* I
had, yll it hath ben employed without ye rewarde me

¹ Fol. xlix. back, col. 2.

² quarrelled.

³ and.

⁴ omitted.

⁵⁻⁵ knew.

better' / whan Huon herd y^e mynstrell, he knew well
that it was Mouflet who had been his mayster / than
 he sayd to his company / 'syr, ¹I requyre you arme
 4 you quyckely / for the paynyms here without hath
 reryd vp a gybet, wheron they wyll hange a mynstrell
 who hath done me great ²good and ²pleasure. I wolde
 be ryght sory yf he sholde haue any yll' / than
 8 Gerames and all his companyons made them redy, and
 issuyed out of the castell with Huon by a secret
 posterne / so that they³ were aboute y^e gybet were not
 ware of them tyll Huon & his company was amonge
 12 them. Huon ranne at hym that sholde haue hangyd
 the mynstrell, & strake hym with his spere clene throwe,
 & so⁴ fell downe deed / and than Huon tooke downe the
 mynstrell, and made hym to fly away to the posterne /
 16 and his vyall about his necke. he that had sene hym
 flye a-way coude not a⁵ kept hym selfe fro lawghynge.
 for he ranne so fast that he semyd to be no olde man /
 but rather of the age of .xxx. yere. and Huon and
 20 Gerames and his company slew and bet downe all the
 .xxx. paynyms, so that none seapyd the deth / than⁶
 kyng Iuoryn and Galaffer perseuyd *that* there was
 myche a do aboute y^e gybet / they sayd, 'Syr, the
 24 frenchemen are come out of the castell / go and loke that
 ye do so mych that none of *them* enter agayne' / than
 paynyms on euery parte issuyd out of there lodgynges,
 and ranne thether he that best myght, without keypyng
 28 of any good ordre / than Huon & Gerames, whan they
 saw them comynge / they made semblaunt⁷ to returne
 to the cyte a soft pace / & the paynyms cam after them
 cryenge and howlyng lyke dogges / and whan they
 32 aprochyd nere, Huon sodenly tournyd, & with his spere
 he mette so the fyrst that he ranne hym clene throw
 the body with his spere, so *that* he fell downe deed.

Huon hears him,
and calls on his
men to rescue
him.

They suddenly
rush upon the
gibbet and kill
the hangman.

Mouflet runs into
the castle.

Ivoryn and the
Admiral order the
Saracens to seize
the Frenchmen
before they can
re-enter their
fortress.

Huon turns to
defend himself,

¹ Fol. l. col. 1. ²⁻² omitted. ³ that. ⁴ hee.

⁵ haue. ⁶ When. ⁷ semblance.

and his
men slays many
of his enemies.

and Gerames and his company strake so amonge the
paynymys that y^e place ran lyke a ryuer of blode of the
deed paynymys. Huon strake with his sword with both
his handes he strake none with a full stroke but 4
that he claue the hede to the teth but fynally the
forse of the paynymys was so gret that at length they
coude not abyde it than Huon, who was expert in
dedes of armes, parseuyd that it was tyme to departe / 8
he called his men together and went toward the
posterne the whiche, with muche payne, they gatte in
there at; and so they entred in all .xiii. companyons
but yet they were so hastyd and pursewyd that 12
Garyn of saint Omer abode without and defendyd
hym selfe valyauntly; But at last he was slayne by the
paynymys than Huon was ryght sorowfull whan he
saw that Garin was not enteryd in to the castell, and 16
peteously compleynyd for hym, and sayd, 'A. dere
cosyne, who for the loue of me haue left your wyfe and
chylbrene and londe and synnoryes! I am sory of your
deth.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'leue your sorow, and 20
thynke to make good chere, and to kepe wel our fortres.
our lord god hath always aydyd you, and shall doo
throw his grace / goo we vp & make good chere / for
with this sorow we can wyn no thyng' / than whan 24
they came in to the palays, they mette with Esclara-
mond² whan Huon saw her, he sayd, 'my fayre louer,³
this day I haue lost one of my good frendes, wherof I
am sorowfull.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'I am sory therof, 28
but that thyng that can not be recoueryd must be left /
we be all made to dye. god shall haue mercy on his
soule' with suche lyke wordes Esclaramonde and
Gerames apeacyd Huon² whan they were in the hall 32
they vnarmyd them and went to dyner and after⁴
met⁵ they lokyd out at y^e wynlowes / to se the coun-

Then all the
Frenchemen
to gain the castle,

except Garyn of
St. Omer,
who fights
valiantly until he
falls slain.

Huon laments his
death.

and tells
Esclaramonde
of his grief,

and she consoles
him.

¹ Fol. l. col. 2. ² and. ³ Loue. ⁴ afterwarde.

⁵ omitted.

tenaunce of y^e painyms than Gerames sayd to y^e mynstrell Mouffet.¹ 'frende, I pray the take thy vyall, and gene vs a songe to make his² mery' ³the mynstrell
 4 tooke his instrument and gaue them a⁴ swet songe, the whiche was so me⁵lodyus⁶ to here that they all beleuyd
 7 they had been in paradyce and they all made⁸ great ioy with suche a ioyfull⁹ noyse that the paynims¹⁰
 8 without dyd here it / & sayd amonge them selfe, 'A, these frenchemen are peple to be fearyd and doughty^d'
 and they were ryght sorowfull for the men that they had lost by the prowes of¹¹ .xiiii. persons.

Mouffet delights the Frenchmen with the sound of his viol.

12 ¶ Howe the good prouost Guyer, brother to Gerames, aryued at the porte of Anfalerne.
 Capitulo .lx.

16 **W**Han that kynge Iuoryn saw & knew the grete losse *that* he had receuyd. he was ryght sorowfull ¹²than the admyrall Galaffer sayd / 'sir, for y^e
 honour of Mahound, be not so sore troubled / for
 20 a thyng y^e whiche ye shall well acheue & brynge to an end. ye knowe well these frenchemen are as a byrde beyng in a cage / for they can not scape nother by londe nor water, & they are without
 24 hope of any rescue. to daye they were .xiiii., and now they be but .xiii. ye are lodgyd in a good towne, & haue the felde and the see at your pleasure / it is not possyble for them to escape / they haue
 28 nother ship nor galay to flye in / ¹³syr, apeace your selfe; suffer them to wast theyr vytaylles.' by thes wordes, sum what kynge Iuoryn was apeasyd; & the frenchemen in y^e castell deuysyd togyther / & Huon

The Admiral bids Iuoryn be of good cheer.

The Frenchmen cannot long hold against their forces.

¹ my. ² Pynson. 'his,' 1601. vs. ³ then. ⁴ most.

⁵ Fol. 1, back, col. 1. ⁶ for. ⁷ that. ⁸ exceeding.

⁹ cheeresfull. ¹⁰ that were. ¹¹ these. ¹² and.

¹³ Therefore.

Huon fears that the Frenchmen will receive no success.

sayd to¹ Gerames, ‘frende, ye se well we be here inclosyd, & we can nother departe by londe nor by see / nor we loke for no socoure of any man lyuyng / & here before vs are lodgyd paynyns who hathe sworne 4 our dethes’ / ‘*sir,*’ quod Gerames, ‘trew it is / but I hope in our lorde god *that* he wyll sende vs sum good aduenture / syr,² yf it please³ you, let vs two go downe & sport vs by the water syde nere to y^e porte tyll⁴ nyght 8 come.’ ‘I am content,’ quod Huon / ‘we may go theder, and be not sene by the paynyns / for thether myght come shyppe or galay with out daunger of the towne’ / thether they went; and whan it was nere 12 hande nyght, Huon lokyd in to the see & saw a shyppe comyng thether warde / than Huon sayd to Gerames / ‘frende, beholde yonder comyth a shyppe with full sayle. they wyll aryue at this porte. they be crysten 16 men, I se wel, by the tokens that the shyppe doth bere / for on the mast I se a rede crosse’ / ‘syr,’ quod Gerames, ‘by all *that* I can se, the shyppe is of fraunce / & therfore, as I haue sayd to you before, god 20 wyll sende vs sum good aduenture’ / & therwith, by fere of the tempest, the shyppe came in to the hauen, and cast theyr aneres. Than Huon aprochyd to the shyppe, & demaundyd for the patrone & for the mayster 24 of them *that* were in the shyppe / than the maryners regardyd y^e place where as they were / & they knew clerely⁵ by the grete toure / that they were in y^e porte of Anfalerne / wherof they had grete fere, & sayd one 28 to an nother, ‘A, good lorde god, helpe vs / for we se wel we are but deed, syn⁶ we be aryued here in this porte / for we know well that the lorde of this place is y^e moost cruelest paynym betwen this & the red see.’ 32 Thus they compleynyd them one to another / and Huon, who was nere them, vnderstode them well, and

With Gerames he goes down to the seashore out of sight of the view of the Saracens.

A ship with a red cross on the mast is seen coming near to the port.

Huon approaches it, and asks the sailors for the master of the vessel.

The sailors are afraid when they see that they are arrived at Anfalern.

¹ vnto. ² and. ³ Fol. l. back, col. 2.

⁴ vntill. ⁵ plainly. ⁶ seeing.

sayd, 'Syr, haue ye no dought of deth, for ye are
 aryued at a good porte / I requyre you¹ shew me fro
 whense ye cam, and what ye be' / and they answeyrd
 4 and sayd, 'syr, syn² ye can speke frenche, we shall
 shewe you so that ye wyll assure our lyues.' 'Syr,'
 quod Huon, 'haue no fere of deth nor of any hurt that
 ye shal haue / for we that hath³ this place in kepinge
 8 are frenchemen / therfore shew vs hardely your ententes.'
 'Syr,' quod they, 'syn ye wold⁴ knowe what we be / we
 are all borne in the countre of Fraunce / and one of vs
 is of seynt Omers / and sum of the cyte of Parys, and
 12 of dyuers other partes of the realme of Fraunce' /
 'frendes,' quod Huon, 'I pray you shew me yf there
 be any amonge you / borne in the cyte of Burdeux.'
 'Syr,' quod one of them / 'here is one in this shyp that
 16 was borne in Burdeux, an olde, ann-synt man / I
 thynke he be of an .C. yere of age / his name is Guyer /
 and we are goynge a⁵ pylgremage. for the loue of our
 lorde Jesu Cryst, to vysyt the holy sepulcure / but
 20 fortune, by force of tempest of the see, hath causyd vs
 to aryue here, ⁶the whiche⁶ tempest hath enduryd
 these thre dayes & thre nyghtes passyd / wherby we be
 so wery & so sore tranayled that we can do no more' /
 24 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I pray you shewe hym forth, *that*
 ye speke of' / than the patron of the shyp commaundyd
 that the olde man of Burdeux sholde com forth. than
 Guyer the prouost cam to Huon, & sayd, 'sir, beholde
 28 me here! what please⁷ it you to say to me?' / whan
 Huon sawe hym, he knew incontyent *that* it was
 Guyer the prouost / & sayd, 'frende, I requyre you
 shew me where ye were borne / & what hath mouyd
 32 you to come hether, seyng the grete age *that* ye be of,
 and to shew me what is your name.' 'Syr,' quod he,
 'I shall shew you y^e trouthe / I had a lorde whom I

Huon tells them
 how Frenchmen
 hold the castle.

They tell him
 how they too are
 Frenchmen,

and that among
 them is Guyer
 from Bordeaux,

on a pilgrimage
 to the Holy
 Sepulchre.

Huon asks to see
 Guyer,

and recognizes
 in him the
 provost.

He inquire- the
 reason of his
 journey.

¹ to. ² seeing. ³ haue. ⁴ Fol. li. col. 1.
⁵ omitted. ⁶⁻⁶ and this. ⁷ pleaseth.

Guyr tells how
he once served
Huon of
Bordeaux,

whom
Charlemagne
banished;

and how the
duches, Huon's
mother, is dead;

and how Gerard,
Huon's brother,
holds all his land,
and how he rules
so tyrannically

For the barons of
the country have
sent him, the old
povost, to seek
out Huon, the
rightful heir,

lonyd enterly; he was son to duke Seunyn of Bur-
deux / & he was called Huon / & so it fell¹ *that* after
the deth of his father about a .vii. yere, kinge Charle-
mayn sent for hym to do his homage & to resevue his 4
londe of hym / the yonge man, by y^e commaundement
of his mother,² & his brother Gerard with hym, tooke
theyr way towardes Parys / and by the way kynge
Charlemayns sonne called Charlot was lyenge *in* a wood 8
by the counsell of certen traytours, & there lay in a
waye to haue slayne Huon & his brother Gerarde / but
the case fell other³ wyse / for Huon slew Charlot, not
knowinge who it was; wherfore kynge Charlemayn 12
banyshyd hym⁴ the realme of Fraunce, and chargyd
hym, or⁵ he tournyd,⁶ to go to Babilone to do a message
to the admirall Gaudys / &⁷ his brother Gerarde abode
styll at Burdeux to kepe the herytage / & than the 16
duches his mother was so full of sorowe *that* her son
was so banyshyd without cause / *that* she tooke there⁸
such a madadye / that she dyed therof / a⁹ .v. yere past /
& so therby Gerarde is lorde & governour of all y^e 20
londes, & he is maryed to the doughter of y^e moost
fellest¹⁰ tyraunt fro thense in to Spayne / & this Gerarde
hath lerned of hym many yll customs, & hath left all
y^e good wayes that was vsyd *in* y^e dayes of duke Seunyn 24
& of y^e duches his mother / & he hath reysyd vp in all
his londs . new taylles & gables & impossessyons,¹¹ &
chasyd & put fro hym all noble men / he dystroyeth
the burgesses and marchautes, wedous & orphelyns / 28
there can no man shew you y^e yll *that* he hath done &
doth daylly / & he hath dysheryt me / & on a day the
barons of the countre desyryd me *that* I wolde take the
payne to go and serche, as well by londe as by water, yf 32
I myght fynde the yonge lord Huon, who is our ryght-

¹ it fell so out. ² he. ³ Fol. li. col. 2.

⁴ out of. ⁵ ere. ⁶ returned. ⁷ But.

⁸ therof. ⁹ about. ¹⁰ cruellest. ¹¹ Impositions.

full lord. it is nowe a¹ two yere *that* I haue serched
for hym in dyuers countrees / but I coude neuer here
one worde of hym, wherof I am ryght sorowfull / & to
4 seke hym I haue spent all my goble & syluer / how be
it, these good marchautes hath taken me in to there
shyp for the loue of god / they thought to haue brought
me in to Frannee / but by fortune we be here aryued at
8 this porte.'

and how he has
hitherto failed to
find him.

¶ How Huon & Gerames, & al there com-
pany, with the fayre Esclaramonde, departyd
fro the castell of Anfalerne, & ²entred in to²
12 the see. Ca. lxi.

3 Han Huon vnderstode y^e prouost
Guyer / he sayd to Gerames / 'Syr,
come forthe here / I haue founde
16 your brother' / than Gerames came
to his brother, & embraced &
kyssyd hym, & ⁴all wepyng sayd,
'my dere frende & brother, ye be ryght hertely wel-
20 com.' 'A, brother,' quod Guyer, 'nowe I care not
whether I lyue or dye / syn⁵ I haue founde you. and
yf it were so yet that omnes or⁶ I dyed I myght se
my lorde Huon / than I cared not how sone I dyed.'
24 'A, dere brother,' quod Gerames, 'ye shall not dye so
sone, & yet ye shall se Huon, whose presence ye so
sore desyre / it is Huon to whom ye haue spoken to⁷
al this season' / than Huon, sore wepyng, cam & en-
28 braced Guyer, & sayd / 'my dere frend, your comyng
is a ioye to my herte, for a more trewer knyght can not
be found' / 'syr,' quod Guyer, 'do ye know me?' / 'ye,
trewlye,' quod Huon / 'and do ye know me?' / 'ye,

Gerames recog-
nizes his brother
in Guyer,

and shows him
how he has at
length found
Huon.

¹ about. ²⁻² sayled thence on.

⁴ & after weeping.

⁵ seeing.

⁷ omitted.

³ Fol. li. back. col. 1.

⁶ that yet once ere.

Gerames tells his brother his adventures.

Huon proposes that they and their company and Esclaramonde shall embark for France in the ship in which Guyer is sailing.

Huon invites the sailors to seize all the treasure in the castle.

syr,' *quod* Guyer, 'ye are sore¹ desyryd in Fraunce / & brother Gerames, I desyre you to shew me where ye haue *ben syn*² I saw you, for it is a³ lx. yere *syn*² ye departyd out of Fraunce' / than Gerames shewed hym 4 all his lyfe / & shewed at length how he founde Huon / longe they were talkynge togyther, wherof they of y^e shyp were ryght ioyfull / for than they saw well they were aryued at a good porte / ⁴than Huon sayd to the 8 maryners, 'Syr, I pray you make this nyght no grete noyse, nor make no fyer, nor shewe no lyght / for here before the castell is lodged two admyralles / paynyns, who hath⁵ sworne that they wyll neuer goo hense 12 tyll⁶ they haue vs at theyr *plesir*, therefore I counsell *that* we may scape out of this castell / we be here, a³ .xiii. persons, & with vs a noble lady / wherfore I requyre you lette vs com in to your shyp, or 16 elles we be all lost / & fere not but ye shalbe well payed for your labour; ye shall haue gold & syluer as myche as ye wyll desyre.' 'Syr,' *quod* the pa^rtrone, 'ye nede not to speke of any golde or syluer / for this 20 our shyp is yours, to do ther with at your pleasure' / 'syr,' *quod* Huon, 'I thanke you of your courtesye / I praye you & your company come with me in⁸ the eastell, and I shall charge your shyp with golde & 24 syluer, & ryche iewelles & *presyns* stoones / *that* you & al yours shal be ryche for euer / this must be done in hast, or⁹ the paynyns here without parseyue vs / for yf they *perceyue* vs, we shal neuer get hense, for¹⁰ in- 28 contynent they wyll sende¹¹ of theyr shyppes, & take thys shyp.' 'syr,' *quod* the patrone, 'we are redy to obey your *commaundementes*' / ⁴than y^e patrone & .xxiii. maryners went with Huon in to the castell / & chargyd 32 all the treasure *that* was within y^e castell, & other ryches *that* Huon & his company had taken in the

¹ greatly. ² since. ³ about. ⁴ and. ⁵ haue. ⁶ untill.

⁷ Fol. li, back, col. 2. ⁸ to. ⁹ before. ¹⁰ but. ¹¹ some.

towne / they bare all in to y^e shyp, & vytaylles suffy-
 eyent / than Huon toke Esclaramonde by y^e hande, all
 smylunge, & sayd, 'fayre lady, one thyng I demaunde
 4 of you / be ye not dyspleasyd to leue y^e countre &
 londe where as ye were borne?' 'Syr,' quod she, 'I
 haue longe desyryd to se y^e day *that* I nowe do se¹ /
 well we may thanke our lord god Iesu Cryst,² *that*
 8 hath gyuen vs *that* grace to be sette³ out of the handes
 of y^e enemyes of y^e fayth of Cryst, wherein we ought
 to beleue' / than Huon entred in to the shyp, & y^e
 fayre Esclaramonde, & Gerames, & all the other com-
 12 pany; so they were in nombre within y^e ship a⁴ .xxxiiii.
 persons / & *with* them was Mouflet y^e mynstrell / &
 whan they were all entred in to the shyp, & y^e shyp
 chargyd *with* all thynges necessarye / they weyed vp
 16 theyr aneres, & lyft⁵ vp theyr saylles / & so had a good
 freshe wynde / so *that* they were within a whyell far
 fro y^e londes of y^e .ii. admyralles sarazyns / they saylled
 so⁶ *that* or⁷ it was daye lyght they were passyd y^e coost
 20 of y^e Roides / & so passid⁸ by the yle of Cret / & so,
 by the ayde of god & good wynde, they aryued at y^e
 porte of Brandys / & so aboute noone, y^e admyrall *that*
 lay at ⁹sege before y^e castell of Anfalerne had gret
 24 meruayle *that* they coude se no man sterynge within
 the castell / than a paynym sayd to Iuoryn / 'syr, know
 for trouthe, within the castell ye shal fynde no man /
 the frenchemen are¹⁰ fled; But we can not tell how' /
 28 when the two admyralles herd that / they were sore
 troubled; & in hast they sette forth a galay & .xxx.
 paynyms therin, *commandyng* them to go to the
 posterne / the whiche they dyd incontynent / and
 32 whan they came theyr / they founde nother man nor
 woman / &¹¹ founde the posterne open / & so they entred

Esclaramonde
 declares that she
 is willing to leave
 her native land.

At length the
 ship starts for
 France with the
 French knights
 and Esclara-
 monde and much
 treasure.

They soon arrive
 at Broudys.

News of their
 flight is brought
 to King Ivoryn.

¹ therefore. ² God. ³ fet (fetcht). ⁴ some.
⁵ hoysed. ⁶ long. ⁷ ere. ⁸ came.
⁹ Fol. lii. col. 1. ¹⁰ all. ¹¹ but.

The Saracens
enter the castle.

in to the castell, & than¹ openyd the brode gates / & the two admyralles entred in, sore dyspleasyd that the frenchemen were so seapyd. Now let vs leue spekyng of them, & returne to Huon, who was aryued in ⁴ sauegarde at y^e porte of Brandys.

¶ How Huon & his company aryued at the porte of Brandys / and fro thense went to Rome to the pope, who weddyd togyther ⁸ Huon and the fayre Esclaramonde; & of their departyng² thense. Ca. .lxii.

At Brondys Huon
and his company
go to church and
give thanks for
their deliverance.



Han Huon & his company saw howe they were aryued at the porte of ¹² Brandys, they issuyd out of theyr shyp, & deuoutlye went to the chyche of our lady / and there gaue laude &

thankes³ to our lorde god, ⁴and to his mother and ¹⁶ vyrgyne, our lady seynt Mary, in that they⁴ had brought them thether in⁵ sauegarde / than they went to Garyn of seynt Omers lodgyng. whan they came there, the lady of the house, who was ryght sage⁶ and courtoys, ²⁰ cam to Huon & sayd, 'Syr, of your comyng I am ryght ioyus.⁷ But, syr, I pray you wher ha^sue ye left Garyn my lord and housbonde? for syn⁹ I se hym not with you, my hert trymbleth / for fere leest he be deed, or ²⁴ elles¹⁰ sum great encumbrance.'¹¹ 'Dame,'¹² quod Huon, 'to hyde the trouthe fro you, can not cause you to haue hym agayne / for it hathe pleasyd ¹³our lorde¹³ god that he is departyd oute of this worlde / wherfore I wyll ²⁸ counsell you, as mych as ye may, leue doloure and heueneys / for we must all come therto / and I repute

Huon tells
Garin's wife of
her husband's
death.

¹ so. ² from. ³ praise. ⁴ ⁴ that.
⁵ such. ⁶ wise. ⁷ ioyfull. ⁸ Fol. lii. col. 2.
⁹ seeing. ¹⁰ of. ¹¹ happened vnto him.
¹² Madame. ¹³ ¹³ omitted.

you so sage¹ / that ye know well that for any sorow or
 wepynge *that* ye can² make, ye can not haue hym
 agayne' / whan the ladye had herde Huon / she fell
 4 downe in a transe, more lyke to be deed than alyue /
 than Huon and his company set her vp, and comfortyd
 her as myche as they myght / than Esclaramonde tooke
 and brought her in to her chambre / and dyd so mych
 8 with her fayre & swete wordes, that sum what she
 apeasyd her / and than, sore wepynge, she cam to Huon /
 & he sayd, 'dame,³ apeace your selfe, and pray for hym,
 for we must all passe the same passage' / with these
 12 wordes and such other, y^e ladye was apeasyd / than they
 washt and went to dyner / and after, Gerames & other
 of his company went in to y^e towne, and bought horse
 and mules to ryde on, & bought ryche gownes all in
 16 one lyuery. ther they taryed an⁴ .viii. dayes, & on the
 .ix. daye they payed the patrone of the shyp in suche
 wyse that he was ryche euer after, & euery maryner
 had a good rewarde / wherof they thanked Huon, &
 20 offeryd to do hym seruyce. Than Huon and Esclara-
 monde, with all his⁵ company, tooke theyr leue of there
 hostes, whom they left sore wepynge / and at theyr
 departyng, Huon gaue her a ryche gyft, wherof humbly
 24 she thanked hym /⁶ whan they were all redy, and theyr
 baggage trussyd⁷ / they departyd & tooke the way
 towards Rome with grete ioy & gladnes / who so euer
 was ioyfull, Guier the prouost was⁸ ioyfull in two
 28 maners / one, in that he had founde his lorde Huon /
 and the other, for *that* he had founde his brother
 Gerames, and also by cause that his lorde Huon had
 fulfilled the message that kynge Charlemain had
 32 chargyd hym to doo to the admyrall Gaudys / so longe
 they rode,⁹ that in a mornynge they came to Rome, &

Esclaramonde
seeks to comfort
her.

Eight days they
remain at
Brondys.

The master and
sailors of the ship
that rescued them
are richly
rewarded.

Huon and
Esclaramonde
and his company
set out for Rome.

¹ wise. ² omitted. ³ Madame. ⁴ about.
⁵ their. ⁶ and. ⁷ vp. ⁸ Fol. lii, back, col. 1.
⁹ together.

alyghtyd at theyr lodgyng / than they al togyther
 went to here they¹ deuyne seruyce : & as they Issued
 out of the chyrche, they met a seruaunt of the popys /
 than Huon demaundyd of hym in what estate the pope 4
 was in. ‘Syr,’ quod the squyer, ‘he is redy to here
 messe’² / than Huon & his company lept on theyr horses,
 and rode to the popys palays, and theyr alyghtyd / and
 than Huon held the fayre Esclaramonde by the hande / 8
 & the good prouost Guyer held his brother Gerames by
 the hande / and so all the other .ii. and .ii.³ than they
 founde the pope set⁴ in his trone deusyng with his
 earlynelles / than Huon approchyd & salutyd hym 12
 humbly / whan the pope beheld Huon, he knew hym
 incontynent, & rose vp, & came⁵ & embracyd Huon,¹
 & kyssyd his cheke, and sayd / ‘fayre sonne Huon, ye
 be welcom ! I pray you shew me howe it is with you, 16
 & shew me of your aduentures.’ ‘Syr,’ quod Huon, ‘I
 haue enduryd yll⁶ and trouble ynough, & all these
 other that are come with me / but thanked be oure
 lorde⁷ Iesu Cryst,⁷ it is so now⁸ I haue brought with 20
 me / the berde & great teth of the admyrall Gaudys /
 & haue also brought his doughter, who is here present /
 &, *sir*, I requyre you to geue her crystondome / and
 than I wyll wed her to my wyfe.’ ‘Huon,’ quod y^e 24
 pope, ‘all this pleasyth me ryght well to do, and the
 rather syn⁹ it is your pleasure ; & I desyre you tary
 here with me this nyght.’ ‘Syr,’ quod Huon, ‘your
 pleasure shal be myn.’ Thus Huon and his company 28
 taryed with y^e pope all *that* nyght, wher as they made
 grete ioy / and in the next mornyng / ¹⁰A funt was
 made redy / wherin the fayre Esclaramonde was
 crystenyd without chaungyng of her name / and also 32
 there was crystenyd Mouflet the mynstrell / & he was

On their arrival
they all visit the
Pope.

Huon tells him
how he has
accomplished the
Emperor's
mission,

and asks him to
admit Esclara-
monde into the
Christian
communion.

Next day
Esclaramonde
and Mouflet are
both christened.

¹ omitted. ² service. ³ together. ⁴ sitting.
⁵ to him. ⁶ many evils. ⁷⁻⁷ god. ⁸ that.
⁹ seeing. ¹⁰ Fol. lii. back, col. 2.

namyd¹ Garyn. ²whan the sacrament of baptyisme
 was fynyshyd / the pope hymselfe ³sange masse; ³
 fyrst he confessyd Huon, & assoylled hym of all his
⁴synnes; ⁴than he wedded hym to Esclaramonde / and
 whan ⁵all the ⁵deuine seruyce was endyd / then they
 went all with the pope to his palays, and there was
 made the solempnytes of y^e maryage / ⁶to shew the
⁸maner of theyr seruyce, with meetes and drynkes and
 aparell of the brydes / it ⁷sholde be tedyous⁷ to reherce
 it. But one thyng I dare well say,⁸ there had not ben
 sene ⁹longe⁹ before, suche a gloryus and ryche fest / for
¹²the pope dyd as myche¹⁰ as tho they had ben his owne
 brother and syster / the melodye of the mynstrelles
 that playd was so swete and delectable that euery
 man was satisfyd with the herynge therof / and
¹⁶specyally it was meruayle to here Garyn, the newe
 crysten¹¹ mynstrell, to play / he played so swetly on his
 vyall that it was¹² ioy to here it / Thus there was
 gret ioy in the popys palays / and ¹³yf they had ben
²⁰well serued at the dyner¹³ / it was better at soupper /
 than² at nyght euery man with-drew¹⁴ / and the new
 brydes lay togyther in grete pleasure all that nyght /
 & in the mornyng they rose & herd masse,¹⁵ & than
²⁴dynid / ²than they trussyd¹⁶ all theyr baggages, &
 chargyd theyr somers / mules & mulettes / & sadelyd
 theyr horses / ²than Huon & Esclaramonde went & toke
 theyr leue of the pope, & thankyd hym of¹⁷ y^e honour
²⁸& grete courtesy that he had shewed them. ‘Syr,’
 quod y^e pope, ‘yf it wold please you to tary lenger
 here with me, my goodes and my house shold be at
 your commaundement.’ ‘Syr,’ quod Huon, ‘I can not

The minstrel
takes the name of
Garin.

The Pope marries
Huon to
Esclaramonde,

and gives a great
wedding feast.

Great joy is in the
Pope's palace.

Huon and his
wife take their
leave of the Pope.

¹ called. ² and. ³ ³ said service. ⁴ faultes.
⁵⁻⁵ omitted. ⁶ but. ⁷⁻⁷ would be over-tedious.
⁸ that. ⁹⁻⁹ of a long time. ¹⁰ for them.
¹¹ christened. ¹² great.
¹³⁻¹³ euen as they were well serued at dinner, so.
¹⁴ himselfe. ¹⁵ seruice. ¹⁶ vp. ¹⁷ for.

render¹ thanks to your holynes for y^e good that ye haue done to vs. But, syr, lenger ²I can not tary, for the grete desyre that I haue to acomplyshe the rest of my besynes / therefore, syr, I recommaunde you to ⁴our lord god.' the pope kyssyd Huon, & touchyd³ Esclaramond by the hande. Thus they tooke theyr leue / and at theyr departynge, y^e pope sent to them a Somer chargyd with gold, and clothes of sylke / and ⁸thus they departyd fro Rome.

¶ Howe Huon and his company aryued at the abbay of Mauryse, whereas he was reseyned by the abbot and couent with ¹²grete reuerence. Ca. .lxiii.



After that Huon had take leue of the ⁴holy father the⁴ pope, he and his company departyd, & the fayre ¹⁶Esclaramonde was mountyd on a fayre mule ⁴rychely apareyd⁴ / ⁵so longe they rode ⁴throwe cytyes / townes / and vylages⁴ tyll they myght se ⁴afarre of, the stepelles ²⁰and toures of⁴ the eyte⁶ of Burdeaux / whan Huon sawe it, he lyft vp his handes to y^e heuen, thankinge god of his grace that he had brought hym thether in saue garde / and than he sayd to Esclaramonde, ²⁴'fayre lady, yonder ye may se ⁴before you⁴ the cite and countre wherof ye shalbe lady & duches / though it hath been or⁷ thys tyme a realme.' 'Syr,' ²⁸*quod* Guyer the *promost*, 'it is good ye regarde wyslye your besynes, the whiche touchyth you ryght nere; and, syr, yf ye wyll do by⁸ my counsell / sende fyrst to an abbay that is here by, called the abbay of

Huon and Esclaramonde ride from Rome to Bordeaux.

Guyer the provost advises Huon to inform a neighbouring abbot of his coming.

¹ sufficient. ² Fol. liii, col. 1. ³ tooke.
⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ and. ⁶ town. ⁷ ere. ⁸ after.

Mauryse / the abbot is a notable clerke ; lette hym know
of your comynge, & that ye wyll dyne with hym.
‘Syr,’ quod Huon, ‘your counsell is to be beleuyd’ /
4¹ than Huon sent to the abbot, certefyng hym of his
comynge / whan the abbot knew of Huons² comynge he
was ryght ioyfull, for he louid intyerly Huon, wherfore
he sore desyred the syght of hym / than he called all his
8 couent, and chargyd them, in the vertue of obedyence,
to³ reuest them selues with crosse and myter & copes,³
to reseuye Huon, the ryghtfull emherytour to the
countrie of Burdeux / though the kynges of Fraunce be
12 our founders. But as to oure goode neyboure, we wyll
doo this reuerence / for honoure is dew to them that dy-
serueth it’ / than the couent, as they were commaundyd,
orderyd themselues / & so went out of the abbay to
16 mete Huon, who, whan he saw them, he alyghtid a⁴
fote, and also Eselaramonde and Gerames, and all the
other / thus the abbot and his couent in ryche⁵ copes
syngynge⁵ mette with Huon / whan Huon was nere to
20 the abbot, he was ryght ioyfull / and the abbot, who
anone knew Huon, came to hym ryght humblye,
and sayd / ‘syr duke of Burdeux, thankyd be god
that ye are come home, for your presence hath longe
24 ben desyryd’ / than they embrasyd eche other with
wepynges teres for ioy / than the abbot welcomyd y-
prouost Guyer and all the other. But he knew not
Gerames ; for yf he had, he wolde haue made hym
28 great fest.⁶

The Abbot bids
all his monks
give Huon a
warm welcome.

In procession
they sing together
in honour of
Huon's return.

¶ How the good abbot sent word to duke
Gerard of Burdeux how his brother Huon
was in the abbay of Mauryse.

32

Capitulo .lxiiii.

¹ and. ² Fol. liii, col. 2. ³⁻³ make them selues readye.
⁴ on. ⁵⁻⁵ clothes seeming. ⁶ feasting.

Huon and his company tarry at the abbey of Mauryse,



Hus the abbot with hys couent brought Huon to the abbay of Mauryse ¹with solempne processyon¹ / and Huon and Esclaramonde a² fote folowyd ³the ⁴crosses; ³& whan he came in to the chyrch, ¹Huon kyst al y^e holy ⁴relikes, and¹ Huon offeryd great gyftes / & after theyr offeringes & prayers made / they went in to the hall, and went to dyner. ⁸how well they were seruyd, nede not to be rehersyd / they had euery thyng that nedyd / the abbot sat by Huon, and sayd / 'syr, I pray you shew me how ye haue done, and how ye haue done⁵ your ¹²message that ye were chargyd⁶ by kynge Charlemayn.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'thankyd be our lorde god, I haue acumplyshyd and done all *that* I was commaundyd to do, for I haue brought with me y^e berde & y^e .iiii.⁷ teth ¹⁶of y^e admyrall Gaudys / & also I haue brought with me his daughter, the fayre Esclaramonde, whom I haue weddyd in the cyte of Rome; & to morowe, by the grace of god, I wyll departe to go to kynge Charlemayne ²⁰my soueraygne lord' / 'Sir,' quod the abbot, 'of *that* I am ryght ioyus⁸ / but, ¹sir,¹ yf it were your pleasure, I wolde sende to certyfyte your comming to Gerard your brother / *that* he myght se you or⁹ ye departyd¹⁰ ²⁴hense' / 'sir,' quod Huon, 'I am content¹¹ ye sende for hym' / than y^e abbot commaundyd a squyer of his to go for duke Gerard / & so he went, & restyd not tyll he cam to Burdeux before duke Gerarde, & sayd, 'syr, if ²⁸it be your pleasure to come to y^e abbaye of seynt Mauryse / there shall ye fynde your brother Huon, who is come strayte¹² fro beyond y^e see' / whan duke Gerarde herd surely¹³ how his brother Huon was com to ³²

and are right well entertained.

Huon relates the success of his mission.

The Abbot advises Huon to inform his brother of his return.

A messenger is despatched.

¹⁻¹ omitted.

² on.

³⁻³ them.

⁴ Fol. liii. back, col. 1.

⁵ ended.

⁶ to do.

⁷ great.

⁸ ioyful.

⁹ before.

¹⁰ depart.

¹¹ that.

¹² lately.

¹³ certainly.

y^e abbay of seint Maurise, he was so ouercome *with* yre
 & dyspleasure / *that* his vysage became lyke a flame of
 4 my brother Huon / *that* I wyll incontynent com &
 vysyt hym' / 'syr,' quod he, 'I shal shew hym of your
 commynge,' & so departyd, & came agayne to the
 8 sayd. And whan duke Gerard sawe that the messenger
 was de-partyd, he was sorowfull and pensyue, and called
 to hym his father in law, his wyfes father, who was
 namyd Gybouars / the most fall'sest traytour *that* was
 12 fro y^e Est to the west / & Gerarde sayd to hym / 'sir,
 I pray you geue me counsell in *that* I haue to do / for
 all the deuelles in hell / hath brought my brother Huon
 fro the partes beyonde y^e see, & he is now present in
 16 the abbay of seint Mauryse / the abbot there hath sent
 me worde therof, & *that* I shold com thether to speke
 with hym / for as to morowe he wyll departe to go to
 Parys to the kyng, so that whan he is come thether, he
 20 wyll do so mych / *that* all his londe shalbe renderyd to
 hym / so² *that* I shall haue neuer a fote of londe³ but
 that⁴ ye haue genen me *with* my wyfe, your doughter /
 wherfore, dere father in lawe, I pray you in this grete
 24 mater to counsell and to⁵ ayde me, or elles I am but
 lost' / 'fayre son,' quod Gybouars, 'dysmay you no
 thyng / for without my wyt do fayle me, I thynke to
 playe hym a tourne, *that* it had been better for hym to
 28 haue taryed there⁶ he was / than to⁷ come hether to
 elayme any⁸ londe.'

Gerard grows
angry when the
news is brought
him,

but promises to
visit him at the
abbey.

Gerard calls on
Gybouars, his
traitorous father-
in-law, to counsel
him.

When Huon goes
before the
Emperor, all his
lands will be
restored to him.

Gybouars
promis s to
outwit Huon.

¶ How Gybouars of Beam, & Gerard, Ima-
 genyd⁹ Huons deth / and how the traytour
 32 Gerarde cam to se his brother Huon, who
 with gret ioy reseuyd hym. Ca. .lxxv.

¹ Fol. liii, back, col. 2.

² and.

³ left me.

⁴ which.

⁵ omitted.

⁶ where.

⁷ have.

⁸ my.

⁹ practised.

Gybouars bids
Gerard go to
Huon,



and, after giving
him a loving
welcome,

induce him to set
out with him for
Bordeaux.

In a little wood
Gybouars will lie
in ambush to
seize Huon and
make him
prisoner,

and so make an
end of him.

Gerard is also to
rob him of the
teeth and the
beard he is
bearing back,

and it shall be
told the Emperor
that Huon has
returned without
them,

whereupon
Charlemagne will
surely demand
his life.

Thus, as ye haue herd, ¹sayd these ii
traytours¹ / than Gybouars sayd to
Gerarde / 'fayre son, goo ye your way
to your brother Huon, & take with you 4
but one squyer / & whan ye come
there, make to hym all the chere ye can / & shew
hym as grete lone as ye can do, & humble your
selfe to hym, to thentent that he take in you no sus- 8
pecyon / & ²whan y^e mornynge commeth, hast hym
to departe / & whan ye come with hym nere such a
lytell wood, fynde sum rygurus wordes to hym, &
make as though ye were dyspleasyd with hym / & I 12
shalbe redy in that same lytell wood embusshid, ³and
xl men of armes with me, & whan I se that wordes
[be]⁴ betwen you / I shall Issu out, and slee all those
that become⁵ with hym, so that none shall scape alyue / 16
& than take your brother Huon, and cast hym into a⁶
pryson in on of the toures of your palays in Burdeux,
and there myserably he shall ende his dayes / and than
in hast ye shall ryde to Parys / but or⁷ ye goo to Parys, 20
ye shall take fro hym the admyralles berde & great
teth / & than ye shall shewe to y^e kyng, how Huon
your brother is returnyd with out bryngyng other
berde or teth of the admyrall Gaudys / and how for 24
that cause ye haue set⁸ hym in pryson / the kyng wyll
beleue you, for he hateth greatly Huon, by cause of y^e
deth of his sönne Charlot whom he slew ; for the hate
that the kyng hath to hym in his herte, shall neuer 28
departe from hym / and therefore, some, whan ye be
with your brother, demaunde of hym yf he haue the
admyralles berde and teth, or not / and whether he do
bere them hymselfe, or who elles / for yf he haue them 32
not, he shal neuer haue peace with y^e kyng / but he

¹⁻¹ these two traitors conspired, and. ² But.

³ Fol. liiii. (orig. xlix.) col. 1. ⁴ are. ⁵ come.

⁶ omitted. ⁷ ere. ⁸ put.

wyll cause hym to be slayne of an yll¹ deth, other²
 hangyd or drawyn; for your brother layd hostage,
 promysynge *that* he wolde neuer retourne without he
 4 brought with hym y^e admyrall Gaudys berde and great
 teth / and also he *promysed that* he sholde³ neuer enter
 in to his herytage tyll he had spoken with the kynge;
 & that was eniunyd hym on payne of deth.' Thus, as
 8 ye haue herde, these .ii. traytours deuysyd and con-
 cludyd the deth of Huon. 'Gerarde,' quod Gybonars /
 'thynke well of⁴ your besynes / & I shall go &
 assemble to-gether .xl. of my moost secrete seruantes,
 12 & in other places where as⁵ I can gette them, to
 furnyshe this entrepryse.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'I
 shall goo to the abbay to se my brother whan it is a
 lytell nerer to y^e nyght' / &⁶ whan the owre came, the
 16 false traytour departyd⁷ fro Burdeux, & with hym but
 one squyer, & so⁸ rode tyll he⁸ came to the abbay / & there
 alyghtyd: & whan he *perseyuyd* his brother Huon / he
 enbrasyd & kyssyd hym with suche a kysse as Indas kyst
 20 Cryst / whan Huon saw Gerarde his brother come with
 suche humylite / the water fell fro his /⁹ iyen for⁹ kynd-
 nes, and enbrasyd hym & kyst hym, & sayd / 'ryght
 dere brother, I haue grete ioy to se you; I pray you
 24 shewe me how you haue done syn my departure.' 'Syr,'
 quod Gerarde, 'ryght well, now I se you in good helth.'
 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'I haue gret meruayle *that* ye
 be thus come alone without company.' 'Syr,' quod
 28 Gerarde, 'I dyd it for y^e more humylite, by cause I
 know not how ye shall spede with the kynge / nor
 whether ye shall haue agayne your londe or no. yf god
 wyll that ye shall haue it, I shall than⁵ assemble all
 32 the barons of the countre¹⁰ to reseue you, and to make
 you chere accordynge / this, *sir*, I shall do tyll ye

Gybonars goes to
 assemble forty
 men to lie with
 him in ambush.

Gerard sets out
 with one squire
 from Bordeaux,
 and meets Huon.

He gives him a
 Judas kiss.

Huon is over-
 joyed to see his
 brother.

Gerard promises
 to assemble all
 the barons to
 receive Huon at
 Bordeaux.

¹ euill. ² either. ³ would. ⁴ on.
⁵ omitted. ⁶ so. ⁷ Fol. liiii. (*orig.* xlix.) col. 2.
⁸ they. ⁹⁻⁹ eyes with. ¹⁰ court.

Huon thanks Gerard, and says how he is setting out for Paris

with the beard and teeth of the Admiral Gaudisse,

and much treasure from the East.

Huon tells how Oberon aided him,

and how the objects of his mission are kept in Gerames's side,

retourne / often¹ tymys these grete prynees are mutable & lyghtly belenyth; for this cause, *sir*, I am secretly com to you.' 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'your aduysse is good: I am content *that* ye thus so² do / and to morow⁴ by tymys I wyll departe towards Parys' / than these two bretherne toke eche other by the hand, makyngre grete ioy. 'Brother,' quod Gerard, 'I am ryght ioyous whan I se you thus retournyd in helth and prosperyte / 8 haue ye acumplyshyd the message *that* kynge Charles chargid you withal?' / 'brother,' quod Huon, 'know for trouthe *that* I haue the berde & grete teth of the admyrall Gaudys; & besyde *that*, I haue brought with 12 me his doughter, y^e fayre Esclaramounde, whom I haue taken to my wyfe, and weddyd her in the eyte of Rome; and also I haue here with me .xxx. somers chargyd with gold and syluer & ryche iuelles garnyshyd 16 with presyous stones / wherof y^e halfe parte shalbe yours / & yf I shold shew you y^e paynes / tranelles, & pouertyes *that* I enduryd³ syn⁴ I saw you last, it sholde⁵ be ouer long to reherse.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'I beleue you well / but, syr, I pray you shewe me by what meanes or ayde ye dyd bryngre your enterpryse to an ende.' 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'it was by a kynge of the fayrye, called Oberon, who dyd me such socoure and ayde, 24 *that* I came to my purpose, and strake of the admyralles hede, and so toke his berde and great teth.' 'Brother,' quod Gerarde, '& how do ye kepe them, & where?' 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'beholde here Gerames, who 28 hath them in his syde / kynge Oberon dyd set them there by the fayrye & by the wyll of god' / 'syr,' quod he, 'whiche is Gerames?' 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'here ye may se hym before you: he with the great 32 hore⁶ berde.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'of what londe is

¹ for. ² omitted.

³ Fol. liiii. (*orig.* xlix.) back, col. 1. ⁴ since.


⁵ would, ⁶ hoarie.

he of?' / 'he is of the best frendes that I haue,' quod and how he had
chanced to meet
Gerames.
 Huon / 'and he is Brother to the good prouost Guyer /
 ye neuer herd speke of a trewere nor more noble man /
 4 I found hym in a wood, where as he had dwelt a¹ .xl.
 yere in penaunce / god aydyd me greatly whan I founde
 hym / for yf he had not ben, I coude not haue retourned
 hether / mych payne and pouerte he hath endurid for
 8 my sake. And now, Brother, I pray you shewe me
 howe ye haue done syn I departyd fro you. it hath ben
 shewyd me ²howe ye be² rychely maryed / I praye you
 where was your wyfe borne, and of what lynage is she
 12 of?' 'Syr,' quod Gerard, 'she is doughter to duke³
 Gybouars of Ceeyle, who is a great lorde, and ⁴hath
 great londes & sygnoryes.'⁴ 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'I
 am sory that ye haue taken suche alyauce / for I know
 16 hym for the moost traytor that can be founde, &⁵ moost
 vntrewest.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'ye do yll to say so,
 for I take hym for no suche person.'

Huon learns of
Gerard's wife,

and deplores that
he has a father-in-
law who is a
reputed traitor.

¶ Howe these .ii. bretherne departyd fro the
 20 abbay aboute mydnyght / & how the
 traytor Gerarde began ⁶to fall at rude
 wordes with Huon whan they aprochyd
 nere to the wood where as Gybouars lay in
 24 ⁷a busschement.⁷ Ca. .lxvi.

28  Hus as these two bretherne deuysyd of
 Gybouars, the abbot came to them &
 demaundyd of Huon yf it were his
 pleasure to go to supper. 'syr,' quod
 Huon, 'whan it please you, I & my
 brother shalbe redy.' the fayre

The Abbot invites
Huon and his
brother to supper.

¹ about. ²⁻² that ye are very. ³ omitted.
⁴⁻⁴ Signior. ⁵ the. ⁶ Fol. liiii. (*orig.* xlix.) back, col. 2.
⁷⁻⁷ in ambush.

Esclaramonde, who was wery of trauayle, was in her chambre apart, and dyuers other of her company with her, where as she souppyd & lay that nyght / Huon was sumwhat troubyld by cause his brother had taken 4 to his wyfe the doughter of a traytor / thus they wasshyd & ¹than sat¹ down to supper, where ²as² they were rychely seruyd, & at another table sat the prouost Guyer & Gerames his brother, & dyuers other barons. 8

Gerarde behelde y^e prouost, whom he vtterly hatyd, because he went to seke for Huon / he sware to hym selfe, *that* yf he myght onnes go out of the abbay, that he shold be y^e fyrst³ sholde lese his lyfe / ⁴he 12 dyd ete & drynke but lytell for thynkyng to accomplyshe his yll entrepryse / whan they had suppyd, they rose fro the borde / & theyr beddes were made redy. Than Huon called y^e abbot apart, and sayd / 16 ‘syr, I haue ²in you grete trust / I haue² brought hether with me gret ryches. I wyl leue it here *with* you to kepe tyll my retourne, & I pray you, for any maner of thyng that may fall, delyuer it to⁵ no man 20 lyuynge, But all onely to my selfe; and yf god gyue me the grace to retourne, your parte shalbe therin.’ ‘Syr,’ quod the abbot, ‘al that ye take me to kepe shalbe sauely kept to your behoue / & I shall do so 24 that ye shalbe content.’ than ⁶he went to bed, and Gerard with hym / then⁷ Gerard sayd, ‘brother, yf ye thynke it good, I shall call you⁸ betymes / for it semeth *that* to morrowe the day wyl be hote.’ ‘Bro- 28 ther,’ quod Huon / ‘I am content.’ Thus they lay togyther in one bed / but the traytoure Gerard had no lyst to slepe, for the great desyre that he had to be reuenged of his brother, who neuer dyd hym ony 32 trespas / alas! why dyd not Huon knowe his entente? if he had, the mater had not gone so to passe / at laste

Gerard hates Guyer the prouost because he went in search of Huon,

and longs for his death.

Huon gives his treasures into the keeping of the Abbot.

Gerard and Huon sleep together in one bed.

1-1 sate them. 2-2 omitted. 3 that. 4 and.
 5 vnto. 6 Fol. lv. col. l. 7 where. 8 vp.

- the houre cam that the cockes began to crow. then
 Gerarde a-woke Huon and sayd / 'brother, it were good
 for vs to aryse, for anone it wyl be day. it is good to
 4 ryde in the coole' / a¹ the yll traytoure / his thought
 was other wyse. Wlean Huon herd his brother, he
 rose vp / and so² euery man a rose³ & made them redy /
 'syr,' quod Gerames, 'how is it that ye be so hasty to
 8 departe⁴ hens? I praye you let me slepe a lytell
 lenger' / 'syr,' quod Gerarde, 'that is yll sayd / for he
 that hath besynes to do *that* toucheth hym nere ought
 not to slepe nor reste tyll⁵ his besynes is⁶ fynysshed.'
 12 'By my trouthe,' quod Huon, 'my brother sayth
 trouthe, for I haue good⁷ desyre to speke with kyng
 Charlemayne' / than euery man trussed⁸ and toke theyr
 horses, & the fayre Esclaramonde was redy and mounted
 16 on a⁹ mule, & so they all toke theyr leues of the abbot,
 who was ryght sorowful that they¹⁰ departyd¹⁰ so erly /
 then the gates were opened, and so departyd .xiiii. in
 a company / and Esclaramond made the .xv. and
 20 Gerard rode before to lede them the¹¹ way that he wolde
 haue them to ryde /¹² Esclaramonde,¹³ richely¹³ aparelled,
 rode very soberly / & she came to Huon & sayd / 'sir,
 I can not tell what me ayleth / but my herte is so sore
 24 troubled that all my flesshe¹⁴ trymbleth' / 'dame,'¹⁵ quod
 Huon, 'be not dysmayed nor haue no¹⁶ fere / for ye be
 in a good countre, where, by the grace of god, ye shall
 be serued lyke a prynces and lady of the countre' /
 28 and¹⁷ with those wordes spekyng her mule stumbled
 on the one fote before / so that she had nere hande a
 grete falle / then Huon aproched to her & toke the
 brydle of the mule in his hande & sayd / 'fayre lady,
 32 haue ye ony hurte?' 'sir,' quod she,¹⁸ 'I had almost

Gerard rouses
Huon at cock-
crow,
and urges him to
prepare for his
journey.

Gerames
complains of so
early a departure.

But Huon judges
it wise, and he
and his party
take leave of the
abbot.

Gerard leads the
way.

Esclaramonde is
troubled at heart.

Her horse
stumbles.

¹ But. ² *omitted*. ³ vp. ⁴ from. ⁵ vntill.
⁶ be. ⁷ great. ⁸ vp their things. ⁹ stately.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ would depart. ¹¹ right. ¹² and.
¹³⁻¹³ being very sumptuously. ¹⁴ bodie. ¹⁵ Madame.
¹⁶ any. ¹⁷ Fol. lv. col. 2. ¹⁸ but.

Gerames begs
Huon to return to
the abbey and wait
until the day-
light,

but Gerard tells
him his fears are
idle.

When Huon
comes to four
cross roads, he
chooses the one
that leads to
France and the
Emperor.

Gerard complains
that when Huon
has re-entered
into his lands,
he himself will be
left penniless,

fallen.' 'By my fayth,' quod Gerames, 'we haue done
¹grete foly to departe or it be¹ day lyght.' 'Syr,'
 quod Gerard, 'I neuer saw men so ferefull for so small
 a cause.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'I knowe not why ye 4
 speke it / but yf I myghte ²be byleued, we shall² not
 goo one foote further / but returne agayne to the abbey
 tyll the³ day lyght.' 'By god,' quod Gerarde, 'it were
 grete foly to returne agayne now for the stumblunge of 8
 a mule / I neuer saw men so ferefull. let vs ryde
 forth and make good chere; I se y^e day begynneth to
 apere' / so they rode forth tyll⁴ they came to a crosse,
 where as there was .iiii. wayes, this was a legge fro the 12
 abbey / then Huon rested and sayd / 'loo, here is the
 border of the terrytory of y^e abbey of saynt Mauris,
 and this one way is to Burdenx, the whiche waye I
 wyll not ryde, for so I haue promysed to kynge Charle- 16
 mayne / to whom I neuer yet falsyd my fayth. yf I
 dyd it sholde be the cause that I myght lese my
 seynory. & this other way goeth to Rome / and this
 other way before vs is the ryght way in to Fraunce, the 20
 whiche way I wyl ryde and none other' / so they rode
 forth / & al theyr company / & within a whyle they
 were nere to the wode, within a bowe shot where as the
 traytoure Gybouars lay in ⁵a busslement⁵ / &⁶ when 24
 Gerard saw his hour & tyme to speke to⁷ his brother
 Huon, he sayd, 'brother, I se ye are *in mynd* to go *in*
 to fraunce to⁷ kynge Charlemayne to haue your landes
 & seynoryes / the whiche I am sure ye shall haue / it 28
 is a longe space that I haue kept it & maynteyned the
 countre in peace & rest and good iustyce, & haue wonne
 but lytell, nor haue had but small profyte, not y^e
⁸valew of one peny, and I am maryed to a noble lady / 32

¹⁻¹ very ill, for that wee departed from the Abbey before.

² ² counsell yee we would. ³ omitted. ⁴ vntill.

⁵ ⁵ ambushment. ⁶ now. ⁷ vnto.

⁸ Fol. lv. back, col. 1.

- doughter to a grete lorde / and it troubleth my herte
 sore when ye repute hym for a traytour / yf he knew it,
 by likelyhode it myght turne you to grete foly / for
 4 we byleued that ye sholde neuer haue returned / ther-
 fore now I may say *that* I am not worth a peny / ther-
 fore I wold know of you how ye wold ayde me, and
 what parte I shall haue at your returne out of Fraunce.' and inquires how
 Huon will aid
 him.
- 8 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'I haue grete meruayle of this
 that ye say / ye know wel that in the abbey of saynt
 Maurys I haue lefte .xx. somers charged with fyne
 golde / and I haue sayd to¹ you *that* your parte shal be
 12 therin as moch as myne / nor I shall haue no peny but
 the² one halfe is yours.' 'Brother,' quod Gerard, 'all
 this suffyseth not to me / for I wolde haue parte of y^e
 seynnory to maynteyn myn estate.' When Huon
 16 vnderstode his brother, his blode rose in to his face /
 for he saw wel his brother serched all that he coude to
 fall at debate with hym / ³Gerames, who was sage and
 wyse, parceyued anone that the mater was lyke to go
 20 euyll / and sayde to¹ Huon / 'syr, graunt to Gerard
 your brother his demaunde. ye are bothe yonge ynough
 to conquare landes' / 'Gerames,' quod Huon, 'I am
 content that he shall haue Burdeux or Gerome / let
 24 hym take whiche he lyst. Brother,' quod Huon,
 'shewe whiche of these .ii. ye wyll haue, and I wyll
 haue the other.'
- Huon promises
 half the treasures
 he has brought
 from the East,
 but Gerard
 claims part of
 the lands of
 Bordeaux.
- Gerames advises
 Huon, who is
 filled with wrath,
 to grant his
 brother his desire,
 and the knight
 consents.

- ¶ Howe these traytours slewe all Huons
 28 company except Gerames and Esclaramond
 and Huon himselfe, the whiche all thre
 were faste bounde handes and fete and
 blyn felde, and so brought to¹ Burdeux and
 32 were set⁴ in pryson. Capt. lxvii.

¹ vnto.² that.³ and.⁴ put.



1 **W**hen y^e fals traytoure Gerard saw &
 vnderstode his broder, how he dyd
 graunt him his desyre / & sawe how
 that in no wyse he wold stryue with 4
 hym, he was ther with so dyspleased
 that he was nere hande in a rage / then he came to
 the prouost Guyer and sayd, 'Guyer, Guyer, False
 traytoure, by the & by thy purchase I am lyke to lese 8
 all my seynorye / but by y^e fayth that I owe to² him
 that me created / or³ I dye I shall stryke of thy heed /
 nor I shall not let to do it for ony person' / & ther-
 with, when he sawe his tyme, he cryed his worde & 12
 token / and Gybouars who was in the wode with .xl.
 men armed brake out with theyr speres in theyr restes ;
 and when Huon perceyued them it was no meruayle
 thoughe he was abassed / then humbly he besought 16
 our lorde god to saue his body fro mysfortune / ⁴gladly
 he wolde haue returned to the abbey / but he was so
 sore ouer layde that he coule not / then he drew out
 his swerde and gaue ther with y^e fyrst that came suche 20
 a stroke that he claue his heed to the teeth, and so fell
 deed to the grounde / and Huon strake so on⁵ the ryght
 hande and on⁵ the lefte / that whom so euer he strake a
 full stroke neded after no surgyon / yf he had ben 24
 armed he wolde not lyghtly haue ben taken without
 grete losse ; but his defence coude not auayle hym /
 for he and all his company were vnarmed, & all the
 other .xl. were elene armed, and they all fought cruelly 28
 in such wyse that within a whyle .xii. of Huons men
 were slayne in the place / and none scaped alyue
 excepte Huon, who was beaten downe to the erth &
 his handes bounde / then Gerard the traytoure came to 32
 Gerames, who was beaten downe by force / and then he
 cut open his ryght syde, and toke out therof the

Gerard is
wratiful because
Huon will not
quarrel with him,
and reproaches
the prouost Guyer
with having
caused his ruin.

Huon and his
company reach
the wood where
Gybouars with
his men lies in
ambush.

Huon is
dismayed, but

attacks his
enemies manfully,
although he is
unarmed.

Twelve of his
company are
slain.

Huon is bound,
and Gerard cuts
open Gerames'
side and takes

¹ Fol. lv. back, col. 2.

² vnto.

³ before.

⁴ and.

⁵ vpon.

Admyrall Gaudys berde & .iiii. grete teth, the whiche
 were set there by¹ Oberon of the fayry / ²Huon seyng
 the old Gerames lyenge on the erth, he sayd *with* a
 4 hye voyce to³ Gerarde, ‘a,⁴ broder, I praye you shew
 me that curteyse as not to sle that olde gentyman, but
 saue his lyfe’ / ‘brother,’ *quod* Gerarde, ‘that he hath
 let *him* kepe, other hurt he shal none haue at this
 8 tyme’ / then they bounde his eyen / then they came
 to Esclaramonde, who lay on y^e erth in a swone / they
 bounde her handes & her eyen, & so set her, whether
 she wolde or not, vpon a horse / & Huon, as he was
 12 blyndfeld, he herde the cryes & wepynges *that* she
 made. *then* he sayd / ‘broder Gerard, I pray you for
 the loue of our lorle Jesu cryst suffre none yll to be
 done to that good lady who is my wyfe, nor no dys-
 16 honour’ / ‘brother,’ *quod* y^e traytour Gerarde, ‘thynke
 on your selfe, & speke no more. I shal do as it please
 me’ / *then* they set Huon & Gerames on .ii. horses /
 then the fals traytour toke y^e .xii. deed bodyes and dyd
 20 cast *them* into the grete ryuer of Geron; then they
 toke y^e way to y^e eyte of Burdeux, & led the thre
 prysoners fast bounde on⁵ thre horses / pyte it was to
 here the noble lady Esclaramond *complayne*, & she
 24 sayd to³ Huon, ‘a, syr, ye haue sayd to me that when
 we were ones in your countre of Burdeux *that* ye wold
 cause me to be crowned *with* golde / but now I se
 well / that in grete payne & mysery we must vse the
 28 resydew of our lyues / ye haue founde here an yll
 brother, syn he hath purchased for you so moche yll /
 surely there is better fayth & trowth amonge the
 sarazins *then* is in the people of the realme of Fraunce.’
 32 ‘dame,’ *quod* Huon, ‘your trouble more dyspleaseth
 me then myne owne / god sende to my brother Gerard⁷
 rewarde as he hath deserued for the treason *that* he

thence the objects
of Huon's mission
to Babylon.

At Huon's
request he spares
the old man's
life.

Huon's eyes are
blindfolded,

and Esclaramonde
with eyes and
hands well bound
is set upon a
horse.

Huon pleads for
his wife,

but he and
Gerames are also
set on horses
with her,

and brought
towards the city
of Bordeaux.

Esclaramonde
deplores their sad
fate.

¹ Kinge. ² Fol. lvi. col. 1. ³ vnto. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ vpon. ⁶ Madame. ⁷ such.

They enter
Bordeaux before
daylight,

and through dark
lanes, so that
none shall see
them, are led to
the palace.

The three
prisoners are
placed in a deep
dungeon, and
are given little
sustenance.

hath done ¹to¹ vs' / thus they *complayned*, & wyste
not whyther they were caryed / they entred in to the
cite of Burdeux an hour before day. Alas that the
good burgesses of the cite had not² knowyn how theyr 4
lorde Huon was so falsely ³betrayed / yf they had
knowen it, he had ben rescued, and Gerard & Gybouars
hewen all to peces / but the false Gerarde brought
them by prey darke lanes to the palayes, for that they 8
shold not be parceyued / thus they cam to the castell /
there⁴ they alyghted & vnarmed them / then they toke
Huon and Esclaramonde & Gerames & put them all in
to a depe pryson all thre togyther / & ordeyned *that* 12
they sholde haue euery day barly brede & water / &
commaunded the gayler to gyue them none other
thyng, and also *commaunded that* nother man nor
woman shold speke with them / the gayler promysed 16
so to do, for he was seruant to Gybouars;⁵ such as the
mayster was so was the seruuant / thus Huon ¹was¹
betrayed pyteously by his brother Gerarde & set in
pryson, & with him his wyfe ¹the fayre¹ Esclaramonde, 20
& Gerames / wounded on the syde as he was. Now
we wyl leue to speke of this pyteous company duryng⁶
grete sorow in y^e horryble pryson in the grete toure
of Burdeux. 24



¶ How the traytours returned to the abbey
of saynt Mauris & slew the good abbot, &
toke away all the treasure that Huon had
lefte there. Capitulo .lxviii. 28

¹⁻¹ omitted.

² but.
⁵ and.

³ Fol. lvi. col. 2.

⁴ where.

⁶ enduring.



4 Thus as ye haue herd here before howe
 Gerarde & Gybouars had put in pry-
 son Huon & Esclaramonde & Gerames
 in grete mysery; & when it was day,
 Gerarde & Gybouars departed out of
 Burdeux, & all theyr company, & rode
 agayne to y^e abbey & came thyder to dyner / then
 8 Gerard sent for y^e abbot to come & speke with hym /
 when y^e abbot herde how Gerard was come agayne to
 y^e abbey he had grete meruayle / & so came to Gerard
 & sayd, 'sir, ye be welcome. I pray you ¹what aduen-
 12 ture hath brought you hyther agayne so shortly? / I
²went ye² had ben gone with your brother Huon' / 'Sir,'
 quod the traytour, 'after that my brother Huon was
 departyd hens / he remembred his ryches that he left
 16 with you to kepe, & bycause he shal haue grete nede
 therof to gyue gyftes to³ the grete prynces & lordes that
 be aboute kyng Charlemayne, to y^e entent that his
 besynes may take y^e better effect / therefore my brother
 20 hathe sent me to³ you desyrynge you to sende his good
 to³ him by me' / 'sir,' quod y^e abbot, 'when your
 brother Huon departed hens, trewe it was⁴ he left with
 me his ryches to kepe, & charged me / not to delyuer
 24 it too ony person lyuyng, but alonely to his owne
 person / therefore, sir, by the fayth that I owe to³ my
 patron saynt Maurys I wyl not delyuer³ you one peny' /
 when y^e traytour Gerard vnderstode that answeere, he
 28 sayd / 'dane abbot, thou lvest / for whyther thou wylte
 or not I wyll haue it, & no thanke to the, & yet thou
 shalt also repent thy wordes' / then Gerard sodenly
 toke y^e abbot by y^e here of his⁵ heed / & Gybouars toke
 32 him by y^e one arme & dyd so stryke him with a staffe
 that he al to brused him, & then dyd cast him to the
 erth so rudely that his hert brast⁶ in his body & so

Gerard and Gybouars return to the Abbey whence Huon had set out.

The abbot marvels at their quick return.

Gerard says that Huon has sent him to fetch his riches,

but the abbot declares he has sworn to deliver them to none but Huon himself.

Gerard says he will seize them in spite of his refusal, and he and Gybouars slay the abbot.

¹ Fol. lvi. back, col. 1. ²⁻² had thought that you.

³ vnto.

⁴ that.

⁵ the.

⁶ burst.

The monks
flee in fear,
but the traitors
pursue them.

Despairing of
life, the monks
implore the
robbers to show
them mercy,
and offer to give
them the gold.

Gybouars spares
their lives, and
taking the keys
from them,
seizes all the
treasure of the
church there,
besides Huon's
wealth.

One of the monks,
who is cousin to
Gybouars, is
made abbot.

Gerard and
Gybouars bear it
to Bordeaux.

A third of it
Gerard lays in his
chamber, but the

dyed / when y^e monkes saw theyr abbot slayn they
had grete fere, & so fledde away, & the two traytours
with theyr swerdes in there handes wente after them
with sore threthnynges; & when y^e monkes sawe how 4
they conde not escape for y^e two traytours & theyr men,
they ¹taryed and ¹fell downe on theyr knees, ¹ryght¹
humbly prayenge them to haue pyte ¹& compassyon¹
of them, & that they wolde shewe them all the golde & 8
treasure that was in y^e hous, to do ther with at theyr
pleasure / then y^e traytour Gybouars sayd how they²
hadde spoken well,³ when the monkes saw how they
had peace they shewed to the two traytours the place 12
where as⁴ the treasure was, and delyuered⁵ them the
keyes / so they toke away all the treasure that Huon
⁶had lefte there, and besyde that all the treasure of
the chyrch / crosses / sensers / chalesses / copes / and 16
candelstyckes of syluer, all they tooke & caryed awaye /³
yf and I sholde resyte all the ryches that they had
there, it shold be to longe to be rehersed. In that house
theyr was a monke who was cosyn to Gybouars, whom 20
the two traytours made abbot of that place / ⁷when they
had acheuyd theyr entrepryce they departed with all
that ryches, wher with was charged .xv. strong somers /
they left not in y^e abbey the valew of a floren / for 24
euery thyng that was good they toke with them / and
so rode tyll⁸ they came to Burdeux, ⁹& all⁹ they passed
through the towne they were gretely regarded of all the
burgesses of the cyte / they¹⁰ hadde grete meruayle fro 28
whens theyr lord came with so grete ryches. These
traytours passed forth tyll⁸ they came to the palays, &
there they dyscharged theyr somers / then Gerard toke
the treasure that .v. of the somers dyd cary and layde 32
it in his chambre & cofers / then he ordeyned that .x.

1-1 omitted. 2 the monks, 3 and, 4 omitted.
5 to, 6 Fol. lvi. back, col. 2. 7 so, 8 vntill.
9 9 Now as. 10 who.

somers sholde be trussed forth to go to Parys, and sent
 them forward, and sayd howe he wolde folowe soone
 after / then he and Gybouars dyned, & after mete they
 4 mounted on¹ theyr horses, and the new abbot, cosyn to
 Gybouars, *with* them, and two squyers and a².vi. other
 seruantes, and so rode *in* hast to ouertake their somers
 with theyr trespure, and so *within* two legges they ouer-
 8 toke them / & so then they all togyder rode so longe
 tyll³ on a wednysday they came to Parys. they lodged
 in the strete next to⁴ the palays *in* a good hostrye, &
 were well *serued*, & so rested tyll³ on⁵ the⁶ mornynge /
 12 then they rose & appalled them in fresshe arraye / &
 they led *with* them .v. of theyr somers with ryches, &
 two of them they *presented* to the quene & the other
 thre to y^e kynge, wherfore they were receyued *with*
 16 grete ioye / then after they gaue grete gyftes to euery
⁷lorde in the courte / & speccially to y^e offycers, wher-
 fore they were gretely praysed. But who so euer toke
 ony gyfte, duke Naymes wolde take neuer a peny / for
 20 he thought⁸ al that rycheys was not wel gotten, & that
 they dyd it for some crafte, therby to attayne to some⁹
 fals dampnable enterpryce / this duke was a noble,
 wyse knyght¹⁰ and a trew, and of good counsell /⁹
 24 he¹¹ well perceyued theyr malys. Then the kynge
 commaunded the thre cofers to be¹² set *in* his chambre,
 & wolde not loke *in*¹³ them tyll³ he hadde spoken with
 Gerarde / whom he caused to sytte downe by hym / &
 28 Gybouars in lyke wyse,¹⁴ and¹⁵ the newe abbot / for it
 is ¹⁶a sayenge¹⁶ that they *that* gyue are euer¹⁷ welcome.
 ‘Gerard,’ quod¹⁸ Charlemayne, ‘ye be welcome /
 I praye you shewe me the cause of youre comynge.’
 32 ‘Syr,’ quod Gerard, ‘I shall shewe you / syr,⁵ the grete

rest he sends
forward to Paris.

With Gybouars
he sets out to
follow it in its
journey.

On the day after
their arrival they
make presents of
part of their
riches to the
Queen, and part
to the King and
to the lords of the
court.

The Duke
Naymes will take
no gift.

Charlemagne
gives them a
warm welcome.

¹ vypon. ² about. ³ vntill. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ omitted.

⁶ next. ⁷ Fol. lvii. col. 1. ⁸ that. ⁹ and.

¹⁰ knight *after* trew. ¹¹ very. ¹² brought and.

¹³ into. ¹⁴ manner. ¹⁵ also.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ an old saying & a trew. ¹⁷ alwaies. ¹⁸ king.

Gerard declares
he brings
important
tidings.

beynes that I haue to do with ¹you and with¹ your lordes / hathe caused me to gyue these large gyftes that I haue gyuen² you & other, and, syr, I am sorowful at my hert for that³ I must shewe you / and I had ⁴rather be beyonde the see then to shew you that thyng that I must neddes doo / for to hyde it / it⁴ can not auayle me / yet I neuer shewed⁵ thyng in all my lyfe with so yll a wyll / for I shall be blamed of many ⁸persones / how be it, I loue better to defende myn honour then I loue all the worlde besyde.' 'Gerard,' quod the kyng, 'ye say trouth / for better it is to shew the trouthe then to be ⁶styll, syn the mater⁶ toucheth ¹²your honoure.'

¶ How the traytoure Gerarde shewed to kyng Charlemayne how Huon his brother was retourned too Burdeux without doynge ¹⁶of his message to the admyrall Gaudys.

Capitulo .lxix.



yr,' quod Gerarde, 'true it is⁴ ye haue made me knyght, & besyde that I ²⁰am your lyege man, wherfore I am bounde to kepe your honoure to my power / for I am certayne I shall shewe you suche newes *that* all that ²⁴

be in your court wyll be sorowfull, ⁸and also⁸ my selfe.' 'Gerard,' quod Charles, 'come to y^e poynt, and vse no more such langage nor suche serymonyes / by that I se in you it is but yll⁹ that ye wyll saye.' 'Syr,' quod ²⁸he, 'But late as I was in my house at Burdeux, and with me dyuers lordes and knyghtes / as we were deusyng together, I sawe my brother Huon entre in

Gerard says his
news is sorrowful.

¹⁻⁴ your Majestie and. ² to. ³ which. ⁴ that.
⁵ any. ⁶⁻⁶ silent in so great a matter which so much.
⁷ Fol. lvii. col. 2. ⁸⁻⁸ much more. ⁹ euill.

to my house, and thre with hym : the one was a yonge
damesell, and the other an olde man called Gerames.'

He tells him how
of late he had
seen Huon with
Gerames and a
damsel enter his
house at
Bordeaux.

When duke Naymes of Bauyer herde Gerard, he hadde

4 grete meruayle when that¹ he sayd that Gerames was

one of them / and sayd, 'a, very² god, I here that³ with

grete payne I can byleue it¹ / for yf it be the same

Gerames that I thyнке it be, he and I were companyons

The Duke
Naymes re-
members Gerames
as an old
companion of his.

8 togyther at a tornay holden at Chalons in champayne,

⁴where as¹ he slewe by mysaduenture y^e erle Salamon.'

'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'I shall shewe you as I haue

begon / trewe it is when I sawe my brother Huon I

12 was gretely abasshed / how be it, I dyd hym honour

and made hym good chere, and made hym and all his

company to dyne / then after dyner I reasoned with

my brother, and demaunded of hym yf he had ben at

Gerard says that
he received his
brother kindly,

16 the holy sepulture of oure lorde god / and⁵ when he

sawe that I demaunded that of hym, he was sore

abasshed, so *that* he wyst not what to answeere, and

then I parceyued by his wordes that he had not ben

20 there / and then, syr, after I demaunded of hym yf he

had furnysshed your message to y^e admyrall Gaudys /

but he coulede gyue me none answeere nor saye any

wordes that I coulede byleue / & when I sawe that I

24 coulede fynde no trouthe in none⁶ of his wordes, I toke

hym and haue set hym in pryson, how be it / it was

full sore agaynst my wyll / but I consyder in my selfe

that I muste owe to⁷ your grace faythe and fidelite,

28 and that I am your man / and *that* for no man lyuyng,

though he were neuer so nere of my kyn, yet I wolde

not be founde with any treason. And therefore, syr,

my brother and¹ his wyfe and his companion I haue

32 retayned them in my pryson. Therefore,⁸ syr, it is in

you to doo here in what it shall please you best.'

When all the prynces and lordes that were there vnder-

but he perceived
that he had not
fulfilled the
Emperor's
mission, and he

had therefore
cast him into
prison,

together with his
wife and his old
friend.

¹ omitted. ² deere. ³ which. ⁴ Fol. lvii. back, col. 1.

⁵ but. ⁶ any. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ wherefore.

The countiers
deplore that
Huon should be
now in prison.

stode the wordes of Gerarde, and that he had taken his brother Huon and set¹ hym in pryson, there were none but that was² sorye thetof, and many for the loue that they³ hadde of³ Huon began to wepe / and demaunded⁴ of Gerarde who hadde done that dede / sayenge, ‘surely it is done by some maner of treason.’

¶⁴ Howe the kynge commaunded that Huon sholde be sent for fro Burdeux, to the⁸ entente that he sholde dye.

Ca. lxxx = lxx.

All the Emperor's
hatred of Huon
is roused anew by
Gerard's story,



¶ Hen the Emperoure Charlemayne vnder-
stode Gerarde, he rose⁵ on his feete¹²
sore troubled and full of yve / for by
Gerardes wordes the aunycient hate
& dyspleasure that the kynge hadde to

Huon for y^e deth of Charlot his sone was renewed in¹⁶
his hert, and sayd openly, that euery man myght here
hym / ‘lordes that be here present, before you al I
somon them that were pledges for Huon in such wyse
that yf the traytour Huon be not rendred in to my²⁰
handes to do with hym my pleasure, I shal cause them
to be hanged and drawen / and there is no man in my
courte that he be so hardy⁶ to speke or desyre the
contrary / but I shall cause hym to dye a shamefull²⁴
dethe’ / and when he had thus sayde he satte hym
downe agayne, and called duke Naymes to hym, &
sayde, ‘syr duke / ye haue herde what Gerarde hathe
sayde of his brother Huon.’ ‘Syr,’ quod the duke, ‘I²⁸
haue well herd hym / but I byleue the mater be other
wyse then he hath sayd / for there is no man wyll saye
the contrary but that all that Gerarde hathe sayd is

and he threatens
to slay his
sureties unless
the knight is
surrendered to
him straightway.

Duke Naymes
suspects the truth
of Gerard's tale.

¹ had put. ² were. ³⁻³ bare to.
⁴ Fol. lvii. back. col. 2. ⁵ vp. ⁶ as.

done by fals treason / ye shall fynde it so yf the mater
 be wysely enquiryed of.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'ye saye
 as it please you, but I take god to wytnesse, and my
 4 father in lawe Gybouars, and this good, notable, relygious
 abbot and his chapleyne, that all that I haue sayde is
 trewe / for I wolde not for any thyng saye¹ but *that* is¹
 iust and trewe' / then Gybouars and the abbot and² his
 8 chapleyne answered & sayde how it was trewe that
 Gerarde had sayde. ³' by my fayth,' quod⁴ duke Naymes,
 'all ye foure are as² fals lyers & theues, & the kyng is
 yll counseyled yf he bylene you.' 'Naymes,' quod y^e
 12 kyng, 'I pray you how semeth it to⁵ you this mater
 bytwene these⁴ two bretherne?' 'Syr,' quod y^e duke,
 'it is a grete mater / he that is here before you is the
 accuser of his broder, & hath set *him in* pryson, and
 16 now he is come and accuseth hym here before you
 bycause he knoweth wel he can not come hyder to
 defende hymselfe / I shold do a grete yll⁶ dede yf I
 had a broder that were banysshed out of Fraunce, and
 20 yf he came to me for refuge, & I then to take hym and
 set him fast in pryson in myn owne house, & then
 after to go and complayne vpon hym, to the entent
 to purchase his deth. I saye there was neuer noble
 24 man wolde thynke so to do, and they that hath done
 thus are all fals traytours. all noble men ought not
 to bylene any suche, and speecially he that wyll pur-
 chase such a dede agaynst his owne brother / I knowe
 28 well all that they haue ymagyned & doone is by fals
 treason / therefore I say accordyng to the ryght, that
 all foure are fals traytours, & I iuge for my parte that
 they are worthy to receyue a velaynous dethe / for
 32 they are foure false wytnesses.' When Gerarde herde
 duke Naymes, he chaunged coloure and waxed as whyte
 as snowe, repentyng in *him selfe* the dede that he had

But Gybouars
 declares that
 Gerard has
 spoken the truth.

Duke Naymes is
 not, however, the
 more convinced,

and shows the
 Emperor how
 unnatural and
 cruel Gerard's
 conduct is on his
 own showing.

He denounces
 Gerard as a fal-
 se traitor.

Gerard turns pale
 with fear,

1-1 which is not.
 4 the.

2 omitted.
 5 vnto.

3 Fol. lviii. col. 1.
 6 euill.

done to his broder / he cursed to hymselfe Gybouars
 in that he byleued his counsell / then¹ he answered
 duke Naymes and sayd, 'A, *sir*, ye do me greate
 wronge² to owe me youre yll wyll.' 'Gerarde' / quod ⁴
 the duke, 'it is for the ylnesse that is in you / ye that
 wolde be one of the peers of Fraunce. Certaynely of
 suche a counsellor as ye be the kynge hath lytell nede
 of.³ I had rather a⁴ lost one of my handes then I ⁸
 sholde⁵ haue consented therto.' 'Duke Naymes,' quod
 the kynge, 'I wyll ye cause to come before me all suche
 as ⁶were pledges for Huon at his departyng.' Then
 the duke caused them to appere before the kynges ¹²
 presence / of whome there were dyuers dukes and erles.
 Then kyng Charlemayn sayd / 'syr, ye know well ye
 be pledges for Huon of Burdeux and you knowe the
 payne that I layde on your hedes yf Huon dyd not ¹⁶
 accomplysse my message that I gaue hym in charge /
 the which he hath not fulfilled. wherfore, without
 ye deliuer Huon in to my handes ye shal not scape, but
 that ye shall all dye.' 'Syr,' quod duke Naymes, 'for ²⁰
 goddes sake I requyre you beleue me at this tyme / I
 counsel you to take a good nombre of youre notable
 men and sende them to Burdeux, and let them take
 Huon out of pryson and brynge hym to you, and here ²⁴
 what he⁷ wyll saye / and yf it be trewe that Gerarde
 hath sayd, yet⁸ I desyre you too haue⁹ pyte on hym /
 but I hyleue surely ye shall fynde the mater other wyse
 then Gerarde his brother hath sayd.' 'Naymes,' quod ²⁸
 the kyng, 'your sayenge is reasonable. I accorde
 therto. I wyll he be sente for.'

and the Duke
 reproaches him
 with having
 sought to become
 a peer of France.

Huon's sureties
 are called before
 the Emperor,

and are ordered
 to deliver up
 Huon on pain of
 their lives.

The Duke urges
 the Emperor to
 send for Huon
 from Bordeaux,

and the advice is
 accepted.

¶ Howe the Emperoure Charlemayn went
 hymselfe to Burdeux to cause Huon to be ³²

¹ yet. ² ill. ³ omitted. ⁴ haue. ⁵ once.
⁶ Fol. lviii. col. 2. ⁷ himself. ⁸ then. ⁹ no.

slayne for the grete yll wyll that he bare to
hym. Capitulo .lxxxij.

4



E haue herd here before how the good
duke Naymes dyde so moch *that* kyng
Charlemayn was content to sende for
Huon, but the kyng was so¹ sore dys-
pleased with hym that he wolde not

But Charlemagne
is in such haste
to punish him,
that he resolves
to visit Bordeaux
himself,

8 abyde so longe as to sende for hym, but he made hym
selfe redy to go thither him selfe² with all his trayne,
and commaunded that the pledges shold be set in
pryson tyll his returne; but y^e good duke Naymes

and Duke Naymes
undertakes to
hold himself
pledge for the
sureties.

12 became pledge³ for them all to be forth comynge, and
soo they went not to pryson / the kyng made hym
redy and toke with him twelue of his peeres, & so toke
the waye towardes Burdeux / god ayde Huon, for he

The Emperor sets
out with twelve
peers.

16 was⁴ in peryll of his lyfe yf god haue no⁵ pyte on him /
thus, as I haue shewed you, kyng Charlemayn nobly
accompanied rode so longe by his iourneyes that he
came *within* the syght of Burdeux / ⁶when he aproched

20 nere to y^e cyte Gerarde came to y^e kyng, and sayd /
'sir, yf it please you I wolde gladly ryde before you in
to the cyte to ordeyn to receyue you accordyngly.'

Gerard rides with
him and offers to
advance to
prepare for his
reception, but
Charlemagne bids
him stay with
him.

'Gerarde,' *quod* the kyng, 'it is no nede *that* ye goo
24 before to prepare for my comynge, there be other *that*
shal go before / ye shal not go tyll I go myselfe' /
when duke Naymes herd the kynges answeere he sayd
to the kyng / 'Syr, ye haue answered lyke a noble

28 prynee, blyssed be he that counselled you so to saye' /
thus the kyng rode forth without gyuyng ony know-
lege of his cominge / and so entred in to the cyte
of Burdeux and rode to the palays, & there alyghted /

The Emperor
arrives at the
patace.

32 then the¹ dyner was made redy / ⁶the kyng sate downe
and duke Naymes by hym, & at other bourdes other

¹ omitted. ² in person. ³ Fol. lviii. back, col. 1.

⁴ now. ⁵ not, ⁶ and,

lordes and knyghtes, and there they were ryehely serued; grete brute was made in the palayes, so that Huon, beyng in pryson, had grete mernayle of the noyse *that* he herde, and demaunded of y^e gayler what 4 noyse it was that he herde aboue in the palays / the gayler answered fyersly¹ with grete pryde and dyspyte, and sayd, 'it nede not you to demaunde / for ye are lyke to knowe it to soone / but syn ye wolde knowe it, 8 I shall shewe you y^e trouthe / it is kyng Charlemayne and all his barons, who are come hyther for¹ to iuge you to be hanged.' 'Go thy way, fals traytoure,' quod Huon / 'canst thou not shewe to me none other 12 tydynge but that?' Thus Huon answered the gayler / ²there was as grete brute in the eyte as was¹ in the palays³ with lodgyng of the kynges men. The comons and burgesses of y^e eyte of Burdeux hadde full grete 16 meruayle why the kyng came thyder at that tyme so sodeynely / ²the kyng syttyng at the table made good chere / but duke Naymes who satte by hym began to wepe, and coude nother ete nor drinke; he rose vp then 20 sodeynly / so rudely that he ouerthrewe cuppes, and dysshes upon the table. 'Naymes,' quod the kyng, 'ye haue done yll thus to do.' 'Syr,' quod the¹ duke Naymes, 'I haue good cause thus to doo, and I haue wonders 24 grete meruayle that I se you so dotyd. I am in suche sorowe ther by that I am nere handle out of my wyttes. howe is it that ye be come in to the eyte of Burdeux for to ete and to drynke, and too take youre ease? ye nede 28 not to haue gone out of Fraunce for that / for ye hadle mete and also good wynes suffycient at home in youre owne house. A, ryghte noble and worthy Emperoure, what thynke⁴ you too do? / it is no small mater to iuge 32 to deth one of your twelue peers / and it is not possyble to gyue ony trewe Iugement when you and we are full

Huon in his prison learns from the gaoler of Charlemagne's coming.

The town of Bordeaux is greatly excited by the visit of the Emperor, who makes good cheer in the palace.

Duke Naymes grows angry at Charlemagne's merriment,

who, having come to judge one of his peers, sits drinking wine and banqueting.

¹ omitted. ² and. ³ Fol. lviii, back, col. 2.

⁴ meane.

of wyne and spyces. But, syr,' sayd the duke, 'by the lord that me fourmed, that who so euer this daye doth ete or drynke wyne / as longe as the lyfe is in my
 4 body I shall neuer loue him.' 'Naymes,' quod the kyng, 'I am contente with your wyll.' Then the kyng commaunded that the tables sholde be avoyded / and commaunded incontynent Huon to be taken out of
 8 pryson and brought before hym / they that had commyssyon to do it wente to the pryson / and theyr they toke out Huon and his wyfe Esclaramonde and y^e¹ olde Gerames;² they were all thre brought before the
 12 kyng and his barons. ¹when they came¹ / Huon sawe where the kyng Charlemayn sate amonge all his lordes / ²they³ arose when they sawe Huon and his company, pale & yll coloured by ⁴reason of y^e yll⁵ prison that his
 16 brother had put them in / 'Esclaramond was gretly regarded, & the olde Gerames⁶ / when the pledges sawe Huon before the kyng, they sayd / 'syr, now ye may
 20 quyt & dyscharged; it lyeth now in you to do with him at your pleasure' / 'syrs,' quod the kyng, 'I hold you quyt; ye may go fro hens forth where ⁷ye lyst⁷ / for Huon can not now scape our handes' / then Huon
 24 kneled downe before the kyng right humbly / ²when duke Naymes sawe hym, the droppes fell ⁸out of ⁸ his eyen, and sayde to the kyng, 'Syr, I requyre you gyue Huon audyence, and here what he wyl say' / 'I
 28 am content,' quod the kyng; 'let hym say what he wyll' / then Huon, knelyng on his knees, sayd, 'Syr, in the honoure of our lorde Jesu cryste I⁹ crye you¹ merey to god, and to you, and to all your barons.
 32 I complayne me of the fals traytour that I se there,

The Emperor orders Huon to be brought before him,

and he with Esclaramonde and Gerames comes into his presence.

At the sight of Huon,

the king discharges his sureties,

and bids him speak.

1-1 omitted. 2 and. 3 all. 4 Fol. lix. col. 1.

⁵ noysome.

⁶⁻⁶ and Esclaramond & old Gerames were greatly regarded and,

⁷⁻⁷ you please.

⁸⁻⁸ from.

⁹ first.

Huon accuses his
brother of
treachery.

The lords of the
court pity Huon,

who looks pale
and thin.

Huon proceeds to
tell Charlemagne
all his adventures
at Babylon,

how Oberon
protected him;

who was my brother, yf ther had ben other fayth or
trouth in hym but I beleue in al the world can not be
foude so cruell & fals a traytour for Cayme that slew
Abel his broder was neuer so fals nor so cruell / 4
when all the lordes herd Huon, they all began to wepe,
sayenge eche to other, 'a, good lord, where is the beaute
be come that was wonte to be in Huon? we haue sene
hym so fayre that none¹ coulde passe hym in beaute / 8
and nowe we se hym pale and lene and yll coloured: it
appereth well he hath not ben all wayes in the ladyes
chambres nor amonge damselles to sporte and to
playe² him' thus they deuysed of him, and toke no 12
hede of Gerarde, who was by them. Then Huon spake
agayne, and sayd to the kynge, 'Syr, trewe it is, the
message that ye gaue me in charge too doo to³ the
Almyrall Gaudys, I haue done it ⁴at length,⁴ as ye 16
haue commaunded ⁵me and I haue passed the see and
came to³ Babylone to the Admyrall Gaudys, and ther
I requyred of hym in the presence of all his lordes to
haue his berde and liiii. grete teth. But when he had 20
herde my demaunde he helde it for a grete folye, & so
incontynente he caste me in pryson, where as I had
dyed ⁶for rage of ⁶famine and ⁷the Admyralles dought-
ter hadde, not ben whom ye maye se yonder syttyng 24
by the pyller / and also by the ayde of the good kynge
Oberon whom I ought gretely to loue / he is a kynge
of the fayry ryght pusant and is in the eyte of
Mommure / and he, knowynge of the peryll that I was 28
in, had pyte of me and ⁸soo he⁸ came and socoured
me in suche wyse, & with so grete a pusaunce / that in
Babylone he slewe all suche as wolde not byleue in
our lorde Jesu cryste. Then he toke me out of pryson / 32
and so⁹ we entred in to the palays, and there we slewe

¹ no one.

² with.

³ vnto.

⁴⁻⁴ to the verie vttermost.

⁵ Fol. lix. col. 2.

⁶⁻⁶ by.

⁷ if.

⁸⁻⁸ omitted.

⁹ then.

all suche as we founde there. Then I wente to the
 Admyral Gaudys and strake of his heed¹ and then I
 cut of his berde and opened his mouthe² and drewe
 4 out foure of his grate teth³ when I hadde theym⁴ then
 I desyred kynge Oberon to ayde me to fynde the
 meanes that I myght brynge surely the berde and teth
 to your presence and to shewe me where as⁵ I myghte
 8 beste kepe them. Then the good kynge Oberon, by
 the grace of oure lorde god and by the poyssaunce that
 god hadde gyuen vnto hym, he closed theym within
 the syde of Gerames soo that they coude not be
 12 perceyued. ¹Syr, knowe for trouthe ye neuer berde
 spekyng² of suche a man and³ when that² I sawe
 that I hadde furnysshed your message, I retourned and
 toke with me the fayre lady Esclaramonde, doughter to
 16 the fore sayle Almayrall Gaudys and the twelue
 gentylnen that went with me out of Fraunce who all
 wayes hath ben with me. And, syr, yf I shoulde shewe
 you the gret paynes and pouertes that I & they haue
 20 suffred, it shoulde be to longe to⁴ reherse but I may well
 saye, &⁵ the grace of god had not ben I had neuer
 come hyther agayne; yf I had had .x. lyues I coude
⁶not a⁶ scaped the deth. &⁷ after all these paynes &
 24 traunyles that I and they that were with me suffred, by
 the grace of god we came & aryued at Rome, where as
⁸the holy father⁸ y⁶ pope receyued me with grete ioye,
 & ther wedded me to Esclaramonde, the Admyralls
 28 doughter, whom ye maye se yonder all desolate and
 full of dyspleasures, & not without cause⁹ when the
 barons that were there herd the pyteous complayntes
 of Huon, euery man of pite behelde y⁶ lady, who, pale
 32 & yll coloured, sate sore wepyng¹⁰ so that such as
 regarded her were constraigned to take parte of her
 sorowe there was no man but they began sore to

how Gaudisse was
slain;

how at Rome he
married the
Admiral's fair
daughter.

All who hear the
piteous tale begin
to weep.

¹ and. ² omitted. ³ Now. ⁴ Fol. lix. back. col. 1.

⁵ if. ⁶⁻⁶ neuer haue. ⁷ Next. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted.

Huon asserts that
all he says is
truth,

wepe / & Huon, who was before the kyng, was
sorowfull to se his wyfe make so grete doloure. Then
he sayd ¹a hye to¹ the kyng / ‘syr, yf ye wyll not by-
lene my sayeng, sende to Rome to y^e pope to knowe the **4**
trouthe / yf ye proue my wordes contrary I submyt my
selfe to receyue suche dethe that² ye & youre barons can
deuyse, yf the pope do not bere wytnesse of that I
haue sayd / god forbed that I sholde shew you ony **8**
thyng other wyse then trouthe / I haue sayd nothyng
but he shal shew tokens that my sayenge is trewe / and
I can saye more yf I wolde shewe all / but it is not
nedefull that I sholde make a longe sermonde. But, **12**
syr, thus as I haue shewed you I dyd retourne fro the
place *that* ye sent me vnto³ / and, syr, knowe for trouthe
I can not so vnprouyded / but that I broughte with me
grete plente of golde & syluer / and my company came **16**
hole⁴ with me, and I ⁵was in purpose⁵ not to reste in
ony place tyll I hadde spoken with youre grace / for the
grete desyre that I had to se you / and so longe⁶ I rode
tyll I came too an abbey here⁷ by a foure legges hense, **20**
called Saynt ⁸Maurys, because the abbey is⁹ of youre
foundaeyon, and not partaynyng to the lande of
Burdeux / for I wolde not haue entred in to this
towne bycause of the commaundement that ye gaue **24**
me / thus I came & lodged me in the abbey / and
the abbot receyued me with grete ioie / and he sent
worde of my beyng there to my brother Gerarde / and
the traytoure came too me lyke a false traytoure / & **28**
brought with hym but one squyer / wherby now I
maye perecyue that in hym was nothyng but falsenesse
and treason’ / ‘Huon,’ quod Duke Naymes, ‘your
reason is good, for yf he had ben trewe as he ought to **32**
haue ben / he ought to assemble the barons and lordes

and tells of his
fortunes since he
arrived in France.

¹⁻¹ unto. ² as. ³ to. ⁴ all. ⁵⁻⁵ purposed.
⁶ along. ⁷ hard. ⁸ Fol. lix. back, col. 2.
⁹ was.

of the countre, & so to haue come with them to¹ haue
 receyued you with reuerence and honoure.' 'Syr,' quod
 Huon, 'it is trewe / but the traytoure dyd other wyse /
 4 for when he was come to me, by grete subtylte he
 demaunded how I had sped in my iourney, and
 whyther I hadde spoken with the Admyrall Gaudys or
 not, and declared to him your message, and yf I had
 8 broughte with me his berde and foure grete teeth; and
 I shewed hym I hadde accomplysshed your hole com-
 maundement / then the vnhappy traytoure demaunded
 where I kept them, and I shewed hym, for I had no
 12 mystruste in hym / then he soo exorted me that at the
 houre of mydnyghte he made me to aryse hastely, and
 made me and al my company redy, and so lepte on
 oure horses and rode forth oure waye; and when we
 16 came too a crosse way, and sawe that I toke the way
 into Fraunce, he began to speke rygoryously to haue
 occacyon of some stryfe betwene vs; and nere therto
 there was a lytell wode, where as there laye in a
 20 busschement Gybouars, and in his company .lx. men of
 armes clene² armed / & they came & ran at me; my &³
 company⁴ were vnarmed, ⁵wherby they founde in vs
 but small resytence / and so fynally the .xii. ientylmen
 24 that were with me were all slayne & all to hewen, &
 then they toke theyr deed bodyes & dyde cast them in
 to the ryuer of Gerounde / then they strake me to the
 erth, & bounde fast my fete and handes and blynd felde
 28 myn eyen, and in lyke wyse they dyd to my wyfe / and
 then they came to Gerames / & the traytoure my
 brother came to hym, and with a sharpe knyfe opened
 his syde / and there he toke out the berde / and .iiii.
 32 gret teth of the Admyralles Gaudys / the whiche were
 set there by kynge Oberon; the false traytour knewe
 y^e place where as they lay by reason that I had shewed

Huon recounts
Gerard's evil plot.

¹ and. ² well. ³ and my. ⁴ that.

⁵ Fol. lx. col. l.

him therof before / wolde to god *that* y^e same tyme
that he cam to Gerames to do that cruel dede that
 Gerames had *ben* armed / I am sure then the false¹
 traytoure durst not a² regarded him to haue done hym 4
 any³ euyl / but, syr, when he had taken out y^e berde
 and teth / then he bounde Gerames handes and fete,
 hurte as he was / as, syr, ye may knowe the trouthe by
 hym / then Gerames stept forth & lyfte vp his cloke, 8
 & shewed y^e kyng y^e wounde *in* hys syde, y^e which
 every man myght se³ was there / ‘*sir,*’ *quod* Huon to
 the kyng / ‘when he had done all this / he set vs on
 iii. lene horses, & so brought vs in to this towne, 12
 bounde handes and fete, and then set vs in a depe
 pryson / & so hath kept vs hyder vnto⁴ with brede and
 water / and⁵ hath taken fro vs all the ryches *that*
 we brought *with* vs / and, *sir,* yf he be so hardy to say 16
 the contrary, that it is not true that I haue sayd / let
 hym & Gybonars, lyke traytours as they be, arme
 them,⁶ and I shall fyght agaynst them bothe / and yf I
 may⁷ conquer them bothe, wherof I haue no doute with 20
 the ayde of our lord god / *then* let them haue as they
 haue deserued / & yf I can not ouer come them nor to¹
 make them to shewe the trouthe / I wyll that then
 incontynente ye ^scause me to be drawen & hanged.’ 24
 ‘By my fayth,’ *quod* duke Naymes, ‘syr / Huon can
 saye nor offre no more / for he offereth to proue y^e
 contrary of *that* Gerarde hath sayd’ / ‘syr,’ *quod*
 Gerard, ‘my brother sayth at his pleasure, bycause he 28
 knoweth well that I will not stryue agaynst hym /
 bycause he is myne elder brother / let the kyng do as
 it shall please hym / as for me, I neuer consented to do
 so cruell a dede as he layeth to my charge.’ ‘A, good 32
 lorde,’ *quod* duke Naymes / ‘howe the fals traytour can
 cloke & couer his ylnes!’ ‘Huon,’ *quod* Charlemyn,

Gerames shows
the wound that
Gerard made in
his side.

Huon challenges
Gerard and
Gybonars to
mortal combat.

Gerard denies the
truth of Huon's
story.

¹ omitted. ² haue. ³ that. ⁴ hetherto. ⁵ so.
⁶ selues. ⁷ can. ⁸ Fol. lx. col. 2.

'I can not tell what ye haue done / but I wyll ye
 shewe me the berde and .iiii. grete teeth of the
 Admirall Gaudys' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I crye you
 4 mercy, I haue shewed you howe they be taken fro me
 by the false traytoure my brother Gerarde' / 'Huon,'
 quod the kyng, 'ye knowe wel at your departure out
 of Fraunce I defended¹ you on² payn of your lyfe, that
 8 yf by aduen[tu]re ye returned agayne in to Fraunce, *that*
 ye sholde not be so hardy³ to enter in to this eyte of
 Burdeaux tyl⁴ ye had spoken with me fyrst, & to kepe
 me promis ye deliuered⁵ me hostages, y^e which I haue
 12 quyt syn⁶ I haue you in my handes. it lyeth now in me
 other to hange you or to drawe you / or to gyue too⁷
 you any other ingemente / for at youre departure ye
 were agreed that I shold so do / but by y^e fayth that I
 16 owe to⁷ saynt Denys, or⁸ it be nyght I shall cause the
 to be hanged and drawen, and that shall I not let so to
 do for any man lynnyng / for now I take you in youre
 owne house.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'god forbed that a
 20 kyng of Fraunce sholde do so grete a cruelte. Syr,⁹ I
 crye you mercy / for goddes sake doo not to me so
 grete an outrage / for, syr,¹⁰ ye maye knowe ryght well
 that parforce I was broughte hyther. And therefore,
 24 syr¹¹ kyng, I requyre you let me haue ryghtfull and
 trewe ingement.' 'By my fayth, Huon,' quod duke
 Naymes, ¹²'it is but a small request that ye make / for
 your ryght is so clere that yf reason maye be shewed to
 28 you, there is no man can say the contrary / but that
 your landes oughte to be rendred to⁷ you franke and fre,
 & your brother Gerarde to be hanged and strangled' /
 then the duke sayde to the kyng: / 'syr,⁹ I requyre you
 32 haue pyte of Huon, and doo nothyng to hym but
 ryght / and, *sir*,¹⁰ ye shall do grete synne without

Charlemagne in
anger at the loss
of the beard
and teeth,

threatens to slay
Huon.

Huon begs for
mercy.

Naymes supports
his appeal,

¹ charged. ² vpon. ³ as. ⁴ vntill. ⁵ to.
⁶ seeing. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ before. ⁹ my Lord.
¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ great. ¹² Fol. lx. back, col. 1.

and the king
promises him a
trial.

Naymes protests
against the
Emperor's
treatment of
Huon.

The king bids his
peers give Huon
an impartial trial.

Naymes entreats
them not to allow
the king's hatred
to affect their
judgment.

ye do hym ryght' / 'Naymes,' quod the kynge, 'you knowe well it is in me to cause Huon to dye / but syn¹ that he is one of my peers I wyll ordre hym by iugement.' When the lordes and other knyghtes herde 4
the kynge saye so they were ryght ioyful / for then they byleued *that* the kyng sholde² haue pyte of Huon / but who so euer was ioyful / yet duke Naymes was not contente, and sayde to the kynge / 'syr,³ by that I se 8
and here ye here Huon but small loue, seyng that ye wyll put hym to iugement, *consydering* his dedes and saynges to be true; and namely, where as he offereth to proue it by the holy father the pope' / then Huon 12
withdrewre backe & lened hym to a pyller therby. Then the kyng called to⁴ hym all his peeres and lordes, & sayd, 'syr, I requyre you, by the fayth and trouthe and homage that ye bere to⁴ me / *that* for me nor for 16
myne amyte that ye ayde not Huon agaynst me / nor say⁵ nor do no falshode / but the moost ryghtfull iugement that ye can make do / I charge you gye trew iugement without ony fauoure or parsealyte' / When 20
the lordes herde the kynge saye so to⁴ them, and that he coniuered them so sore to do ryght / and iustyce / well they perceyued that the kynge had grete hate to⁴ Huon / and that y^e deth of his sone Charlot was not forgotten 24
out of his mynde / then they all togyther drew a parte in to a chaubre ryght penseue and mornyng / then⁶ they satte downe on benches and beheld eche other without⁷ spekyng of ony worde a longe space / 28
when duke Naymes sawe that, he rose vpon his fete and sayd / 'syr, ye haue herde how the kynge hath charged vs to saye the trouthe; we may parceyue well by hym that he bereth grete hate to⁴ Huon, who is one of our 32
companyons / and therefore, syr, I requyre you that euery man by hym selfe wyll saye his aduyse as he thynketh.'

¹ seeing.

² would.

³ my Lord.

⁴ vnto.

⁵ lay.

⁶ and.

⁷ Fol. lx. back, col. 2.

¶ How the .xii. peers drewe to counseyle to
gyue sentence vpon Huon, other with hym
or agaynst hym. Capitulo .lxxxii.

4



8

Hen there rose vp a knyght called
Gaulter / he was yssued of y^e lygnage
of Ganelon ; he¹ was one of the peers
of fraunce / then he sayd / ‘ syrs, as
for me, I say, seyng the case as it is,
that Huon by ryght iugement ought
to be hangyd & drawen, for as ye know² well the
kyng hath founde hym in the cyte of Burdeux / ther-
fore I say that the kyng may, without doynge any
synne, put hym to deth / and, syrs, yf ye thynke that
I haue sayd good reason / agree ye than to y^e same,
and lette Gerarde his brother be lorde and mayster of
all the londys and syngyoryes that sholde partayne to³
Huon / I consent & wyll, as myche as toucheth my
parte, that Gerarde be one of the peeres of Fraunce in
y^e place of Huon his brother’ /⁴ whan Gaulter had endyd
his reason, Harry⁵ of seynt Omers spake, and sayd,
‘ Syr Gaulter, goo & syt downe / your wordes can
bere none effect, for they be of no valure. But,
syrs,’ quod he, ‘ shortly to speke and ryghtwysly to
iuge, I say that it is reason that Huon be restoryd to
all his londes, for his dede is well proued, & by good
wytnes, as our holy father the pope / for we may beleue
surely that Gerarde his brother, that thus hath betrayed
hym, hath done it by false couetys⁶ / therefore I say
and iuge that Gerarde be drawen at horse taylles, and
than hangyd tyll⁷ he be deed.’ Than he sayd no more /
but sat downe agayne.

Gaulter, a knyght
of Ganelon's line,

addresses the
peers in favour of
Huon's death.

Harry of Saint
Omers declares
that Huon is
guiltless,

and that Gerard
deserves to be
drawn at horses'
tails.

¹ who.

² Fol. lxi. col 1.

³ vnto.

⁴ and.

⁵ Henry.

⁶ couetousness.

⁷ vntill.

The Earl of Flanders urges that the two brothers should be reconciled to each other,



Han Harry¹ of seint Omers had sayd his reason / y^e erle of Flaunders rose vp, and sayd to Harry,¹ 'all that ye haue sayd I wyll not consent therto / but I 4 shall shewe you myne aduyse what

ought to be done. Syrs, ye al know well the worlde, the which as now is lytell worth, for now a dayes can not be founde² trew frendes as were wont to be; ye 8 may well se by these two bretherne / the stryfe that is betwene them is foule and dyshonest; we sholde do well yf we coude fynde the meanes by any maner of wayes to apeace them / and therefore I counsell, lette vs 12 all togyther go to the kinge, and desyre hym to haue mercy and petye of bothe these tuo brethern, & that it myght³ please hym to apeace them, and render to Huon all his londes / and yf we coude bring it to this 16 poynt, it sholde be a good dede as to accorde them togyther.'

and the king should be prayed to spare both their lives.

¶ Howe the peeres layde all⁴ the dede to gyue the iugement vpon duke Naymes.⁴ But for 20 all that euer he coude say or doo, the kyngge iuged Huon to dye. Capitulo .lxxxii.

The Earl of Chalons proposes that the peers shall follow the advice of Duke Naymes.



Fter that the erle of Flaunders had spoken, the erle of Chalons rose vp 24 and sayd, '5 Syre erle⁵ of Flaunders, your reason is good, and ye haue spoken lyke a noble man / but I know surely that the kyng wyll do 28 no thyng at our desyres. But, syrs, yf ye thynke it good, let vs all put the hole mater vpon duke Naymes of Bayser / & all that he wyll say let vs agree therto' / than all the lordes accordyd togyther, & sayd how the 32

¹ Henry.

² such.

³ Fol. lxi. col. 2.

⁴⁻⁴ vpon Duke Naymes to giue the iudgement vpon him :

⁵⁻⁵ My Lord.

erle Chalons had sayd¹ wel. Than they came to the²
duke Naymes, and desyryd hym that he wolde take
the charge of that mater on³ hym, and what so euer he
4 dyd they were al agreed therto / whan the duke herd
them he stode styll a certen space, & began to studye
on the mater, and tooke all the .x. peeres to counsell
with hym. And whan y^e fayre Esclaramonde saw
8 Huon her housebonde in that daunger among them
with whom he shold haue been in ioy, than she began
sore to wepe, and sayd, 'A, Huon, I se here great
pouerte, whan in the same proper towne where as ye
12 ought to be lorde to be in this daunger, and besyde
that ye are not beleued nor herde of any man that is
here, for any *profe* or wytnes that ye can say or shew /
kyng Charlemayne wyll not beleue that ye haue ben
16 in the cyte of Baby⁴lone, and yet surely there ye haue
ben / for I saw you there slee my father the admyrall
Gaudys, and toke his berd, and drewe out of his mouth
.iiii. of his greatest teth / gret petye it shalbe yf ye
20 sholde dye for *your* trough and faythfulnes / ⁵the thyng
that most fereth me is that I se none that be here
lykely to be a noble man, namely,⁶ the kyng, who is
chefe of all other ;⁷ me thynke he is full of falshede /
24 for I se none other but he ⁸purchaseth for⁸ your deth.
But I promyse to god that yf he suffer you to haue this
wronge, and thus to dye, I saye than as for my parte
that Mahounde is better worth than your ⁹god Iesu
28 Cryst⁹ / and yf it be soo that ye receyue deth without¹⁰
cause, I shall¹¹ neuer more beleue in ¹²Jesu Cryst¹² / but
renounce his law, and beleue in Mahounde.' There were
many lordes and knyghtes *that* herd the iadyes wordes /
32 wherof they had suche petye that the moost part of them
began to wepe. And whan Huon herde hys wyfe he

Esclaramonde
bewails Huon's
sad fate,

and reproaches
Christ with
permitting
injustice.

¹ right. ² omitted. ³ yppon. ⁴ Fol. lxi. back, col. 1.
⁵ but. ⁶ except. ⁷ and yet. ⁸⁻⁸ that seeks.
⁹⁻⁹ king Charlemaine. ¹⁰ a. ¹¹ will
¹²⁻¹² your king.

Huon begs her to have patience.

tournyd¹ his face to her warde,¹ and sayd, 'Lady, I desyre you to leue your sorow and trust in god almyghty, who so often tymes hath socouryd vs. ye know not what he wyll do; let vs be content with his good pleasure.' Thus 4
with suche wordes Huon apeaced the fayre Esclaramonde. And duke Naymes, who was in counsell with the other peeres, sayd to them, 'Syr, I haue grete sorow at my hert by cause of these two bretherne, so 8
that I can not tell what Counsell to fynde. I desyre you all that in this weyghty mater to counsell me & shew me your opynyons therin.' 'Syr,' quod the lordes, 'other counsell ye shall not haue of vs, for we haue layde 12
al y^e mater vpon you to do therin what it shall please you.' 'Syres,' quod the duke / 'to dyssymell the matter vayleth not,² syn³ that Huon must passe by iugement; howe saye you, shall he be hangyd or drawn?' 16
'Syr,' quod Gaulter, who was y^e fyrst⁴ speker / 'me thynke he can scape none other wyse.' 'A, traytour,' quod the duke, 'thou lyst falsly, for it shall not folow after thy counsell, whether thou wylt or not; 20
there is no man this day that shalbe so hardye⁵ to inge hym to dye / therefore, syrs, yet shew me agayne yf⁶ ye wyll all agree to my counsell.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'we haue layde the charge on you, the whiche we wyll all 24
hyde by' / but who so euer was glade, Gaulter was sorowful and angrye / for he wold haue consentyd to the deth of Huon. Than all the barons, ryght sad and pensyue, went out of the counsell chambre, and they 28
coule fynde no maner of wayes howe to saue Huon, but they all prayed to god to ayde & socoure hym. And Huon seynge the barons comyng so sadly togyther, thought that the mater was not at a good poynt, wherby 32
he began sore to wepe / whan Esclaramond and Gerames saw the sorowe *that* Huon made, they had gret petye

Duke Naymes hesitates to give the peers counsel,

but he indignantly rejects Gaulter's proposal that Huon should be put to death.

The peers, however, fear for Huon's life.

1-1 toward her. 2 but. 3 since.
4 Fol. lxi. back, col. 2. 5 as. 6 whether.

therof. Than Huon behelde duke Naymes, for he knew well al the mater lay in his handes / he feeryd greatly the iugement that sholde be made vpon hym / & sayd,
 4 'a, very god & man, as I beleue veryly that thou dydyst dye on the holy crosse to redeme vs all, & that on the thyrd day thou dyddyst ryse fro deth to lyfe, I requyre the humbly in this grete nede to socoure me,
 8 as treuly as I am in the ryght, for more wrong can¹ no man haue.' Than y^e duke Naymes of Bauyer cam to y^e kinge, & said / 'sir, wyll it please you to here what we haue deuysyd?' 'Ye,' quod the kinge, 'I desyre
 12 no thyng elles to know' / 'well, sir,' quod the duke, 'than I demaunde of you in what place of your regyon thynke you ²that ye ought² too iuge of the peeres of Fraunce?' 'Naymes,' quod y^e kyng, 'I know well ye
 16 be a noble man, & all that ye say is to delyuer Huon of Burdeux / but I wyll ye know all shall not profyt hym.' Than y^e duke sayd, 'sir, to say so ye do grete wronge. Therefore, sir, regarde well in what ³place ye
 20 wyll haue one of your peeres iugyd. yf ye know not where it ought to be done, I shall⁴ shew you in your realme there are but thre places to do it in. The fyrst is the towne of Seynt Omers / the .ii. is Orleance, &
 24 y^e thyrd is Parys / & therefore, sir, yf ye wyll procede vpon Huon by iustyce, it is conuenyent that it be done in one of these thre places, for here in this towne he can not be iugyd.' 'Naymes,' quod y^e kyng, 'I vnder-
 28 stonde well why ye saye this; I well se & perceyue that ye entende to none other ende but to delyuer⁵ quyt Huon. I had thought to haue entretyd hym by the ordre of iustice / to thentent that none of you sholde
 32 haue reproyde me, therfor I ordeynd that he sholde haue ben iugyd by you that be the peeres of Fraunce / & I se well ye haue done no thyng therin, & therefore

Huon prays for safety.

Naymes asks Charles where he thinks the peeres of France should be brought for trial.

The king declares that Huon shall die.

Naymes shows that there are only three towns where peeres can be tried.

Charlemagne reproaches the Duke with attempting to acquit Huon,

¹ can after man. ²⁻² omitted. ³ Fol. lxii. col. 1.

⁴ will. ⁵ and.

as longe as ye lyue ye shall medell no more with that mater / but by the berde that I bere on my chyn, I shall neuer dyne nor ete no mete after this dyner tyll I se hym hangyd and drawen / for all your berynge of 4 hym agaynst me.' Than he commaundyd y^e tabelles to be set vp / ¹whan Gerard vnderstode the kynge he was ioyfull ther of *in* his herte / but he made no semblaunt of ioy by cause of the lordes that were there present / 8 whan Huon & Esclaramonde herd how y^e kynge had sworne the deth of Huon, The doloures wepynges & teeres *that* they made were so extreme that herd it were to declare it / & Esclaramond sayde to Huon, 12 'A, syr, now I se well / that grete pyte it shalbe the departyng of vs two / but yf I had a knyfe I wold not abyde your deth / but fyrst I sholde slee my selfe before this false and vntrew kynge' / her compleyntes 16 were so petuffull *that* moost part of the lordes wept for pyte / and the olde Gerames sore wept, & sayd, 'A, good lord god, *in* what houre was I born! in grete doloure & payne I haue vsyd² my youth / & now in 20 myn age thus shamfully ³to dye.' Thus all .iii. made suche sorow *that* it wolde haue made a hard herte to lament. All .iii. thought none otherwyse but to dye, by cause they had herde kinge Charlemayne make 24 suche *promyse* / but that⁴ god wyl ayde⁵ no man can lette, ⁶for yf ⁶god saue the good kinge Oberon,⁷ kynge Charlemayne shalbe forsworne, as ye shall here⁸ after. Nowe let vs leue spekyng of these⁹ pyteous company, 28 & speke of the noble kinge Oberon of y^e fayrye, who as than was in his woode.

and orders the knight to be slain forthwith.

Great is the grief of all who hear the Emperor's words.

Very piteous is Esclaramonde's lamentation.

Gerames also weeps sorely.

¶ How kynge Oberon cam to socoure Huon, & made Gerarde to confesse all the treason 32

¹ and. ² continued. ³ Fol. lxii. col. 2. ⁴ which.
⁵ saue. ⁶⁻⁶ and. ⁷ for. ⁸ here. ⁹ this.

that he had purchasyd agaynst Huon his
brother. Capitulo .lxxxiii.



4 E haue herd before how kinge Oberon
was displeased with Huon by cause he
had broken his commaundement. But
whan Huon had ben at Rome, and
confessyd of all his synnes, &¹ assoylled
8 of y^e pope. Than king Oberon was content, & in his
herte forgauē all the yll wyll that he had to Huon / &
as he sat at diner, he began to wepe / whan his seruantes
sawe that, they had grete meruayle, & sayd to² hym /
12 ‘sir, we desyre you to shew vs why ye do wepe & be
so troubled ; there is sum dyspleasure done to² you / sir;³
for the loue of our lorde Jesu Cryst, we desyre you
hyde it not fro us.’ ‘Syr,’ quod the kynge, ‘I
16 remembre now the vnhappy Huon of Burdeux, who is
retournyd fro y^e farre partes, & he hathe passyd by
Rome, & there hath taken his wyfe in maryage, & is
confessyd of all his synnes, for the whiche synnes he
20 hath ben by me sore punyshyd.

‘But it is tyme, yf euer I wyll do hym any good,
now to ayde hym, & to socoure hym agaynst kynge
Charlemayne / for he hathe ⁴sworne neuer to go to bed
24 tyll⁵ he haue hangyd & drawn the poore Huon / but
by the grace of our lorde god, Charlemayn shalbe for-
sworne, for at this tyme I shall socoure & ayde hym /
for he is as now in such a daunger, without he be
28 socouryd incontinēt, deth is nere hym / he was neuer
in his lyfe in suche perell / he is now in the palays at
Burdeux, & hys wyfe the fayre Esclaramonde, & the
olde Gerames, with fetters on ther fete, beyngē in grete
32 sorow / & kinge Charemain is set at dyner, & hath
made his oth to hang⁶ Huon / but yet whether he wyll

Oberon had taken
Huon again into
his fa our after
he had been
confessed by the
Pope,

and weeps over
his misfortunes
in France.

He declares he
will go at once to
his aid,

¹ was. ² vnto. ³ therefore. ⁴ Fol. lxii. back, col. 1.

⁵ vntill. ⁶ haue.

or not he shalbe periuryd / for I wyll go to my frende
 Huon, & helpe hym at his nede / therfore I wyshe my
 table, & all that is theron, nere to kyng Charlemayns
 table, & sumwhat aboue his a¹ two fote hyer; & also 4
 I wyll, by cause I haue herd say that often tymes of a
 lytell castell cometh a greater, therfore I wyl that on
 my table be set my cuppe, & horne, & harnes,² y^e
 whiche Huon conqueryd of y^e Gyaunt Angolaffer; & 8
 also I wysh with me a .C.M. men of armes such as I
 was wont to haue in batayle / he had no soner sayd
 y^e wordes / but by the wyll of god & the pusaunce of
 the fayry / his table & all *that* kinge Oberon had 12
 wyshyd was set iust by kinge Charlemaynes table,
 more hyer & greater than his was / whan³ Charlemayne
 sawe the table, & the cuppe &⁴ horne & cote of mayle,
 he had greate meruayle, & sayd to duke Naymes, ‘sir 16
 duke, I belene ye haue enchauntyud me.’ ‘sir,’ quod
 the duke, ‘neuer in my lyfe I medled with such mater’ /
 the lordes & all suche as were there were greatly
 abasshyd how that mater came to passe / Gerames, 20
 who set nere to Huon, whan he saw the table, & y^e
 cuppe & horne of yuory & the harnes⁵ theron, he knew
 them well, & sayd to Huon, ‘syr, be not dysmayed / for
 on yonder table *that* ye may se is your cuppe & horne 24
 of yuory and cot of mayl / wherby I perceyue wel
 that ye ‘shalbe socouryd by kyng Oberon’ / Huon
 behelde the table, & had grete ioye whan he saw it /
 than he lyft vp his handes to the heuen & thanked our 28
 lorde god *that* he wolde vyset suche a pore synner as
 he was.⁷ ‘A, kyng Oberon, in many grete nedes ye
 haue socouryd me’ / therwith aryued kinge Oberon in
 the cyte, wherof the burgesses & the comons were 32
 greatly abashyd, whan they saw suche a nombre of men
 of warre enter *in* to there cyte without any knowledge

and he wishes
himself,
with the table at
which he is
sitting,

and his horn, cup,
and armour,

and a hundred
thousand men,
transported to
Bordeaux.

His desire is at
once accom-
plished.

Charlemagne
believes that
Naymes has
enchanted him.

Gerames shows
Huon how
Oberon is come to
aid him.

The city is filled
with Oberon and
his armed men,

¹ aboute. ² my armour. ³ King. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ armour. ⁶ Fol. lxii. back, col. 2. ⁷ saying.

before. Whan kinge Oberon was within y^e towne, & al his company, he sayd to his lordes, 'syr, loke that ye set good watche at euery gate, so that no man go
 4 out' / the whiche they dyd delygently / for at euery gate they set .x.M. men / ¹the cyte was full of men.¹ and the gates are guarded by them so that none can pass out.
 Than kyng Oberon toke the way to the palays, & at y^e gate he left .x.M. men, commaundyng them on payne of
 8 there lyues *that* they shold not suffer any man to passe out / & also he commaundyd that yf they herde hym blowe his horne of yuory, that incontynent they sholde come in to the palays to hym, & to sle all suche as they
 12 sholde fynde there / & they promysyd hym so to do.
 Than kyng Oberon went vp in to the palays, & many of his lordes / with hym / he was rychelely aparellyd in
 cloth of golde, & the border therof was fret ² with ryche
 16 precyous stonnes; goodly it was to behold, for a fayrer lytell person coude not be founde / he passyd iust by kyng Charlemayn without spekyng of any worde, & went so nere too kyng Charlemayn that he shuddred
 20 hym so rudely that his bonet fell fro his hede. 'A, good lorde,' quod Charlemayne, 'I haue greate meruayle what this dwarfe may be *that* so rudely hath shuddred me, & all moost had ouer throwen my table / he is
 24 feerse whan he thinkes scorne to speke to me, how be it, I wyll se what he wyll do / I can not tell what he thynketh to doo / as³ me semyth he is ryght ioyful, & also he is y^e moost fayrest creature
 28 that ⁴euer I saw' / whan Oberon had passyd by the kyng he came to Huon, & wyssshyd y^e fetters fro all there fete, ¹& toke them by theyr handes¹ Oberon wills the fetters to fall from Huon's feet.
 & led them before Charlemayn *with* out any worde
 32 spekyng, & causyd them to syt downe⁵ at his owne table *that* he had wyssshyd thether, ¹& he sat downe with them¹ / than he toke his cuppe and made theron

¹—1 omitted.² sette.³ but.⁴ Fol. lxiii. col. 1.⁵ with him.

Esclaramonde,
Huon, and
Gerames drink
from his
enchanted cup.

Oberon bids Huon
offer the cup to
Charlemagne.

It grows empty
in the Emperor's
hand.

Oberon charges
him with having
committed a sin
which he has
never confessed.

Charlemagne
tells the fairy-
king.

.iii. crosses / than incontynent y^e cuppe was full of
wyne / than kynge Oberon toke it & gaue it to Esclara-
mond to drynke, & than to Huon, & so to Gerames /
& whan they had all thre dronken well, he sayd to 4
Huon, 'frende, aryse vp & take the cuppe & bere it to
kynge Charlemayne, & say vnto hym *that* he drynke to
you in the name of good¹ peace / yf he refuse it he dyd
neuer suche a foly in all hys lyfe.' Kynge Charlemayne, 8
who sat nere to them at his owne table, herd kinge
Oberons wordes / than he wyst not what to thynke, &
so sat styll & durst² speake no³ worde for the great
meruaylles that he saw there, and no more durst 12
none of his men, for they were so abasshyd that there
was none there / but *that* gladly wolde haue ben a
C. legges thense; ¹euery man beheld other *with* grete
meruayle.¹ But who so euer was afrayed, Gerarde 16
was not⁴ well assuryd.⁵ Than Huon rose fro kynge
Oberons table, & tooke the cuppe & went ther with to
kynge Charlemayn, & delyueryd it to hym. The kynge
toke it, and he¹ durst not refuse it. as soone as it was 20
in his handes it was drye & voyde, and not a drope of
wyne therin. 'Felow,' *quod* y^e king, 'ye haue en-
chauntyd me.' 'Syr,' *quod* kynge Oberon, 'it is
bycause ye are full of synne / for y^e cup is of suche 24
dygnyte that none can drynke therof without he be a
noble man, & elene without any deedly synne / & I
know one *that* ye dyd not longe a go, the whiche as
yet ye were neuer confessyd of / & yf it were not to 28
your shame I sholde shew it here openly, *that* euery
man sholde here it' / whan themperour⁶ Charlemayne
herde kinge Oberon he was abasshyd, & afrayed *that*
kynge Oberon wold haue shamyd hym openly / than 32
Huon toke agayne the cappe, & than incontynent it
was full of wyne agayne / & than Huon bare it to duke

¹ omitted.

² not.

³ one.

⁴ verie.

⁵ pleased.

⁶ Fol. lxiii. col. 2.

Naymes, who sat next to Charlemayne. Naymes toke
 the cuppe & dranke therof at his pleasure. But all
 other coude not touche the cuppe, they were so full of
 4 synne. Than Huon retournyd to kyng Oberon, & sat
 downe by hym / than kyng Oberon called to hym
 duke Naymes, & commaundyd hym to ryse fro Charle-
 mains table & to syt downe by hym at his table / the
 8 whiche duke Naymes dyd, he durst not say nay. Than
 Oberon sayd to hym / 'sir duke Naymes, ryght good
 thanke I can¹ you in *that* ye haue ben so trew & iust
 to Huon / & you,² kyng Charlemayn, ³who is³
 12 emperour of y^e Romayns / beholde here Huon, whom
 wrongfully & with out cause ye haue dyssheryt, & wold
 take fro hym⁴ his londes / he is a noble man & trew /
 & besyde *that*, I say vnto you for trouthe he hath done
 16 your message to⁵ the admyrall Gaudes, & I aydyd to
 bringe hym to hys deth, &⁶ he toke out of his mouth
 .iiii. of his gretest teth, &⁷ dyd cut of his whyte berde /
 & I dyd close them within the syde of Gerames by the
 20 wyll of god / this *that* I say ye may beleue surely, for
 at these dedes all I was present. Se yonder false
 traytour Gerard, who by his malysyous entent hath
 done this treason / & to thentent⁸ *that* ye may knowe
 24 the mater more surelyer, ye shall here it confessyd by
 his owne mouth.' Than Oberon said to Gerarde, 'I
 conziure the, by y^e deuyne puyssaunce & power *that* god
 hath gyuen me, *that* here before kyng Charlemayn
 28 & all his lordes, ⁹shewe & declare the trouthe of this
 treason *that*¹⁰ thou hast done agaynst Huon thy brother.'
 whan Gerarde vnderstode Oberon he was in such fere *that*
 he trymbled for drede / for he felt in hym selfe *that* he
 32 coude haue no power to hyde¹¹ or¹² couer¹¹ the trouthe of
 the treason / & than he sayd, 'Syr, I se wel to hyde the

Only Duke
 Naymes of all the
 courtiers can
 drink of the
 enchanted cup.

Oberon commends
 Naymes for his
 faith in Huon,

and rebukes the
 Emperor for the
 injustice of which
 he has been
 guilty in his
 treatment of the
 brothers Huon
 and Gerard.

Oberon bids
 Gerard confess
 the truth,

and he tells about

¹ giue. ² thou. ³⁻³ that art. ⁴ all. ⁵ vnto.
⁶ then. ⁷ also. ⁸ the end. ⁹ thou. ¹⁰ which.
¹¹⁻¹¹ omitted. ¹² Fol. lxiii. back, col. 1.

the story of his
sin against his
brother.

trouthe can not auayle me / therefore trewe it is I went
to the abbay of seynt Maurys to se my brother Huon /
& Gybouars accompanyd with .lx. men of¹ armes. we
departyd fro this eyte, and layde our busschement in a **4**
lytell wood a² .ii. legees fro this eyte / to watch whan
my brother Huon shold passe by that way.' 'Gerarde,'
quod kyng Oberon, 'speke out hyer that ye may the
better be herde, & that euery man may here the treason **8**
& falsnes that ye haue done to³ your brother.' 'Syr,'
quod Gerard, 'I wote not what to say / for I haue
done so yll and falsly against my brother *that* more yll
I coude not do; ⁴I am ashamyd to reounte it. But to **12**
saye trewly that, or⁵ it was mydnyght, I made my
brother to ryse, & to departe fro y^e abbay / & whan we
came nere to the place where as my father in law
Gybouars was with his busschement, I began to stryue **16**
with my brother so hyely that Gibouars myght here
me, who whan he herde me speke, he brake out⁶ of
his busschement, & ranne at my brothers company, &
so slew them all excepte these .iii. that be here / than **20**
we toke y^e deed bodyes & dyd east them in to the
ryuer of Gerone / than we toke Huon, & his wyfe, &
the olde Gerames, & bounde theyr handles & fete &
blyndfelyd theyr iyen, & so brought them on .iii. **24**
lene horses in to this eyte; & I toke out of the syde
of⁷ Gerames the berd & .iiii. gret toth / the whiche yf it
please you I shall feteche them fro thense⁸ I left them.'
'Gerarde,' *quod* Oberon, 'ye shall not nede to take the⁹ **28**
laboure, for whan it shall please me I can haue them
without you' / 'well, *sir*,' *quod* Gerarde, 'thus whan
I had set them in pryson, I went backe agayne to the
abbay, & than I demaundyd of the abbot & couent **32**
where the treasure was that my brother had left there,
& that he sholde delyuer it to me, beerynge hym in

All the details of
the plot are set
before the
Emperor.

¹ at. ² about. ³ vnto. ⁴ and. ⁵ before.

⁶ forth. ⁷ old. ⁸ the place where. ⁹ that.

hande *that* my brother Huon had ¹sent for it / the good
 abbot wolde not delyuer it to me / wherfore Gybouars
 & I slew hym, & than we made this monke here² abbot,
 4 who is neer of kyne to Gybouars, to y^e entent that he
 sholde ayde to bere vs wytnes, & to iustifye our
 saynges / than we toke all the treasure *that* was there
 & brought it hyther / than I chargyd .x. somers, the
 8 whiche I had *with* me, to kyng Charlemayns court at
 Parys / the which treasure I gaue part therof to the
 kyng, & to other, by whom I thought to be aydyd,
 to parforme myn vnhappye enterpryce / & I beleued
 12 surely that by reason of the ryches *that* I gaue *that*
 my brother sholde haue receyued deth / & therby I to
 haue ben lorde & mayster of al his londes & seynoryes /
sir,³ this treason *that* I haue shewed, Gybouars causyd
 16 me to do it, or elles I had neuer thought to haue done
 it.' 'Gerarde,' *quod* king Oberon, 'yf it please our
 lord Jesu Cryst, you & he both shalbe hangyd by the
 neckes, there is no man luyng shall saue you. Syr
 20 emperour Charlemayn, ye haue well herd the confessyon
 of Gerard of the grete treason that Gybouars & he
 hath done to⁴ Huon. But by y^e lorde *that* fourmyd
 me to his semblaunce / both they two, & the abbot, &
 24 his chapleyne, shalbe hangyd for there false wytnes.'
 'By y^e fayth *that* I owe to saynt Denys,' *quod* kyng
 Charlemayn / 'they can not scape it.' 'Syr,' *quod*
 Naymes, 'it is grete synne to trouble a noble man / ye
 28 shal do well yf all iiii be hangyd' / whan all the lordes
 herd Gerarde confesse *that* gret treason that he had
 done to⁴ his brother, they blissyd them, & had grete
 meruayle of y^e false treason that the one brother dyd
 32 to the other.

Gerard charges
 Gybouars with
 the suggestion of
 the wicked
 scheme.

Oberon requests
 the Emperor to
 order Gerard and
 his companions to
 be hanged,

and Charles
 assents.

¹ Fol. lxxxiii, back, col. 2. ² the. ³ and all. ⁴ vnto.

¶ How kyng Oberon caused to be hangyd
the .iiii. traytours, Gerard, Gybouars, & the
two monkes, for ¹there false wytnes / & of
the peace made betwen Huon & Charle- 4
mayne / and how kyng Oberon gaue to²
Huon his realme of the fayrre.

Capitulo lxxxiiii.

Oberon wishes the
beard and teeth
which Gerard has
retained to appear
before him,



and they obey his
will.

Huon pleads for
the life of Gerard
his brother.

Han kyng Oberon had herd Gerarde 8
confesse the treason done to his brother,
and herde how Gerarde offred to goo
& feteche the berde & ³teth / & how
he had denyed hym to go, Than he 12
sayd, 'I wysshe them here on ⁴this table.' he had no
sooner made his wysshe but they were set on the
table / wherof all such as were there had gret mer-
uayle. 'Syr,' *quod* Huon to kyng Oberon, humbly, 16
'I requyre you *that* of your grace ye wyll pardon my
brother Gerard all y^e yll *that* he hath done against
me / for he dyd it by Gybouars, & as for me here, &
before god, I pardon hym; and, *sir*, yf ye wyll do 20
thus I shalbe content therwith / & to thentent *that*
we may vse our lynes fro hense forth in good peace &
loue, I wyll gyue ⁵hym the halfe parte of my londes &
seygnoryes / & *sir*, in the honoure of our lord Jesu 24
Cryst, haue pyte of hym' / whan the lordes that were
there present vnderstode Huon, they all for pyte began
to wepe, and sayd amonge them selfe *that* Huon was a
noble knyght, & *that* it had ben pyte yf the mater had 28
framyd other wyse. 'Syr Huon,' *quod* Oberon / 'it is
not necessarye to ⁶requyre me of ⁶this / for all the golde
that is in the worlde shall not respyte them ⁷fro the
deth. ⁷I wysshe by y^e puyssaunce that I haue in y^e 32

Oberon will grant
no respite,

¹ Fol. lxiiii. col. 1. ² vnto. ³ great. ⁴ vpon.
⁵ Fol. lxiiii. col. 2. ⁶⁻⁶ request. ⁷⁻⁷ their deaths.

fayrye, ¹and by my dygnyte,¹ that here beneth in y^e
 medow ther be a payre of gallowes, & all foure theron
 hangyd.' Incontynent it was done, and all foure
 4 hangyd / thus as ye haue herd y^e traytours were payed
 ther desertes. Whan kynge Charlemayn had sene the
 gret meruaylles that were done by the ¹commaundement
 of ¹kyng Oberon, he sayd to his lordes, 'Syrs, I beleue
 8 this man be² god hymselfe / for there is no mortall man
 can do this *that* he hath done' / whan Oberon vnder-
 stode the emperour, he sayd, 'Syr, know for trouth I
 am not³ god, but I am a mortall man as ye be, and
 12 was engendred on a woman as ye were, & my father
 was Julyus cesar, who engendred me on the lady of y^e
 preuey⁴ yle, who had ben before loue to Florymount,
 sonne to the duke of Albanye / she bare me .ix.
 16 monethes in her bely,⁵ and⁶ begoten by Julyus cesar
 whan he went in to Thesayle after Pompe the grete.
 He was amouros of my mother bycause she pro-
 phesyed that my father, Julius cesar, sholde wyne
 20 the batayle as he dyd / and whan I was borne there
 were *with* my mother many ladyes of y^e fayrye, and by
 them I hadde many gyftes, and amonge other there
 was one that gaue me y^e gyft to be suche one as ye se
 24 that¹ I am, wherof I am sorye, but I can⁷ be none other-
 wyse / for whan I cam to the age of thre yere I grew
 no more / & whan this lady⁸ saw that I was so lytell /
 to content agayne my mother she gaue me agayne *that*
 28 I sholde be the moost¹ fayrest creature of the worlde,
 and other ladyes of the fayry gaue me dyuers other
 gyftes, the whiche I ouer passe at this tyme / & ther-
 fore, *sir*, know for trouth that aboute all thynges god
 32 loueth fayth & trouth whan it is in men, as it is here
 in Huon; & bycause I know in⁹ certaine that he is

and the traitors
are hanged.

The Emperour
believes Obero
to be God
Himself,

but the fairy-king
recites his
history,

1-1 omitted. 2 some. 3 no. 4 secret. 5 wombe.
 6 I was. 7 not. 8 Fol. lxiiii. back, col. 1.
 9 for.

and tells of his
love for Huon.

trew & faythfull, therefore I haue alwayes loued hym.'
After *that* kynge Oberon had endyd his wordes, &
shewed *temperour* Charlemayn of all his estate, he
called Huon, and sayd, ¹' aryse vp, & take the berde & 4
the teth, & bere them to kyng Charlemayn, & desyre
hym to render to you your londes as he *promysyd*.'

Huon gives
Charlemagne the
beard and teeth
from Babylon.

'Syr,' *quod* Huon, 'I ought so to do' / *than* Huon
came to kinge Charlemayne, & sayd, 'Syr, by your 8
grace, & yf it maye please you to receyue here y^e berde
& teth of y^e admyral Gaudys.' 'Huon,' *quod* y^e kinge,

The Emperor
hands over to him
all his lands,
and parlons him
all his offences.

'I holde you quyt, and I render to you all your londes
& seynoryes, & *pardon* you of all myn yll wyll, and 12
put al rancoure fro me, & fro hense forth² retayne you
as one of my peeres.' 'Syr,' *quod* Huon, 'of this I

The courtiers
rejoice over the
reconciliation.

thanke god & your grace.' *than* *temperour* Charle-
mayne clyppyd & kyssyd Huon in token of peace & 16
loue. Whan the lordes saw that they wept for ioy, &
thanked god *that* the peace was made, & speecyally duke
naymes was ioyfull. *than* within a whyle dyuers of y^e
lordes departyd fro the courte / *than* kynge Oberon 20

Oberon bids Huon
come to Mommur
in four years'
time,

called Huon to³ hym, & said / '*sir*, I *commaunde* you,
as derely as ye loue me, that this same day .iiii. yere to
come that ye come in to my cyte of Mommure / for I
wyll gyue you my realme & all my dygnyte, the which 24

and promises him
the kingdom of
the fairies.

I may lawfully do, for at my byrth it was gyuen me
that I myght so do, for it lyeth in me to gyue it where
as I thynke best, & bycause I loue you so entyerly I
shall set y^e crowne on⁴ your hede, and ye shalbe kyng of 28

Bordeaux shall
then be given to
Gerames.

my realme / & also I wyll that ye ⁵gyue vnto Gerames
all your londes & seynoryes in this *partes*, for he hath
wel deseruyd it / for *with* you & for your loue he hath
suffred many grete trauaylles.' 'Syr,' *quod* Huon, 32
'syn⁶ this is your pleasure, I ought wel to be pleasyd
therwith; I shall acumplyshe all your *commaunde*-

¹ Sir. ² I. ³ vnto. ⁴ vpon.

⁵ Fol. lxiiii, back, col. 2.

⁶ seeing.

mentes.' 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'know for trouth I shal not abyde longe in this worlde, for so is the pleasure of god. it behoueth me to go in to paradyce, wher as my place is apparelled¹; in y^e fayrye I shal byde no lenger. but beware, as derely as ye loue your lyfe, that ye fayle not to be with me at y^e daye that I haue apoyntyd; beware that ye forget it not / for yf ye fayle I shall cause you too dye an yll deth / & therefore remembre it well.' whan Huon herde kynge Oberon he was ryght ioyus,² & stowpyd downe to haue kyst his fete / but than Gloryauns & Mallebron toke hym vp. Than Huon sayd, 'syr, of³ this grete gyft I thanke you.'

Oberon tells of his approaching departure for Paradise.

¶ How kynge Oberon departyd and toke leue of Charlemayn, & of Huon, & of Esclaramounde / and also how kynge Charlemayne departyd fro Burdeux. Ca. lxxxv.

U Han kynge Oberon had sayd⁴ to Huon as myche as he wold that he sholde do / than he sayd to Huon how he wolde departe, & toke leue of hym, & swetely kyssyd⁵ hym. Than Oberon stode styll a season,⁶ & behelde Huon, & began to wepe⁷ / whan Huon saw that he was sory in his herte, & sayd, 'A, sir kynge, I desyre you to shew me why make you this sorow at your departynge.'⁸ 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'I shal shew you it is for pyte that I haue of you / for I swere by ⁹y^e lorde⁹ that creatyd me that, or¹⁰ I shal se thee agayne, fyrst thou shalt suffre so myche payne / trauayle / pouerte / hungre / thyrst / fere / & ¹¹aduersyte, that there is no tonge can tell it /

Oberon weeps on parting with Huon.

Huon has yet to suffer much adversity.

¹ appointed. ² ioyfull. ³ for. ⁴ imparted.
⁵⁻⁵ kindly embraced. ⁶ little while. ⁷ lament.
⁸ departure. ⁹⁻⁹ him. ¹⁰ before.

¹¹ Fol. lxx. col. 1.

& thy good wyfe shall suffer so myche that there is no creature shall se her but *that* shal haue ¹of her¹ great pyte.' 'A, syr,' *quod* Huon, 'than I requyre you to ayde & comforte me.' 'Huon,' *quod* Oberon, 'what ⁴ comforte wolde ye haue of me?' 'Syr,' *quod* Huon, 'I desyre you let me haue your horne of yuory, to thentent that yf I haue nede that ye may socoure me / for so well I know you that ye wyll com and socoure me.' ⁸ 'Huon,' *quod* Oberon / 'syn² I haue agreed you with Charlemayn, trust not on me to be socouryd in any of your besyness, suffyce you with the gyft that I haue gyuen you whan³ all my realme & pusauce that I haue ¹² in the fayrre / trust on none other socoure of me.' 'Syr, I am sorry therof,' *quod* Huon, 'that it may be none otherwyse.' Than kynge Oberon toke leue of kynge Charlemayn, & of duke Naymes, & of all other lordes ¹⁶ there present. Than he went to Huon & embraced hym, & toke his leue of hym, & also of Esclaramonde & of olde⁴ Gerames, & sayd to ⁴the fayre lady⁴ Esclaramonde, 'I commaunde you to god, & I desyre you, yf ²⁰ ye haue done well hether vnto, that ye wyll parseuer euer better & better, and bere always fayth & honour to your housbonde' / 'syr,' *quod* she, 'I pray god I lyne no lenger than⁵ I sholde⁴ do the contrary.' Thus ²⁴ kynge Oberon departyd / & after his departure kynge Charlemayn made redy his company, & toke leue of Huon, and of Esclaramonde & Gerames, and they conueyed⁶ the kynge a⁷ two legges,⁸ and than toke there ²⁸ leues of ⁹the kynge,⁹ & of duke Naymes, and of all the lordes. Than the kynge sayd / 'Huon, yf any warre be moued agaynst you, or *that* yf ye haue any gret affayres to do / let me haue knowlege therof, & I shall ³² come & socoure you, or ⁴I shall⁴ sende you suche ayde that shalbe suffycient.' 'Syr,' *quod* Huon, 'I thanke

Oberon takes
leue of all the
court.

Charlemagne also
leaves Bordeaux,

but promises to
aid Huon in any
war in which he
may engage.

¹⁻¹ after pyte. ² seeing. ³ euen. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.
⁵ if. ⁶ brought. ⁷ about. ⁸ off. ⁹⁻⁹ him.

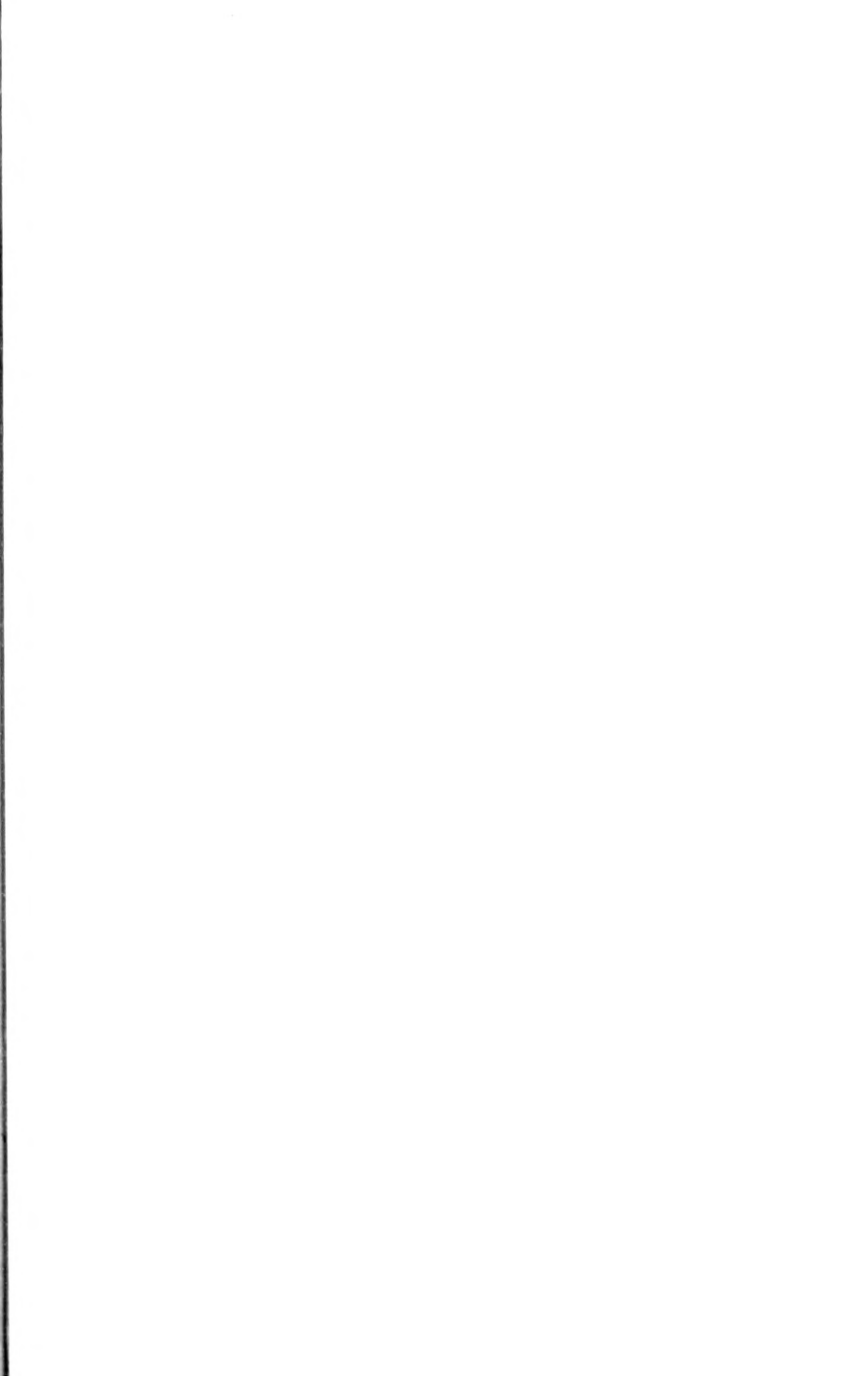
your grace,' and so toke¹ leue of the kyng & retouryd
to Bur²deux, where as he was ³in grete ioy, &³ receyued
with grete honour.⁴ Nowe let vs leue spekyng of
4 Huon, & speke of Oberon of the fayrye.¹

¹ lis. ² Fol. lxx. col. 2. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ ioy.

END OF PART I

(BEING THE STORY OF THE ORIGINAL FRENCH *CHANSON*
DE GESTE OF HUON DE BORDEAUX).







PR
1119
E5
no.40

Early English Text
Society
[Publications]
Extra series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPHS

